

*to revolt, promising that  
lp them. When the battle  
, however, Mettius helps  
e Romans nor the colonies,  
raws to see which side will  
ous. When Tullus and the  
in, they invite the Albans to  
iving ceremony. Tullus offers  
rent rewards to the Albans  
leader.*

# INTRODUCTION TO LATIN

**Revised First Edition**

**SUSAN C. SHELMERDINE**

*pāx Albāna mānsit.  
ulgī, quod tribus  
fortūna pūblica  
erat, vānum ingenium  
corrupit, et quōniam  
silia nōn bene ēvēnerant,  
onciliāre populārium  
pēpit. igitur ut prius in  
em, sīc in pāce bellum  
quia suae cīvitātī animī  
nōn virēs, bellum parat et*



# INTRODUCTION To LATIN

Revised First Edition





# INTRODUCTION To LATIN

Revised First Edition

**SUSAN C. SHELMERDINE**

## **Introduction To Latin**

© 2007 Susan C. Shelmerdine

ISBN 13: 978-1-58510-475-8

Also available in paperback (978-1-58510-270-9)

All rights are reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, by photocopying, recording, or by any other means, without the prior written permission of the publisher. If you have received this material as an examination copy free of charge, Focus Publishing/R. Pullins Company retains the title to the information and it may not be resold. Resale of any examination copies of Focus Publishing/R. Pullins Company materials is strictly prohibited.

Printed in the United States of America

12 11 10 9 8 7 6 5

0911TS

# Introduction to Latin

Preface .....	ix
Map of Italy .....	xii
The Latin Alphabet and Pronunciation.....	1
Chapter One .....	5
Introduction to the Sentence	
Parts of Speech	
What Different Words Do	
Sentence Patterns: Intransitive, Transitive	
The Verb	
First and Second Conjugations	
Present Active Indicative and Infinitive	
Principal Parts	
Indicative Uses: Statements, Questions	
Infinitive Use: Complementary Infinitive	
Chapter Two .....	13
Latin Cases	
Nominative and Accusative Case Uses	
The Noun	
First and Second Declensions	
Gender	
Dictionary Entry	
The Conjunction	
A Note on Reading Latin: Using Expectations	
Chapter Three .....	21
Genitive Case	
Uses: Possession, Part of the Whole	
Dative Case	
Uses: Indirect Object, Reference	
Expectations	
Sentence Pattern: Intransitive Verbs used with a Dative	
Chapter Four.....	27
The Adverb; Adverbial Modification	
Ablative Case	
Use: Means/Instrument	
The Preposition: Uses with the Accusative and Ablative	
Expressions of Place	
Word Order	

Chapter Five.....	33
The Adjective: First and Second Declensions	
Agreement	
The Gap	
Present Indicative and Infinitive of <b>sum</b>	
Sentence Pattern: Linking	
More Uses of the Ablative:	
Accompaniment	
Manner	
Reading Chapter I.....	41
Map of Troy and the Aegean.....	42
Chapter Six .....	45
Imperfect and Future Active Indicative	
First and Second Conjugations	
Commands	
First and Second Conjugation Imperatives	
Vocative Case	
First and Second Declensions	
Chapter Seven .....	51
Third Declension Nouns	
Imperfect and Future of <b>sum</b>	
Dative of Possession	
<i>i</i> -Stem Noun Reference Section	
Chapter Eight .....	59
Perfect Active Indicative and Infinitive	
First and Second Conjugations	
Historic Present	
Forms of <b>possum</b>	
Infinitive Use: As a Noun	
Chapter Nine .....	65
Third Conjugation	
Present Active Indicative and Infinitive	
Present Active Imperative	
The Pronoun: Part 1	
Personal pronouns: <b>ego, tū</b>	
Chapter Ten .....	71
The Pronoun: Part 2	
Demonstrative pronouns: <b>is, ea, id; hic, haec, hoc; ille, illa, illud</b>	
Special Adjectives in <b>-ius</b>	
Sentence Pattern: Factitive	
Reading Chapter II.....	79

Chapter Eleven.....	83
Third Conjugation: Imperfect and Future Active Indicative	
Numerals	
Expressions of Cause	
Chapter Twelve .....	89
Third Declension Adjectives	
Expressions of Time	
Chapter Thirteen.....	95
Fourth Conjugation:	
Present Active Indicative and Infinitive	
Present Active Imperative	
The Pronoun: Part 3	
Interrogative pronouns	
Reflexive pronouns	
Possessive Adjectives and Possession Using <b>eius</b>	
Ablative of Specification / Respect	
Map of Caesar's Gaul.....	100
Chapter Fourteen .....	103
Fourth Conjugation: Imperfect and Future Active Indicative	
Accusative of Degree and Extent	
Chapter Fifteen .....	109
Third and Fourth Conjugations	
Perfect Active Indicative	
Pluperfect and Future Perfect Active Indicative (All conjugations)	
Perfect Active Infinitives (All conjugations)	
Chapter Sixteen.....	115
Fourth Declension	
Fifth Declension	
Locative Case	
Reading Chapter III .....	123
Chapter Seventeen.....	127
Present, Imperfect, and Future Passive Indicative (All conjugations)	
Present Passive Indicative	
Sentence Pattern: Passive	
Ablative of Agent	
Chapter Eighteen .....	137
Dependent Clauses (1) - Adverbial	
Time, Cause, Condition, Place	
Dative with Adjectives	
Chapter Nineteen.....	143
The Pronoun: Part 4	
Relative Pronouns	
Dependent Clauses (2)	
Adjectival	
Noun	

Chapter Twenty.....	151
Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Passive Indicative (All conjugations)	
Perfect Passive Indicative (All conjugations)	
Paradigm of <b>vīs, vīs, f.</b>	
Reading Chapter IV .....	157
Chapter Twenty-One.....	161
Irregular verbs: <b>volō, nōlō, mālō</b>	
Negative Commands with <b>nōlō</b>	
Infinitive Noun Clauses (1): Objective Infinitive	
Chapter Twenty-Two.....	167
Review of Infinitive Forms	
Future Infinitives (Active and Passive)	
Infinitive Noun Clauses (2): Indirect Statment	
Tenses of the Infinitive in Indirect Statement	
Chapter Twenty-Three.....	175
Intensive Pronouns: <b>ipse, idem</b>	
Indefinite Pronoun: <b>quīdam</b>	
Deponent Verbs; Semi-Deponent Verbs	
Special Intransitive Sentence Pattern: Verbs used with an Ablative	
Chapter Twenty-Four .....	183
Participles	
Participle Uses	
Ablative Absolute	
Chapter Twenty-Five .....	193
Irregular verbs	
<b>eō</b>	
<b>ferō</b>	
Reading Chapter V.....	201
Chapter Twenty-Six.....	205
Comparison of Adjectives	
Comparison of Adverbs	
Chapter Twenty-Seven.....	213
Present and Perfect Active Subjunctive	
Subjunctive of <b>sum</b>	
Independent Uses of the Subjunctive	
Exhortation / Command, Wish, Doubt	
Chapter Twenty-Eight .....	221
Imperfect and Pluperfect Active Subjunctive	
Use of Tenses in the Subjunctive	
Dependent Uses of the Subjunctive (1 - Adverbial Clauses)	
Purpose, Result, Circumstance, Cause, Concession	

Chapter Twenty-Nine.....	233
Passive Subjunctive (all tenses)	
Dependent Uses of the Subjunctive (2 - Noun Clauses)	
Indirect Question	
Indirect Command	
Noun Result	
<b>fiō</b>	
Chapter Thirty .....	241
Subjunctive of <b>possum</b>	
Dependent Uses of the Subjunctive (3)	
Clauses of Fearing	
Conditions	
Reading Chapter VI .....	249
Chapter Thirty-One .....	253
The Gerund	
The Gerundive	
Passive Periphrastic	
Chapter Thirty-Two .....	261
Points for Future Study	
Supine	
<b>ut</b> + Indicative	
More on Relative Pronouns	
Connecting Relative, Clauses of Characteristic, Clauses of Purpose	
Additional Uses of the Subjunctive	
Potential, Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Speech	
Impersonal Constructions	
List of Latin Sources.....	271
Morphology Reference Section.....	277
Vocabulary by Chapter.....	299
English-Latin Vocabulary .....	319
Latin-English Vocabulary .....	329
List of Intransitive Verbs.....	343
Index .....	345

In memory of  
Gerda M. Seligson and Glenn M. Knudsvig,  
teachers, scholars, friends



## Preface

There are many textbooks for learning Latin, and different approaches have worked for different students over the years. This book is primarily intended for college level students who do not have the luxury of time to explore the language through a true “reading” method and still gain exposure to the ancient authors. The aims of this book can be stated briefly:

- to provide a streamlined text that can be completed in one year, even for courses which meet only three days a week
- to provide brief explanations of English grammar as needed within the text itself so students will have an easy reference point for the Latin material
- to provide “real Latin” readings early and often, in the form of both sentences and short passages. In all but one or two cases the Readings in each chapter are unconnected to those in the previous chapter, so they can be easily used or skipped as each instructor wishes
- to offer a variety of different kinds of exercises, especially in the early chapters
- to get out of the way of the instructor. Rather than trying to explain every nuance of the grammar in detail, this text offers concise explanations and allows the instructor to expand those explanations as he or she wishes
- not to overwhelm the student. Some texts provide so much explanation, study hints, cultural sidebars, and the like that students have trouble distinguishing between the “need to know” and the “nice to know” material. This text tries to focus on the “need to know” material.

A few words of explanation about the style of the text and the presentation of vocabulary may also be in order. The writing is intentionally informal because college students have said they prefer this. Chapter Vocabulary is placed at the end of each chapter where it can be found easily, although students should be encouraged to memorize it before doing the chapter exercises. This vocabulary provides a core of common words for students to memorize and has been limited to a manageable 20-25 words in most cases, with the total number of words indicated in parentheses. Full listings of all forms are given in the Chapter Vocabulary and in the Latin to English Vocabulary at the end of the book. Intransitive verbs, with the exception of **sum** and **eo** with its compounds in Chapter 25, are listed without a fourth principal part to help students distinguish them from transitive verbs. A complete list of the intransitive verbs with the future active participle in the fourth principal part slot is included at the end of the Latin to English Vocabulary. Vocabulary help for Readings and Practice Sentences uses abbreviated listings of the kind students are likely to see in dictionaries and notes accompanying upper level texts. It is important that students learn basic vocabulary meanings and practice the skill of deciding what meaning is appropriate in different contexts. Therefore this book does not annotate many idioms or include many specialized meanings for Latin words. Words which can reasonably be guessed in the Readings and Practice Sentences are printed in bold to encourage students to make informed guesses.

This book uses traditional terms for the most part and avoids jargon wherever possible, but it also tries to incorporate advances in language pedagogy pioneered by several generations of scholars at the University of Michigan. So readers will occasionally see an unfamiliar but very useful term, such as Gap or Expectations, and will benefit from several types of exercises developed at Michigan, such as the Dictionary Practice exercises in the Reading Chapters. My debt to my own teachers and colleagues, Gerda M. Seligson and Glenn M. Knudsvig, will be obvious to many and is an honor to acknowledge here, even though this is not a book they would have written.

My colleagues at The University of North Carolina, Greensboro offered kind and helpful comments on many drafts of this text. My grateful thanks go to them, as well as colleagues at Bowdoin College, Virginia Polytechnic Institute and State University and Wake Forest University, and students at all four institutions for their willingness to try the text in its early stages. They have all helped to make the book better, as have colleagues elsewhere who offered suggestions along the way. John Traupman provided invaluable help with his careful reading of the final draft. Special thanks also go to Cynthia Shelmerdine for her help on the index, to Maura Heyn for the pictures and to Jeffrey Patton for creating the maps.

*Note:* The short narrative used in exercise 99 was adapted from part of a now defunct web page, so I am unable to give proper credit to the original author.



Italy

# The Latin Alphabet and Pronunciation

## A. The Alphabet

The Latin alphabet has 24 letters, the same letters as in the English alphabet, but without **j** and **w**. Latin vowels are the same as in English: **a, e, i, o, u** and **y**. The letter **i** was used as both a vowel and a consonant; before another vowel in the same syllable, it is the consonant and is written as a **j** in some books: *Iūlius* = *Julius* (yule-ee-us), *adiuvō* (ad-you-oh).

## Pronunciation

## B. Vowels

Vowels in Latin are either long or short by nature. Long vowels are marked with a macron (a long mark - so called from the Greek for “long,” *makros*).

LONG		SHORT	
ā	father	a	alike
ē	they	e	pet
ī	unique	i	it
ō	obey	o	off
ū	rude	u	put

**y** occurs in words borrowed from Greek and is pronounced like French **tu**, a sound that doesn’t occur in English dialects, but can be produced by putting your lips in place to say “ooo,” and saying “cee” instead.

## C. Diphthongs

Two vowels pronounced as one sound are called diphthongs. Latin has six diphthongs which are pronounced as follows:

ae	like the <b>ai</b> in aisle	haec, aequor
au	like the <b>ou</b> in out	laudō, aut
ei	like the <b>ei</b> in weigh	deinde
eu	<b>eh-oo</b> as in feud	heu
oe	like the <b>oi</b> in soil	proelium, coepit
ui	<b>oo-ee</b> as in tweed	quī, huic

## D. Consonants

Most Latin consonants are pronounced like their English counterparts. Note the following additional points:

<b>c</b> is always a hard sound like the <b>c</b> in <b>cat</b> , never as in <b>cent</b>	<b>cēna</b> , <b>cum</b>
<b>g</b> is always a hard sound like the <b>g</b> in <b>goat</b> , never as in <b>gentle</b>	<b>glōria</b> , <b>gēns</b>
<b>i</b> ( <b>j</b> ) as a consonant is always like the <b>y</b> in <b>yellow</b>	<b>iam</b>
<b>r</b> is produced by tapping the tip of the tongue against the roof of the mouth, and probably sounded like the <b>r</b> in <b>pearl</b> pronounced with a Scottish accent	<b>Rōma</b> , <b>fortūna</b>
<b>s</b> is always like the <b>s</b> in <b>sea</b> , never as in <b>please</b>	<b>senātus</b> , <b>puellās</b>
<b>t</b> is always like the <b>t</b> in <b>time</b> , never as in <b>nation</b>	<b>ratio</b>
<b>v</b> sounds like English <b>w</b> in <b>wine</b> (not <b>vine</b> )	<b>vīnum</b> , <b>vērītās</b>
<b>x</b> sounds like English <b>ks</b> ; like the <b>x</b> in <b>extinct</b> (not <b>exert</b> )	<b>ex</b>

## Combinations

<b>bs</b> is pronounced like <b>ps</b> in <b>eclipse</b>	<b>abstulit</b> , <b>urbs</b>
<b>gu</b> , <b>qu</b> sound like <b>gw</b> , <b>qw</b> and the <b>u</b> is not counted as a vowel	<b>lingua</b> ; <b>inquit</b> , <b>quī</b>
<b>ch</b> sounds like English <b>k</b> in <b>backhand</b> , (not <b>cheese</b> )	<b>chorus</b> , <b>pulcher</b>
<b>ph</b> originally sounded like the <b>ph</b> in <b>shepherd</b> (not <b>philosophy</b> ) - but over time came to be pronounced like our <b>f</b>	<b>philosophia</b>
<b>th</b> sounds like the <b>th</b> in <b>hothouse</b> (not <b>theater</b> )	<b>theātrum</b>
<b>double consonants</b> were pronounced as two distinct sounds with a slight pause between the two: (e.g.) <b>out-take</b>	<b>ecce</b> , <b>puella</b> , <b>terra</b> , <b>mittō</b>

## E. Syllables

There are no silent letters in Latin, so a Latin word has as many syllables as it has vowels and/or diphthongs:

<b>vē-ri-tā-te</b> , <b>con-ci-li-um</b>	4
<b>for-tū-na</b> , <b>pu-el-la</b>	3
<b>lau-dō</b> , <b>er-rat</b>	2
<b>mē</b> , <b>quī</b>	1

Words are divided as follows:

1. between two vowels, or a vowel and a diphthong:  
**ā-ēr**, **vi-ae**
2. between double consonants (usually):  
**an-nus**, **mag-nus**
3. a single consonant between two vowels goes with the second vowel:  
**a-mor**, **me-mo-ri-a**

## Syllable Quantity

Knowing the quantity of a syllable is important for accenting a word properly and for understanding verses in poetry later on.

A syllable is long by nature if it contains a long vowel or a diphthong:

Rō-ma, lau-dem

A syllable is usually long by position if it has a short vowel followed by **x** or by two (or more) consonants:

op-tō, sa-pi-en-ti-a

The letter **h** is not counted as a consonant when determining the quantity of a syllable.

## F. Accent

A Latin word is accented either on the second or third syllable from the end of the word.

Words of two syllables are accented on the next to last syllable:

a'-mor  
du'-cem

Words of more than two syllables are accented on the next to last syllable if it is long:

mo-nē'-mus  
for-tū'-na

otherwise on the third to last syllable:

re'-gi-tur  
a-gri'-co-la

Some little words, called *enclitics* (from the Greek because they “lean on” the preceding word), are added to and pronounced with other words. The most common enclitics are: **-que**, **-ve**, **-ne**. When one of these is added to another word, the accent is always on the syllable before the enclitic: po-pu-lus'-que, de-a'-ve.



Amphitrite on a Sea Horse. Mosaic from Ostia, 2nd c. A.D.

# CHAPTER 1

Introduction to the Sentence  
Parts of Speech  
What Different Words Do  
Sentence Patterns: Intransitive, Transitive  
The Verb: First and Second Conjugations  
Present Active Indicative and Infinitive  
Principal Parts  
Indicative Uses: Statements, Questions  
Infinitive Use: Complementary Infinitive

## 1. The Sentence

A sentence in Latin, as in English, is made up of words which express a complete thought. The simplest form of a sentence includes only a subject and a verb:

The farmer works.                      They walk.

In order to understand sentences in English, we depend on knowing some rules of word order, for example: subjects come before verbs. Latin, however, uses a system which adds different endings onto certain words to make their function and meaning clear, so you will need to learn those endings before you can read Latin. You will also need to understand the different types of words which make up a sentence and what each of those words does.

## 2. Parts of Speech

Latin does not have an article (*the, a, an*), but otherwise has the same parts of speech as English:

PART OF SPEECH	DEFINITION	ENGLISH EXAMPLES
• <b>verb</b>	a <b>verb</b> expresses existence, action, occurrence	is, hits, teaches, happens
• <b>noun</b>	a <b>noun</b> names a <i>person, place, or thing</i> (including an <i>idea</i> or a <i>quality</i> )	farmer, house, truth, Frank
• <b>adjective</b>	an <b>adjective</b> adds to (modifies) the meaning of a noun or pronoun to specify a quality	large, old, good, true



PART OF SPEECH	DEFINITION	ENGLISH EXAMPLES
• <b>adverb</b>	an <b>adverb</b> usually modifies a verb, giving information about time, place, manner or degree	today, often, here, well
• <b>preposition</b>	a <b>preposition</b> connects a noun or pronoun to another word and shows a relationship between the two	from, into, with, by
• <b>pronoun</b>	a <b>pronoun</b> substitutes for a noun, referring to something without naming it	he, who, it, this, that
• <b>conjunction</b>	a <b>conjunction</b> connects words or groups of words	and, but, if, when
• <b>interjection</b>	an <b>interjection</b> is an exclamation	oh!, alas, huh?

Each of the different parts of speech just listed has a function in the sentence which will be the focus of this and future chapters. Chapter vocabulary will be listed by part of speech. This chapter includes only verbs and nouns.

### 3. Function (What Words Do)

The **subject** of a sentence is the person or thing the sentence is about. To identify the subject, use the verb of the sentence and ask “who/what \_\_\_\_s?” — the answer will be the subject. It is usually a noun or pronoun.

The woman praises the boy. > who praises? > woman = subject

The **verb** of a sentence expresses what is being said about the subject (an action, occurrence, etc.). The same term, “verb,” names both the part of speech and its function.

The woman praises the boy. > what about the woman? > she praises = verb

The **direct object** of a sentence is the person or thing that receives the action of the verb directly. Like the subject, it is usually a noun or pronoun.

The woman praises the boy. > who receives praise? > the boy = direct object

### 4. Sentence Patterns

Reading Latin (or any language) becomes easier if you know what to expect in a sentence. It is therefore useful to recognize certain common sentence patterns and their core parts. This chapter will teach you two common patterns, and future chapters will add four more. While you don’t need to know the names of these patterns to read Latin, it will be easier to talk about them if you learn the terms in bold below. Notice that each “sentence pattern” is really determined by the verb in the sentence.



This chapter began with a sentence pattern which included only a **subject** and a **verb**. This is the **intransitive** pattern:

The farmer works.	Subject = farmer	Verb = works
They walk.	Subject = they	Verb = walk

Verbs which do not take a direct object are called **intransitive verbs**.

Another type of sentence includes a **subject**, a **verb** and a **direct object (d.o.)**.

This is the **transitive** pattern:

The woman has a rose.	Subject = woman	Verb = has	D.O. = rose
We call the farmer.	Subject = we	Verb = call	D.O. = farmer

Verbs which take a direct object are called **transitive verbs**.

## 5. The Verb

Verbs in Latin fall into four regular groups, called **conjugations**. Each conjugation has a common set of endings which are added to the **stem** of the verb. The verb stem carries the meaning of the verb and a characteristic vowel:

1ST CONJUGATION [-ā-]		2ND CONJUGATION [-ē-]	
<b>amā-</b>	love	<b>docē-</b>	teach
<b>laudā-</b>	praise	<b>vidē-</b>	see

The endings are called **personal endings** because they carry information about who the subject of the verb is. These endings are traditionally identified by **person** (first, second, or third) and **number** (singular or plural) as follows:

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
<i>1st person</i>	<b>-ō</b>	I	<b>-mus</b>	we
<i>2nd person</i>	<b>-s</b>	you	<b>-tis</b>	you, you all
<i>3rd person</i>	<b>-t</b>	he, she, it	<b>-nt</b>	they

Verb forms with personal endings are called **finite** forms (from the Latin for “limit,” *finis*) because they are limited by identifying the subject.

Verbs are also identified by

- Tense - when an action happens (e.g., present, future)
- Voice - whether the subject is doing the action (active) or receiving the action (passive)
- Mood - whether the verb is a simple statement or question (indicative), or a command (imperative), etc.

These items will be discussed in future chapters.

This chapter introduces **present active indicative** verb forms of the first and second conjugations:

	1ST CONJUGATION		2ND CONJUGATION	
<i>1st sg.</i>	<b>amō</b>	I love	<b>doceō</b>	I teach
<i>2nd sg.</i>	<b>amās</b>	You love	<b>docēs</b>	You teach
<i>3rd sg.</i>	<b>amat</b>	He, she it loves	<b>docet</b>	He, she it teaches
<i>1st pl.</i>	<b>amāmus</b>	We love	<b>docēmus</b>	We teach
<i>2nd pl.</i>	<b>amātis</b>	You (all) love	<b>docētis</b>	You (all) teach
<i>3rd pl.</i>	<b>amant</b>	They love	<b>docent</b>	They teach

Notice that the personal endings are the same for both conjugations and are added directly to the stem of the verb in each form. In the “I” form (first person singular) of the first conjugation, the stem vowel **-a-** contracts with the personal ending to produce the form **amō** rather than **amaō**.

Two important points should be noted here:

- The present tense can be translated “I love,” “I am loving,” or “I do love.”
- Because the ending on the verb tells you who the subject is, Latin does not have to use a separate word for the subject as we do in English: **vident** = *they see*.

The **infinitive** is a form of the verb which is not limited (*infinitus*) by a personal ending. Here are the present active infinitive verb forms of the first and second conjugations:

1ST CONJUGATION		2ND CONJUGATION	
<b>amāre</b>	to love	<b>docēre</b>	to teach
<b>laudāre</b>	to praise	<b>vidēre</b>	to see

To find the present stem of a verb, drop the **-re** from the present active infinitive. The vowel on the verb stem will show what conjugation the verb belongs to:

**amā (re)** - first conjugation

**docē (re)** - second conjugation

## 6. Principal Parts

The dictionary entry for a verb includes the first person singular indicative form (*I love*) and the present infinitive form (*to love*), along with two other forms which will be introduced in future chapters. These forms are called **principal parts** because they contain the verb stems on which all other forms are built. Because it is not always possible to predict these stems, it is important to memorize all the principal parts for each verb. Here are some examples for the first and second conjugations:

1ST CONJUGATION			
<b>amō</b>	<b>amāre</b>	<b>amāvī</b>	<b>amātus</b>
I love	to love	I have loved	having been loved
<b>laudō</b>	<b>laudāre</b>	<b>laudāvī</b>	<b>laudātus</b>
I praise	to praise	I have praised	having been praised

## 2ND CONJUGATION

**videō**

I see

**vidēre**

to see

**vīdī**

I have seen

**vīsus**

having been seen

**doceō**

I teach

**docēre**

to teach

**docuī**

I have taught

**doctus**

having been taught

Some verbs do not have all four principal parts (and are often called “defective” because they are missing forms). You will notice this in the dictionary listing when it happens. This book also omits the fourth principal part for most intransitive verbs. (A list of these is included on p. 343)

## 7. Indicative and Infinitive Uses

**Indicative** verb forms are used to **make simple statements** and to **ask simple questions**:

Fēmina labōrat.

The woman works.

Fēmina labōrat? Labōratne fēmina?

Does the woman work?

Notice that Latin does not require any change of word order to signal a question. Often the enclitic **-ne** (§F) is added on the end of the first word of a question.

**Infinitive** verb forms have several different uses. One of the most common is to **complete the meaning of another verb**. This use of the infinitive is called the **complementary infinitive**:

Labōrāre debeō.

I ought to work.

Optatne docēre?

Does he desire to teach?

EXERCISE 1. Identify each of the following forms by person and number, then translate into English.

*Example:*    amant                    third person, plural; “they love” or “they are loving”  
or “they do love”

- |              |             |
|--------------|-------------|
| 1. optat     | 6. vocās    |
| 2. vident    | 7. tacēs    |
| 3. habēmus   | 8. iacētis  |
| 4. labōrātis | 9. superant |
| 5. timeō     | 10. iuvāmus |

EXERCISE 2. Identify each of the following English verbs by person and number, then translate into Latin.

*Example:*    they are afraid                    third person, plural; timent

- |                     |                    |
|---------------------|--------------------|
| 1. he is working    | 6. am I silent?    |
| 2. do they love?    | 7. she teaches     |
| 3. it lies          | 8. you (pl.) call  |
| 4. you (sg.) desire | 9. they do see     |
| 5. we owe           | 10. you (sg.) have |

EXERCISE 3. Using the stem meanings given below, translate each of the following into English. Then, paying attention to the stem vowel in each form, see if you can write the first two principal parts which would appear in the dictionary for each verb.

*Example:* errant (wander) “they wander”; errō, errāre

- |                     |                     |
|---------------------|---------------------|
| 1. pugnās (fight)   | 6. nāvigāmus (sail) |
| 2. terret (terrify) | 7. tenēs (hold)     |
| 3. volant (fly)     | 8. servātis (save)  |
| 4. dolētis (grieve) | 9. rīdēmus (laugh)  |
| 5. audent (dare)    | 10. stat (stand)    |

EXERCISE 4. Some of the following sentences contain nouns which will be explained in Chapter 2. For now, if the noun ends in **-a**, it is the subject; if it ends in **-am**, it is the direct object. Translate each of the following sentences into English.

- |                        |                          |
|------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. Agricola labōrat.   | 6. Fēminam docent.       |
| 2. Agricolam vocāmus.  | 7. Labōrāre optās?       |
| 3. Fēmina rosam habet. | 8. Fortūna nautam iuvat. |
| 4. Tacētis.            | 9. Tacēre debeō.         |
| 5. Nauta aquam videt?  | 10. Fāmam amāmus.        |

## Chapter 1 Vocabulary

Nouns (these forms will be explained in Chapter 2)

agricola, agricolae <i>m.</i>	farmer
aqua, aquae <i>f.</i>	water
fāma, fāmae <i>f.</i>	fame, report, reputation; rumor
fēmina, fēminae <i>f.</i>	woman
fortūna, fortūnae <i>f.</i>	chance, luck, fortune
nauta, nautae <i>m.</i>	sailor
rosa, rosae <i>f.</i>	rose

Verbs (English translations will be given in the infinitive form)

amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus	to love
dēbeō, dēbere, dēbuī, dēbitus	to owe; to be obligated to ("I ought" to)
doceō, docēre, docuī, doctus	to teach
habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus	to have, hold; consider
iaceō, iacēre, iacuī	to lie (e.g., on the ground)
iuvō, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtus	to help; please
labōrō, labōrāre, labōrāvī, labōrātus	to work, strive
laudō, laudāre, laudāvī, laudātus	to praise
optō, optāre, optāvī, optātus	to choose, desire, wish for
superō, superāre, superāvī, superātus	to overcome, conquer, surpass
taceō, tacēre, tacuī	to be silent ("I am silent")
timeō, timēre, timuī	to fear, be afraid
videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsus	to see
vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus	to call; name

Other

-ne (attached to the end of the first word in the sentence, usually the most important word in the question) signals a simple question (no English translation)

(21)



# CHAPTER 2

Latin Cases: Nominative and Accusative Case Uses  
The Noun: First and Second Declensions  
Gender  
Dictionary Entry  
The Conjunction  
A Note on Reading Latin: Using Expectations

## 8a. Latin Cases

Instead of using word order to identify subjects and other elements in a sentence, Latin uses forms, called **cases**, which provide information about what each noun, pronoun, or adjective is doing in a sentence. Sometimes the function is equivalent to an English subject or direct object (as you saw in the sentences in Chapter 1), but sometimes the case must be translated with an English preposition in addition to the noun. Latin has six common cases (and a seventh less common one). Each case may signal more than one function, but the most common uses are these:

CASE NAME	COMMON USE
<b>nominative</b>	<b>subject of a finite verb</b>
genitive	possession; “of ____”
dative	indirect object; “to ____,” or “for ____”
<b>accusative</b>	<b>direct object</b>
ablative	“by, with, from, in ____”
vocative	direct address
locative	place

This chapter includes only the **nominative** and **accusative** case uses. The other cases will be introduced in Chapters 3, 4 and 6. Sample paradigms will typically list only the first five cases.

## 8b. Case Uses

Nominative

- Subject of a finite verb (a verb with a personal ending - §5)

**Agricola** labōrat.                      The **farmer** works.

## Accusative

- Direct Object

**Fēminam** amant.                      They love the **woman**.

---

\*\* Special Note - some verbs, especially those of *asking* and *teaching*, regularly take **two accusatives**, one of the person (direct object), the other of the thing (secondary object):

**Litterās puerōs** docēs.    You are teaching the **boys literature**.  
**Dōnum virum** ōrant.    They are asking the **man** for a **present**.

---

## 9. The Noun

Nouns in Latin fall into five regular groups, called **declensions** according to the vowel which originally appeared at the end of the noun stem. Sound changes over time have made this vowel disappear in many of the forms. The easiest way to identify the declension of a noun is to look at the genitive singular case ending which is unique to each declension:

DECLENSION	CHARACTERISTIC VOWEL	GENITIVE SINGULAR ENDING
1	<b>ā</b>	<b>-ae</b>
2	<b>o</b>	<b>-ī</b>
3	<b>ī</b> (or a consonant)	<b>-is</b>
4	<b>u</b>	<b>-ūs</b>
5	<b>ē</b>	<b>-ēī</b>

The stem carries the meaning of the noun and the case endings indicate its function in the sentence. To find the stem of a noun, drop the genitive singular ending:

**agricol -ae** - first declension

**amīc -ī** - second declension

In addition to being marked for **case**, the endings on a noun, like the personal endings on verbs, are also marked for **number** (singular or plural).

## 10. Gender

Latin nouns are also identified by **gender** (masculine, feminine or neuter). Gender can be predicted for some words but not for others, so you will need to memorize the gender of each noun when you learn it. Some general patterns, however, are useful to remember:

- Most first declension nouns are feminine. The common exceptions are often remembered as the “PAIN” words, which are all masculine:

<u>P</u> oēta	poet
<u>A</u> gricola	farmer
<u>I</u> ncola	inhabitant
<u>N</u> auta	sailor



- Most second declension nouns with a nominative in **-us** or **-er** are masculine. The most common exceptions are:

humus	ground	feminine
vulgus	crowd	neuter (sometimes masculine)
pelagus	sea	neuter
Names of trees, towns and islands (e.g., quercus “oak”) are feminine.		

- Second declension nouns with a nominative in **-um** are neuter.

## 11. Dictionary Entry

The **dictionary entry** for a noun lists the nominative singular form, the genitive singular form, and the gender of the noun. The genitive singular form identifies the noun's declension:

<b>puella, puellae</b> <i>f.</i>	girl	Gen. <b>-ae</b> = first declension
<b>amīcus, amīcī</b> <i>m.</i>	friend	Gen. <b>-ī</b> = second declension
<b>regnum, regnī</b> <i>n.</i>	kingdom	Gen. <b>-ī</b> = second declension

Here are sample nouns for the first and second declensions, with the case endings listed separately to the right.

## 12. First Declension

SINGULAR	NOUN	ENGLISH MEANING	ENDINGS
<i>Nominative</i>	fēmina	a woman _____s	<b>-a</b>
<i>Genitive</i>	fēminae	of a woman	<b>-ae</b>
<i>Dative</i>	fēminae	to/for a woman	<b>-ae</b>
<i>Accusative</i>	fēminam	_____s a woman	<b>-am</b>
<i>Ablative</i>	fēminā	by, with, from a woman	<b>-ā</b>
PLURAL			
<i>Nominative</i>	fēminae	women _____	<b>-ae</b>
<i>Genitive</i>	fēminārum	of women	<b>-ārum</b>
<i>Dative</i>	fēminīs	to/for women	<b>-īs</b>
<i>Accusative</i>	fēminās	_____s women	<b>-ās</b>
<i>Ablative</i>	fēminīs	by, with, from women	<b>-īs</b>

Notice the following:

- The long **ā** of the ablative singular ending distinguishes it from the nominative singular, so it should be memorized from the outset.
- The dative and ablative plural have the same ending, **-īs**. In a sentence, the context will usually make the identification of the case clear. The same is true for the genitive and dative singular and the nominative plural endings (**-ae**).

EXERCISE 5. Identify each of the following first declension nouns by case and number. If the ending is ambiguous, include all possibilities.

*Example:* nautam accusative singular

- |           |                |
|-----------|----------------|
| 1. rosā   | 4. fortūnae    |
| 2. nātūra | 5. agricolārum |
| 3. aquīs  | 6. puellās     |

EXERCISE 6. Following the pattern of **fēmina**, decline **nauta** and **aqua** in all cases, singular and plural.

### 13a. Second Declension: Masculine

SINGULAR	NOUN	NOUN	ENDINGS
<i>Nominative</i>	anim <b>us</b>	puer	<b>-us or -er</b>
<i>Genitive</i>	anim <b>ī</b>	puer <b>ī</b>	<b>-ī</b>
<i>Dative</i>	anim <b>ō</b>	puer <b>ō</b>	<b>-ō</b>
<i>Accusative</i>	anim <b>um</b>	puer <b>um</b>	<b>-um</b>
<i>Ablative</i>	anim <b>ō</b>	puer <b>ō</b>	<b>-ō</b>
PLURAL			
<i>Nominative</i>	anim <b>ī</b>	puer <b>ī</b>	<b>-ī</b>
<i>Genitive</i>	anim <b>ōrum</b>	puer <b>ōrum</b>	<b>-ōrum</b>
<i>Dative</i>	anim <b>īs</b>	puer <b>īs</b>	<b>-īs</b>
<i>Accusative</i>	anim <b>ōs</b>	puer <b>ōs</b>	<b>-ōs</b>
<i>Ablative</i>	anim <b>īs</b>	puer <b>īs</b>	<b>-īs</b>

Notice the following:

- As in the first declension, the dative and ablative plural have the ending **-īs**. The dative and ablative singular of the second declension also have the same ending, **-ō**.
- Also as in the first declension, the genitive singular and nominative plural endings (**-ī**) are the same. Once again, the context will usually make the identification of the case clear.
- Some words in **-er** drop the **-e-** from the stem in all but the nominative singular. Compare **puer**, **puerī** with **ager**, **agrī**. The genitive singular shows you the stem which will be used for the remaining forms.

### 13b. Second Declension: Neuter

SINGULAR	NOUN	ENDINGS
<i>Nominative</i>	rēg <b>num</b>	<b>-um</b>
<i>Genitive</i>	rēg <b>nī</b>	<b>-ī</b>
<i>Dative</i>	rēg <b>nō</b>	<b>-ō</b>
<i>Accusative</i>	rēg <b>num</b>	<b>-um</b>
<i>Ablative</i>	rēg <b>nō</b>	<b>-ō</b>

PLURAL		
<i>Nominative</i>	rēgna	-a
<i>Genitive</i>	rēgnōrum	-ōrum
<i>Dative</i>	rēgnīs	-īs
<i>Accusative</i>	rēgna	-a
<i>Ablative</i>	rēgnīs	-īs

Notice the following:

- In the neuter pattern, the nominative and accusative case endings are **always** the same, both in the singular and the plural. Use the context of the sentence to decide which case is being used.
- All other endings are the same as those for the masculine pattern.

EXERCISE 7. Given the gender indicated, identify each of the following second declension nouns by case and number. If the ending is ambiguous, include all possibilities.

*Example:* dominōs accusative plural

- |                          |                        |
|--------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. amīcum ( <i>m.</i> )  | 4. dōna ( <i>n.</i> )  |
| 2. bellum ( <i>n.</i> )  | 5. animī ( <i>m.</i> ) |
| 3. locōrum ( <i>m.</i> ) | 6. virīs ( <i>m.</i> ) |

EXERCISE 8. Following the second declension patterns above, decline **amīcus**, **ager** and **bellum** in all cases, singular and plural.

EXERCISE 9. In each of the following sentences, replace the underlined word with the correct form of the word in parentheses. Write out the whole sentence.

*Example:* Fēmīna puellās amat. (puer pl.) > **Puerī** puellās amant.

- |                                     |  |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| 1. <u>Rosās</u> habeo. (ager pl.)   | 4. <u>Puer</u> timet. (agricola pl.)           |
| 2. <u>Puellam</u> vocāmus. (vir)    | 5. Dominus <u>puerōs</u> docet. (puella pl.)   |
| 3. Vidēsne <u>nautam</u> ? (rēgnum) | 6. Domini <u>consilium</u> habent. (dōnum pl.) |

EXERCISE 10. Identify the case of each noun and the person and number of each verb. Remember that the nominative case marks the subject and the accusative marks the direct object; translate each of the following sentences into English.

- |                          |                              |
|--------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. Virī clāmant.         | 6. Nautae clāmāre audent.    |
| 2. Agricola agrum videt. | 7. Cōnsilium laudāmus.       |
| 3. Docēsne puellās?      | 8. Fēmīna dōna optat.        |
| 4. Amīcī dōnum amant.    | 9. Iuvātisne dominōs?        |
| 5. Bellum animum terret. | 10. Rēgna superāre dubitant. |

EXERCISE 11. Translate into Latin.

- |                                   |                                |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. The boys are shouting.         | 4. The woman loves the hero.   |
| 2. I have gifts.                  | 5. Do they see the fields?     |
| 3. We ought to help (our) friend. | 6. The lord praises the plans. |

## 14. The Conjunction

Latin uses “coordinating” **conjunctions** (words like *and*, *but*, *or*) just as English does, to connect words, phrases and sentences. The most important thing to notice is that **the words being connected always have the same function** (e.g., 2 subjects, 2 verbs; never a subject and a verb, or a subject and direct object):

The sailor helps and works.	2 verbs: help + work
The woman and the man teach.	2 subjects: woman + man
The boy shouts but the man is silent	2 sentences: boy shouts + man is silent

As in English, conjunctions in Latin are commonly placed between the words or phrases they connect. An exception to this is the enclitic **-que** which is added to the *second* word of those being connected:

<b>puer et puella</b>	boy and girl
<b>puer puellaque</b>	boy and girl
<b>ōrāmus clāmāmusque</b>	we are begging and shouting

If two subjects are joined by a conjunction, the verb will be plural:

<b>Agricola et puer labōrant.</b>	The farmer and the boy are working.
-----------------------------------	-------------------------------------

EXERCISE 12. In the following sentences, identify the two items being connected and their function; then translate the sentence into English.

*Example:* Puerī labōrant et clāmant. labōrant + clāmant: verbs  
The boys are working and shouting.

- |                                     |  |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| 1. Bellum puerōs et puellās terret. | 4. Timent virī et fēminae ōrant.       |
| 2. Puer puellaque labōrant.         | 5. Dōnum videt sed tacet.              |
| 3. Habēmusne aquam et rosās?        | 6. Et agricola et nauta locum laudant. |

## 15. Reading Latin: Using Expectations

In order to read successfully (in any language), it is necessary to have a sense of what makes a complete sentence. In English we expect a simple statement to appear in the order subject + verb + direct object (“the woman praises the boy”), and we become so accustomed to this pattern that we don’t think about it as we read. Similarly, if we see the verb “hit,” we know the sentence is not complete without a direct object (§4). Since Latin does not use the same word order as English, it is more difficult to know at first when a sentence is complete. Once you learn to notice certain clues, however, you will find that you can predict what will come next even in a Latin sentence.

Chapter 1 introduced two common sentence patterns and some endings which help you to identify verbs. This chapter has introduced endings which help you identify the case of a noun and therefore its use in a sentence. With these tools, you should be able to predict what to expect as you read a Latin sentence.

Intransitive: **agricola labōrat.** The farmer works.

- subject            nominative case ending
- verb                verb ending

Transitive: **fēmina rosam habet.** The woman has a rose.

- subject            nominative case ending
- verb                verb ending
- direct object    accusative case ending

Because conjunctions connect items with the same function (§14), you should also be able to predict what form is coming next when you see a phrase such as “**puella et \_\_\_\_\_**” (*another nominative*). If you pay close attention to the endings on words and practice the art of expecting what is likely to come next in a sentence, you will soon find yourself reading Latin successfully.

EXERCISE 13. In the following sentences, use your knowledge of sentence patterns, verb and noun endings, vocabulary, and how conjunctions work to fill in the blank with the form needed to complete each sentence.

*Example:* Puerī iuva\_\_\_\_. Puerī iuvantur.  
(Puerī is nominative plural, so it needs a third person plural verb)

- |                                  |  |
|----------------------------------|--|
| 1. Fēmina iace_____.             | 5. Vir_____ clāmant.                     |
| 2. Puell_____ rosam habet.       | 6. Naut_____ agricolaeque locum laudant. |
| 3. Vir amīc_____ (sg.) docet.    | 7. Terretne puerōs bell_____?            |
| 4. Dominī dōn_____ (pl.) optant. | 8. Virum vidē_____ et vocāmus.           |

EXERCISE 14. Translate each of the following sentences.

- |                                    |   |
|------------------------------------|---|
| 1. Vir puerque dominum vident.     | 7. He desires to see the gift.                            |
| 2. Puella clāmat et fēmina timet.  | 8. The lord praises the heroes.                           |
| 3. Nauta iacet sed amīcus labōrat. | 9. Is she teaching* the girls literature?                 |
| 4. Vidēsne dōna?                   | 10. They ought to see the place.                          |
| 5. Cōnsilium habētis.              | 11. We conquer the kingdoms.                              |
| 6. Agricolam aquam ōrāre audent.*  | 12. Both the farmer and the hero are calling the sailors. |

\* see §8b special note

**NARRATIVE A**

*A short description of Italy before wars with neighbors and with foreigners interrupted the peaceful life of the people:*

Ītalia agrōs et agricolās habet. Nātūra aquam cibumque dat et bellum  
puerōs puellāsque nōn terret. Locum virī fēminaeque laudant. Iuvat  
fortūna populum!

**VOCABULARY:**

Ītalia, Ītaliae <i>f.</i>	Italy	dō, dare	to give
cibus, cibī <i>m.</i>	food	populus, populī <i>m.</i>	the people

**Chapter 2 Vocabulary****Nouns**

ager, agrī <i>m.</i>	(cultivated) field; countryside
amīcus, amīcī <i>m.</i>	friend
animus, animī <i>m.</i>	mind, spirit, courage
bellum, bellī <i>n.</i>	war
cōnsilium, cōnsiliī <i>n.</i>	plan, advice
dominus, dominī <i>m.</i>	master, lord
dōnum, dōnī <i>n.</i>	gift, present
littera, litterae <i>f.</i>	letter (of the alphabet); pl. letter, literature
locus, locī <i>m.</i>	place, position
<i>(in pl. sometimes also neuter)</i>	
nātūra, nātūrae <i>f.</i>	nature
puer, puerī <i>m.</i>	boy
puella, puellae <i>f.</i>	girl
rēgnum, rēgnī <i>n.</i>	kingdom, royal power
vir, virī <i>m.</i>	man; hero; husband

**Verbs**

audeō, audēre, ausus sum	to dare
clāmō, clāmāre, clāmāvī, clāmātus	to shout
dubitō, dubitare, dubitāvī, dubitātus	to hesitate, doubt
ōrō, ōrāre, ōrāvī, ōrātus	to pray, beg, beg for
terreō, terrēre, terruī, territus	to terrify, scare

**Conjunctions**

et	and
et ... et	both ... and
-que	and
sed	but

# CHAPTER 3

## Genitive Case

Uses: Possession, Part of the Whole

## Dative Case

Uses: Indirect Object, Reference

## Expectations

## Sentence Pattern:

Intransitive Verbs used with a Dative

So far you have learned the core items of a sentence: the subject (nominative case), the verb, and the direct object (accusative case). This chapter introduces two new cases which are most often used as modifiers of these core items.

## 16. Genitive Case

Remember that the genitive singular is the second form listed in the dictionary entry for nouns and helps identify the declension of the noun (§11):

	1ST DECLENSION	2ND DECLENSION
<i>Gen. sg.</i>	puellae	locī
<i>Gen. pl.</i>	puellārum	locōrum

The **genitive** case is usually best translated “of \_\_\_\_\_” and can indicate several different relationships between a noun and another word. Two of the most common uses of the genitive are to show:

- **Possession**

liber <b>puellae</b>	the book <b>of the girl</b> (the girl’s book)
animus <b>virī</b>	the spirit <b>of the man</b> (the man’s spirit)

- **Part of a Whole (Partitive)** - the genitive expresses the whole of which a part is mentioned

turba <b>virōrum</b>	a crowd <b>of men</b>
nēmō <b>fēminārum</b>	no one <b>of the women</b>

## 17. Dative Case

The dative singular forms have different endings in the first and second declensions, but the dative plural forms are the same in both declensions:

	1ST DECLENSION	2ND DECLENSION
<i>Dat. sg.</i>	puellae	locō
<i>Dat. pl.</i>	puellīs	locīs

The **dative** case is usually best translated “to \_\_\_\_\_” or “for \_\_\_\_\_” and, like the genitive, has a number of different uses. Two of the most common uses are to show:

- **indirect object** - the person to whom something is given, said or done

**Puellae** dōnum dat.

He gives a gift **to the girl**.

(= he gives **the girl** a gift)

**Virō** fābulās nārrāmus.

We tell stories **to the man**.

(= we tell **the man** stories)

Notice that, in the translations in parentheses above, a shift of English word order replaces the word “to” before the indirect object.

- **reference (interest)** - the person to whom a statement refers or is of interest

**Dominō** labōrat.

He is working **for the master**.

**Puerīs** dōnum habet.

He has a gift **for the boys**.

## 18. Expectations

With the addition of the genitive and dative cases, reading Latin becomes more complicated, and it becomes even more important to pay attention to the context of the sentence. The first declension ending **-ae** can signal either a nominative plural, or a genitive or dative singular, and the second declension ending **-ī** can signal either a nominative plural or a genitive singular. However the number of the verb (singular or plural) will help you know whether or not to expect a nominative plural.

Similarly, in the first two chapters, transitive verbs led you to expect an accusative direct object. Now, verbs with the meanings “show,” “tell,” and “give” should lead you to expect not only an accusative direct object, but also a dative indirect object:

dō

I give a gift **to him**.

(= I give **him** a gift)

nārrō

We tell a story **to her**.

(= We tell **her** a story)

mōnstrō

They show a book **to us**.

(= They show **us** a book)

Whether or not an indirect object appears, expecting that it might appear will make you a better reader.



EXERCISE 15. Identify each of the underlined nouns by case, number and gender in the context of the sentence.

*Example:* Rosās fēminae puellis dant. fēminae = Nominative, plural, feminine

- |                                       |  |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| 1. Mōnstrāsne librum <u>nautīs</u> ?  | 4. <u>Puerī</u> fābulam nārrant.           |
| 2. Dōna <u>deō</u> portat.            | 5. <u>Arma</u> virumque laudō.             |
| 3. Turba <u>virōrum</u> caelum videt. | 6. Agrōs <u>agricolae</u> laudāre solēmus. |

EXERCISE 16. In each of the following English sentences, identify the words that Latin would express with a genitive or dative form, and say how they are used.

*Example:* We give the girl the man's book. girl = dative - indirect object  
man's = genitive - possession

- Some of the men destroyed the house of the king.
- Tell the king this.
- The prince's army is fighting for the king.
- I will show the king part of the treasure.

EXERCISE 17. Change the genitive and dative forms from singular to plural or plural to singular in each of the following sentences, then translate the new sentence.

*Example:* Arma virōrum puerō damus. Arma **virī puerīs** dāmus.  
We give the man's weapons to the boys.

- |                            |                               |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. Amīcus fēminārum tacet. | 4. Nautīs fabulam nārrat.     |
| 2. Turba rēgnō labōrat.    | 5. Templum dēi vidēmus.       |
| 3. Habēsne dominī librōs?  | 6. Nēmō aquam puellae portat. |

## 19. Sentence Pattern: Special Intransitive

So far you have seen two sentence patterns (§4):

- 1) intransitive: **Agricola labōrat.** The farmer works.
  - subject
  - verb
- 2) transitive: **Fēmina rosam habet.** The woman has a rose.
  - subject
  - verb
  - direct object (in the Accusative)

A third, less common, sentence pattern uses certain intransitive verbs which take an object in the **dative** rather than the accusative case. In this pattern the dative is a core item in the sentence rather than a modifier.

- 3) **special intransitive**
  - subject
  - verb
  - object - in the dative

The special intransitive pattern depends on the use of specific verbs, e.g.:

pāreō - **Dominō parent.**

They obey the master.

They are obedient to the master.

placeō - **Rosae fēminīs placent.**

The roses please the women.

The roses are pleasing to the women.

Notice that when these sentences are translated into English, the dative object often sounds just like a direct object (as in the first and third translations above). The dictionary listing for verbs which take their object in the dative will indicate this:

**noceō, nocēre, nocuī (+ dat.)**

harm, be harmful to

EXERCISE 18. Identify the sentence pattern in each of the following.

*Example:* Rosās habētis.

Transitive (D.O + V [+ S - understood from the verb ending])

1. Puerīs fābulam nārrant.

3. Templum dīs placet.

2. Amīcus fēminārum tacet.

4. Terrentne ventī puellās?

EXERCISE 19. Identify the case and use of the underlined form and then translate the sentence.

*Example:* Rosās fēminae dās.

fēminae = dative - indirect object

You (sg.) give roses to the woman.

1. Templum dīs aedificant.

4. Imperium dominī agricolās terret.

2. Vidētisne turbam nautārum?

5. Amīcōs iuvāre debēmus.

3. Et dōnum et fabulae puellīs placent.

6. Puerō librum mōnstrō.

EXERCISE 20. Translate each of the following sentences.

1. Puerī puellaeque clāmāre solent.

4. Dī turbae imperium mōnstrant.

2. Ventus nautīs nocet.

5. Nihil virum fēminamque terret.

3. Habēsne rēgnō cōnsilium?

6. Animum virō nātūra dat.

EXERCISE 21. Translate into Latin.

1. They are building the gods' temples.

5. A man is bringing weapons for the farmers.

2. The girls desire to see the field and sky.

6. We ought to have gifts for the women.

3. The book pleases the man.

7. Are the boys and girls obeying the men?

4. Are you (pl.) telling stories to the boys?

8. She hesitates to pray.

## NARRATIVE B

*Sometimes we learn about early wars from the accounts of poets. The war here is fictional.*

Poetae fābulās nārrant et mōnstrant animum virōrum: Advenae ad terram Ītalīae nāvigant. Pugnāre solent et bellum portant. Puerī puellaeque timent. Populus templum aedificat et dīs dona dat. Sed virī Ītalīae imperium habent et nautās superant. Turba virōs laudat et populus gaudet.

## VOCABULARY:

advena, advenae <i>m.</i>	foreigner	Ītalīa, Ītalīae <i>f.</i>	Italy
ad terram	“to the land”	populus, populī <i>m.</i>	the people
nāvigō, nāvigāre	to sail	gaudeō, gaudēre	to rejoice

## Chapter 3 Vocabulary

## Nouns

arma, armōrum <i>n.</i> (pl.)	arms, weapons
caelum, caelī <i>n.</i>	sky, heavens
deus, deī <i>m.</i>	god
<i>nom. pl.</i> = dī; <i>dat. pl. and abl. pl.</i> = dīs	
fābula, fābulae <i>f.</i>	story
imperium, imperiī <i>n.</i>	command, (military) power
liber, librī <i>m.</i>	book
nēmō <i>m.</i>	no one
<i>acc. sg.</i> = nēminem	
nihil <i>n.</i> ( <i>indeclinable</i> )	nothing
nīl (contracted form)	
templum, templī <i>n.</i>	temple, shrine
turba, turbae <i>f.</i>	crowd
ventus, ventī <i>m.</i>	wind, breeze

## Verbs

aedificō, aedificāre, aedificāvī, aedificātus	to build
dō, dare, dedī, datus	to give
mōnstrō, mōnstrāre, mōnstrāvī, mōnstrātus	to show, demonstrate
nārrō, nārrāre, nārrāvī, nārrātus	to tell (a story)
noceō, nocēre, nocuī (+ dat.)	to harm, be harmful to
pāreō, pārere, pārui (+ dat.)	to obey, be obedient to
placeō, placere, placui (+ dat.)	to please, be pleasing to
portō, portāre, portāvī, portātus	to carry, bring
pugnō, pugnāre, pugnāvī, pugnātus	to fight
soleō, solere, solitus sum	to be accustomed



Altar in the Forum. Pompeii, 1st c. A.D.

# CHAPTER 4

## The Adverb; Adverbial Modification

### Ablative Case

#### Use: Means/Instrument

### The Preposition: Uses with the Accusative and Ablative

#### Expressions of Place

### Word Order

## 20. The Adverb

Adverbs give information about time, place, manner or degree, and answer questions such as when?, where?, how?, how much?, to what extent? They usually modify verbs, although they may also modify adjectives, other adverbs, or even a whole sentence:

They live **there**.

He is **almost** seven.

They work **very quickly**.

This is **indeed** an interesting topic.

Unlike nouns, **adverbs** in Latin are not declined. Many adverbs end in **-ter** or **-ē**, but the form of others must be memorized:

fortiter	bravely
hodiē	today
facile	easily
ibi	there
tandem	finally

## 21. Ablative Case

The ablative singular always ends in a vowel, usually long. In the first and second declensions the ablative plural forms are the same and are also identical to the dative plural:

	1ST DECLENSION	2ND DECLENSION
<i>Abl. sg.</i>	puellā	locō
<i>Abl. pl.</i>	puellīs	locīs

Remember that in the first declension, the long **-ā** of the ablative singular ending distinguishes it from the nominative singular, which ends in a short **-a**.

The **ablative** case has been called the “junk case” by students over the years because it seems to have so many meanings. This is not far from the truth, since the Ablative case in Latin combines three distinct cases from an earlier language. As a result, there is no single way to translate the ablative, although using a phrase with the English prepositions *by*, *with*, *from*, *in*, or *at* will cover most of the common uses. One important use of the ablative is to show:

- **means / instrument** — the thing by or with which something is done

<b>Oculis</b> videō.	I see <b>with my eyes</b> .
<b>Armīs</b> pugnāt.	They fight <b>with weapons</b> .
<b>Litterīs</b> mōnstrāmus.	We show this <b>by (means of) a letter</b> .

## 22. The Preposition

Like adverbs, Latin **prepositions** are not declined. In Latin as in English, *a preposition never appears alone in a sentence*. It occurs with a noun (or pronoun), called the **object of the preposition**, which is either in the **accusative** or the **ablative** case. The dictionary entry for a preposition will indicate which case it is used with, and this case should be memorized when you learn each new preposition. Note that some prepositions can be used with either case and will have different meanings with each case:

<b>ex</b> (+ abl.)	out of, from
<b>in</b> (+ abl.)	in, on
<b>in</b> (+ acc.)	into, onto, against

A preposition usually comes before its object. Chapter 2 introduced the idea of using expectations as you read Latin (§15). Remember, when you see a preposition in Latin it should lead you to expect a noun in the accusative or ablative.

## 23. Expressions of Place

Latin regularly uses prepositional phrases to indicate where or in what direction an action happens. Motion away from is indicated with a preposition + the ablative case; motion towards with a preposition + the accusative case:

- **place where** - with *ablative* case

Agricola <b>in agrō</b> labōrat.	The farmer works <b>in the field</b> .
<b>Prō templis</b> ōrant.	They pray <b>in front of the shrines</b> .
- **place from which** - with *ablative* case

Puella <b>ā turbā</b> festīnat.	The girl hurries <b>away from the crowd</b> .
<b>Ē pontō</b> puerōs vocāmus.	We call the boys <b>out of the ocean</b> .
- **place to which** - with *accusative* case

Portāsne aquam <b>ad virōs</b> ?	Are you bringing water <b>to the men</b> ?
<b>In templum</b> ambulat.	She walks <b>into the temple</b> .

Notice that with either **place from which** or **place to which**, you should expect a *verb of motion* in the sentence.

EXERCISE 22. Identify the case and use of each of the underlined words, then translate the sentence.

*Example:* Virī in agrīs pugnant. ablative - place where; object of prep. **in**

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Puella ad <u>fēminam</u> librum portat. | 5. Ad templum <u>deō</u> dōnum            |
| 2. In <u>viā</u> dominus iacet.            | portāmus.                                 |
| 3. Virōs <u>armīs</u> superātis.           | 6. Vir fēminaque ē <u>turbā</u> ambulant. |
| 4. Nautae trāns <u>pontum</u> nāvigant.    |   |

You have now learned three different Latin forms that can be translated into English with the preposition “to.” Be careful as you read to distinguish among these very different uses:

- **laudāre** to praise infinitive
- **puerō** to the boy dative indirect object
- **ad locum** to the place preposition + accusative (motion towards)

EXERCISE 23. For the following sentences, indicate how you would express the underlined phrase in Latin. Do not translate the phrases.

*Example:* We give a gift to the girls. dative indirect object

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. They are walking <u>to the forest</u> . | 3. They told a story <u>to the children</u> . |
| 2. We want <u>to learn</u> Latin!          | 4. Will you come <u>to me</u> ?               |

## 24. Word Order

Word order in Latin is much more variable than in English, which has strict word order rules. In general, the first and last words of the sentence in Latin are the most important, so an author may put in those places whatever words he wants to emphasize. If no special emphasis is intended, usually the subject will appear first and the verb last. Word order in poetry and in highly rhetorical works, however, may be quite different from “normal” word order in a prose narrative. With these cautions, and an extra warning not to take the following as any kind of “rule,” here is a “normal” word order pattern for a Latin sentence in which no particular emphasis is intended:

**Amīcus virī puerō in agrō aquam saepe dat.**

The man’s friend often gives water to the boy in the field.

subject	<b>amīcus</b>	nominative
modifier of the subject	<b>virī</b>	genitive
indirect object	<b>puerō</b>	dative
modifier of the verb (e.g. place, means)	<b>in agrō</b>	prep. phrase
direct object	<b>aquam</b>	accusative
adverb	<b>saepe</b>	adverb
verb	<b>dat</b>	verb

## Chunks

As you begin to build expectations in reading Latin, one of the best skills to practice is that of recognizing “chunks,” words and phrases that naturally go together. In the sentence above, for instance, there are at least two chunks:

<b>amīcus virī</b>	the man’s friend	subject plus modifier
<b>in agrō</b>	in the field	prepositional phrase

Some readers will also see a third chunk:

<b>saepe dat</b>	(he) often gives	adverb plus verb
------------------	------------------	------------------

And others will automatically see the direct object with the verb in this third chunk:

<b>aquam saepe dat</b>	(he) often gives water
------------------------	------------------------

Notice that **puerō in agrō** is not a chunk, despite the similarity of the endings on **agrō** and **puerō**.

EXERCISE 24. In the following sentences, copy each chunk you see and identify it as in the examples above.

1. Puellīs fābulam nārrāre nōn solet.
2. Vir fēminaque ex agrō festīnant.
3. Nēmō puerōrum in viam ambulāre audet.
4. Pontum et caelum oculīs facile vidēmus.

EXERCISE 25. Translate each of the following.

- |   |                                     |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| 1. In casā puerōs litterās saepe docet.     | 5. Nātūra locī turbam terret.       |
| 2. Tum dōnīs prō templō dīs placēmus.       | 6. Dāsne amīcīs dominōque cōnsilia? |
| 3. Agricola trāns agrum tandem festīnat.    | 7. Ventus aquaque agrīs nocent.     |
| 4. Puerī virō pārent et in casam festīnant. | 8. Nēmō in viam nunc errat.         |

EXERCISE 26. Translate into Latin.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. We often sail across the ocean.                          | 5. The roses lie in the road.                                   |
| 2. Do the boys desire to see the letter?                    | 6. They give the crowd of men weapons.                          |
| 3. The gods do not teach men with books.                    | 7. Do the winds please the sailors?                             |
| 4. The farmer is finally building a cottage for his friend. | 8. Boys and men hurry out of the crowd and towards the temples. |



**READING 1** (*adapted*)

*The early Latin poet Ennius (239-169 B.C.) tells how the god Neptune got his domain from Jupiter:*

Iuppiter Neptūnō imperium dat  
pontī et Neptūnus īnsulās et loca prope pontum rēgnat.

## VOCABULARY:

īnsula, īnsulae <i>f.</i>	island
prope (+ acc.)	near
rēgnō, rēgnāre	to rule over

**PRACTICE SENTENCES**

Identify the case and use of the underlined word, then translate.

*Example:* Turba virōrum in viā errat.

genitive - partitive (of the whole)  
A crowd of men wanders in the road.

1. In oculīs animus habitat.
2. In terrīs imperium Caelum habet.

(Pliny)  
(Ennius - adapted; *talking about the order of the universe*)

## VOCABULARY:

habitō, habitāre	to live
terra, terrae <i>f.</i>	land, earth

## Chapter 4 Vocabulary

### Nouns

<i>casa, casae f.</i>	cottage, house
<i>oculus, oculi m.</i>	eye
<i>pontus, ponti m.</i>	sea, ocean
<i>via, viae f.</i>	way, road

### Verbs

<i>ambulō, ambulāre, ambulāvī</i>	to walk
<i>errō, errāre, errāvī, errātus</i>	to wander; err
<i>festinō, festināre, festināvī, festinātus</i>	to hurry, hasten
<i>moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtus</i>	to move
<i>nāvigō, nāvigāre, nāvigāvī, nāvigātus</i>	to sail

### Adverbs

<i>facile</i>	easily
<i>nōn</i>	not
<i>nunc</i>	now
<i>saepe</i>	often
<i>tandem</i>	finally
<i>tum</i>	then, at that time, next

### Prepositions

<i>ā, ab (+ abl.)</i>	away from
<i>ad (+ acc.)</i>	to, toward
<i>ē, ex (+ abl.)</i>	out of, from
<i>in (+ abl.)</i>	in, on
<i>in (+ acc.)</i>	into, onto, against
<i>prō (+ abl.)</i>	in front of; on behalf of; instead of
<i>trans (+ acc.)</i>	across, beyond

# CHAPTER 5

## The Adjective: First and Second Declensions

### Agreement

### The Gap

### Present Indicative and Infinitive of Sum

### Sentence Pattern: Linking

### More Uses of the Ablative

### Accompaniment

### Manner

## 25. The Adjective

Adjectives in Latin look like nouns and use most of the same endings. Unlike nouns, which have only one gender, however, adjectives have masculine, feminine and neuter forms. The dictionary entry for an adjective lists the nominative singular form of each gender: **bonus, bona, bonum**. Adjectives fall into two groups, one which uses the endings of the first and second declension and another which uses endings of the third declension. There are no fourth or fifth declension adjectives.

This chapter introduces adjectives of the first and second declension which follow the patterns for nouns that you have already seen (§12, 13). Adjectives of the third declension will be introduced in chapter 12.

Here is a sample adjective of the first and second declension: **bonus, bona, bonum** = good

SINGULAR	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
<i>Nominative</i>	bonus	bona	bonum
<i>Genitive</i>	bonī	bonae	bonī
<i>Dative</i>	bonō	bonae	bonō
<i>Accusative</i>	bonum	bonam	bonum
<i>Ablative</i>	bonō	bonā	bonō
PLURAL			
<i>Nominative</i>	bonī	bonae	bona
<i>Genitive</i>	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
<i>Dative</i>	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
<i>Accusative</i>	bonōs	bonās	bona
<i>Ablative</i>	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs

Some adjectives follow the pattern of **puer** (§13):

liber	libera	liberum
liberī	liberae	liberī
<i>etc.</i>		

Some follow the pattern of **ager** (§13):

noster	nostra	nostrum
nostrī	nostrae	nostrī
<i>etc.</i>		

Note that the stem of these adjectives can be determined by dropping the nominative feminine or neuter singular ending:

<b>liber</b> (a)	<b>liber</b> (um)
<b>nostr</b> (a)	<b>nostr</b> (um)

EXERCISE 27. Given the dictionary entries below, identify each of the following forms by part of speech (adjective or noun), case, number and gender. If the ending is ambiguous, include all possibilities.

altus, alta, altum	pontus, pontī <i>m.</i>
imperium, imperī <i>n.</i>	pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum
parvus, parva, parvum	rosa, rosae <i>f.</i>

ITEM	PART OF SPEECH	CASE	NUMBER	GENDER
<i>Example:</i>				
rosam	noun	accusative	singular	feminine
parvōrum	adjective	genitive	plural	masc. or neuter
1. pontōs				
2. parvō				
3. pontī				
4. rosīs				
5. altīs				
6. pulchrā				
7. imperia				
8. altum				

## 26. Agreement

Adjectives agree with the nouns they modify in case, number and gender. This does not mean that they belong to the same declension or that their endings always look the same:

<b>pulchra puella</b>	(nominative, singular, feminine)	beautiful girl
<b>pulcher amīcus</b>	(nominative, singular, masculine)	handsome friend
<b>bonum agricolam</b>	(accusative, singular, masculine)	good farmer
<b>malus vir</b>	(nominative, singular, masculine)	evil man

For a while you will only see first and second declension nouns and adjectives. Beginning in Chapter 7 you will begin to see combinations of nouns and adjectives from different declensions.

When one adjective modifies two or more nouns of different genders, it often agrees with the nearest noun.

**ager et casa tua**

your field and house

See also §29 below.

Because Latin uses agreement in case, number and gender to indicate what noun an adjective modifies, the adjective and noun do not have to appear next to each other, or in a particular order, as they usually do in English. This is especially true in poetry, but you should expect that a noun and its adjective may be separated in any text that you are reading.

**EXERCISE 28.** Identify each of the following nouns by case, number and gender, then say which adjectives could modify the noun listed with them. Be prepared to say why the others could NOT modify the noun.

*Example:*

pontus: alta, magnus, pulcher, parvī  
 pontus (nom. sg. m.) magnus, pulcher (also nom. sg. m.)  
 (alta is not m., parvī can be nom. m., but not sg., or m.  
 sg., but not nom.)

1. vir:	magnus	malum	pulcher	bonī
2. puellā:	parva	pulchrā	tuās	liberā
3. pontōs:	altus	parvās	multōs	pulchrum
4. rēgnīs:	tuī	aegrā	meās	pulchrīs
5. locō:	altā	magnus	parvō	bonōs
6. dōnum:	pulchrum	parvus	meum	magnōrum
7. nauta:	bona	bonus	liber	malae
8. nātūra:	bona	bonus	dīvīnā	tua

**EXERCISE 29.** Translate each of the following noun-adjective pairs into the Latin case indicated.

- |                       |                           |
|-----------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. good sailor (nom.) | 4. beautiful roses (acc.) |
| 2. large gifts (acc.) | 5. bad fortune (dat.)     |
| 3. small field (nom.) | 6. our places (nom.)      |

## 27. The Gap

In Latin, as in English, an adjective can be used without an accompanying noun (this is often called the “substantive” use), as in the following:

the land of the free and the home of the brave

The missing noun is understood from the context (*the land of the free people...*). In Latin, the gender and number of the adjective give you extra help at filling in the gap. If the adjective has a masculine ending it usually indicates men (or people in general), if it is feminine, women, and if neuter, things:

<b>bonus</b>	a good man
<b>bonī</b> (nom. pl.)	good men; good people
<b>aegra</b> (nom. sg.)	sick woman
<b>magnum</b> (neuter)	large thing

Latin can also leave out (“gap”) other words in a sentence. This is especially common when a coordinating conjunction (§14) is present. In these instances it is important to pay close attention to the case of each word and make use of your skill at expecting what should be present in the sentence:

**Puer virō sed nōn puella pāret.** The boy obeys the man, but the girl does not. *or*  
The boy obeys the man, but the girl does not obey the man.

Note that *the boy obeys the man, but not the girl* would have been an ambiguous translation of this sentence. Why?

EXERCISE 30. Translate the underlined word or phrase in the context of the sentence given.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. <u>Multa</u> vidēmus.               | 4. Do you like <u>beautiful things</u> ?        |
| 2. <u>Altum</u> nāvigant.              | 5. The <u>free man</u> is not afraid.           |
| 3. <u>Malī</u> puellae aquam nōn dant. | 6. We help the good women, not <u>the bad</u> . |

## 28. Sum: Present Indicative and Infinitive

In Latin, as in most languages, the verb *to be* is irregular and must be memorized. Here is the **present indicative** of **sum**:

<i>1st sg.</i>	<b>sum</b>	I am
<i>2nd sg.</i>	<b>es</b>	you are
<i>3rd sg.</i>	<b>est</b>	he, she, it, there is
<i>1st pl.</i>	<b>sumus</b>	we are
<i>2nd pl.</i>	<b>estis</b>	you (all) are
<i>3rd pl.</i>	<b>sunt</b>	they, there are
<i>Infinitive</i>	<b>esse</b>	to be

## 29. Sentence Pattern: Linking

So far you have had three regular sentence patterns:

- |                                     |                            |                       |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------|-----------------------|
| intransitive                        | <b>Agricola labōrat.</b>   | The farmer works.     |
| • subject                           |                            |                       |
| • verb                              |                            |                       |
| transitive                          | <b>Fēmina rosam habet.</b> | The woman has a rose. |
| • subject                           |                            |                       |
| • verb                              |                            |                       |
| • direct object - in the accusative |                            |                       |

special intransitive	<b>dominō parent.</b>	They obey the master.
• subject		
• verb		
• object - in the dative		

A fourth common pattern is called **linking**. This pattern uses a verb which links the subject to an adjective or noun commonly called the **subject complement** because it completes the picture of the subject. Since the subject of a finite verb is always nominative, the subject complement will also be nominative: **vir est bonus.** = The man *is* good. Here are the elements of this sentence pattern:

### linking

- subject
- linking verb
- subject complement (= predicate nominative)

Future chapters will introduce other verbs which can occur in a linking pattern, but **sum** is one of the most common. Note that **sum** may occur in both a linking and an intransitive pattern:

Linking:	<b>Virī sunt liberī.</b>	The men are free.
	<b>Virī sunt.</b>	They are men.
Intransitive:	<b>Sum.</b>	I am.
	<b>Sunt virī.</b>	Men exist. (or) There are men.

When the verb appears first, it is frequently a signal of the intransitive pattern: *there is, there are*. Sometimes, as in the second and fourth examples (**virī sunt / sunt virī**), you will need to use the context of the sentence to decide the meaning.

When one adjective modifies two nouns of different genders, it is regularly plural and usually masculine if the nouns refer to people:

<b>Vir et fēmina sunt bonī.</b>	The man and woman are good.
---------------------------------	-----------------------------

## 30. More Uses of the Ablative

In Chapter 4 you learned that the ablative case could be used *without a preposition* to indicate the means or instrument by which something is done (§21), and *with a preposition* to indicate place where or place from which (§23). With the preposition **cum** the ablative can indicate two different things, depending whether the noun is animate (a person) or inanimate (not a person):

- **accompaniment** — the person/people with whom something is done  

<b>Cum amīcīs</b> labōrat.	She works <b>with her friends</b> .
----------------------------	-------------------------------------
- **manner** — the way in which something is done  

<b>Cum cūrā</b> labōrat.	She works <b>with care</b> .
--------------------------	------------------------------

When the noun is modified by an adjective in an ablative of manner, the adjective regularly comes first and the preposition may be omitted. If it is included, it often appears between the two words:

**Magnā cum cūrā** labōrat.      She works **with great care**.

EXERCISE 31. Fill in the blank(s) with the form(s) needed to complete each sentence. Remember to use your knowledge of sentence patterns, noun and verb endings, chunks (§24) etc. to help you know what to expect (§15, 18).

1. Fēmina ad silv\_\_\_\_\_ festīnat.
2. Nautae cum amīc\_\_\_\_\_ navig\_\_\_\_\_ solent.
3. Me\_\_\_\_\_ liber nōn magn\_\_\_\_\_ est.
4. Esne bon\_\_\_\_\_?
5. Agricola magn\_\_\_\_\_ sapienti\_\_\_\_\_ habet.
6. Nēmō vir\_\_\_\_\_ saxum mov\_\_\_\_\_ audet.

EXERCISE 32. Translate each of the following sentences.

1. Multī in nostrā terrā multa nōn habent.
2. Puella pulchra multīs est.
3. Bonus tacet sed malus saepe clāmat.
4. Est magnum saxum sub terrā.
5. Dominus virōs puerōsque ad bellum vocāre optat.
6. Sunt in meis agrīs bonī agricolae.
7. Aegrae prō templō ōrāre solent.
8. Fēmina multōs amīcōs nautae iuvat.
9. Iactāsne in viā tuās rōsās?
10. Nunc caelum pulchrum est et ventus magnus.

EXERCISE 33. Translate into Latin.

1. Your (pl.) house is small, but beautiful.
2. I do not hesitate to wander in the forest.
3. We ask the gods for fame and good fortune.
4. Now he is hurrying to the divine temple of the gods.
5. The man's kingdom lies across the sea.
6. He finally gives the girl beautiful gifts.
7. The master teaches the girls with great care.
8. The men often work in the field with the women.



In the Readings and Practice Sentences from now on, try to guess the meanings of the words in bold before looking for them in the accompanying vocabulary.

## READING 2 (*adapted*)

*Ennius describes a calm crossing from Italy to Africa:*

Mundus caeli **vastus** tacet  
et Neptūnus saevus undīs asperīs **pausam** dat.

### VOCABULARY:

mundus, -ī <i>m.</i>	universe,	unda, undae <i>f.</i>	wave
	firmament	asper, -a, -um	rough
vastus, -a, -um	vast, huge	pausa, -ae <i>f.</i>	rest, pause
saevus, -a, -um	savage		

## READING 3 (*adapted*)

*Lucius Annaeus Florus (c. 120 A.D.) wrote an abridged version of Roman history, from the founding of Rome to the time of Augustus. The following passage is adapted from the beginning of his account. The story begins with Romulus and Remus, twin sons of a priestess, Rhea Silvia, and the Roman god, Mars, who were born during the reign of Amulius.*

Note: The Romans did not use capital letters to signal the beginning of a sentence, and some modern Latin texts also follow this practice. Some of the narrative readings in this book will only use capitals for proper names and the beginning of paragraphs and some quotations.

Prīmus et **Rōmae** et imperiī conditor Rōmulus est, **filius** deī, Martis, et Rhēae Silviae. Rōmulum cum Remō frātre in Tiberīnum rēx, Amulius, iactat. sed īfantēs clāmant et lupa puerōs iuvat. tum sub arbore Faustulus pāstor parvōs puerōs videt et portat in casam et ēducat.

### VOCABULARY:

prīmus, -a, -um	first	rēx (nom.)	king
Rōma, -ae <i>f.</i>	Rome	īfantēs (nom.)(pl.)	infants
conditor (nom.)	founder	lupa, -ae <i>f.</i>	she-wolf
filius, filiī <i>m.</i>	son	pāstor (nom.)	shepherd
frātre (abl.)	brother	arbore (abl.)	tree
Tiberīnus, -ī <i>m.</i>	Tiber	ēducō, -āre	to bring up, rear
	(river in Rome)		

**PRACTICE SENTENCES**

Identify the case and use of the underlined words, then translate.

1. Nēmō ad altum ambulat locum sī timet. (Publilius Syrus - adapted)
2. Sī virum multū timent, multōs timēre debet. (Publilius Syrus - adapted)
3. Nec vīta nec fortūna propria est virīs. (Publilius Syrus - adapted)
4. Fortūna caeca est. (Cicero)

**VOCABULARY:**

sī	if	proprius, -a, -um	one's own;
nec ... nec	neither ... nor		permanent
vīta, -ae f.	life	caecus, -a, -um	blind

**Chapter 5 Vocabulary****Nouns**

cūra, cūrae f.	care, anxiety
sapientia, sapientiae f.	wisdom
saxum, saxī n.	rock; cliff
silva, silvae f.	forest, wood
terra, terrae f.	land, earth, soil; country

**Verbs**

iactō, iactāre, iactāvī, iactātus	to throw
sum, esse, fuī, futūrus	to be, exist

**Adjectives**

aeger, aegra, aegrum	sick, weak
altus, alta, altum	high, deep
bonus, bona, bonum	good
dīvīnus, dīvīna, dīvīnum	divine, of the gods; prophetic
liber, libera, liberum	free
magnus, magna, magnum	large, great
malus, mala, malum	bad
meus, mea, meum	my
multus, multa, multum	much; many (pl.)
noster, nostra, nostrum	our
parvus, parva, parvum	small
pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum	beautiful, handsome; fine
tuus, tua, tuum	your, your own (sg.)
vester, vestra, vestrum	your (pl.)

**Prepositions**

cum (+ abl.)	with
sub (+ abl.)	under, beneath
sub (+ acc.)	to the foot/base of, along under ( <i>implying motion</i> )

# READING CHAPTER I

Narrative Reading: Fall of Troy  
Word Derivations and Word Building  
Dictionary Practice / Form Identification

The first five chapters have introduced you to the basics of Latin verbs, nouns, adjectives, prepositions and conjunctions. This chapter and the reading chapters which occur every five chapters throughout the book will include review material for extra practice.

## Narrative Reading I

*This passage describes how the Trojan War came to an end after ten years of fighting between the Greeks and Trojans.*

**Graeci** et **Trōiānī** bellum **longum** pugnant. tandem alii **Graecōrum** ad insulam Tenedum nāvigant et alii in ligneō equō latent. ignārī doli **Trōiānī** in **Trōiam** equum portant. laetī sunt et multa convīvia multō cum **vīnō** parant. tum somnus **Trōiānōs** habet. **Graeci** ab insulā ad **Trōiam** nāvigant; amīcī ex equō festīnant et portās **Trōiae** reserant. ūnus **Trōiānus** ex somnō aliōs excitat et virī ad arma festīnant. sed **Graeci Trōiānōs** dolō armīsque superant.

### VOCABULARY:

Graecus, -a, -um	Greek	dolus, -ī <i>m.</i>	trick, deceit
Trōiānus, -a, -um	Trojan	Trōia, -ae <i>f.</i>	Troy
longus, -a, -um	long	laetus, -a, -um	happy
alii ... alii	some ... others	convīvium, -ī <i>n.</i>	feast
alius, -a, -um	other	vīnum, -ī <i>n.</i>	wine
īnsula, -ae <i>f.</i>	island (Tenedos)	parō, parāre	to prepare
ligneus, -a, -um	wooden, of wood	somnus, -ī <i>m.</i>	sleep
equus, -ī <i>m.</i>	horse	porta, portae <i>f.</i>	gate
lateō, -ēre	to lie hidden	reserō, -āre	to open, unlock
ignārus, -a, -um	unaware, not knowing	ūnus, -a, -um	one
		excitō, -āre	wake up, rouse

\* See map of Troy and the Aegean on the next page.



**Troy and the Aegean**

Dictionary Practice / Form Identification

Identify the words below based on the dictionary entries given. Be sure to indicate the **entry from which each is taken**, and the **part of speech** and to *give all possibilities for ambiguous forms*.

For **nouns** and **adjectives**: give case, number, and gender

For **verbs**: give person, number and mood (Indicative)

\*all verb forms so far are Present and Active

- A. doleō, dolēre, doluī: to grieve, suffer pain
- B. dolō, dolāre, dolāvī, dolātus: to chop with an ax
- C. dolus, dolī *m.*: trick, device
- D. dolōsus, dolōsa, dolōsum: crafty, deceitful

	Entry	Part of Speech	Form ID
1. dolat	b	verb	third person singular indicative
2. dolent			
3. dolīs			
4. dolōsārum			
5. dolōs			
6. dolātis			
7. dolēs			
8. dolōsum			
9. dolō			
10. dolāmus			

## Word Derivations

One way to build your knowledge of Latin (and English) vocabulary is to connect Latin words and stems with their English derivatives. For each of the following Latin words, write down as many English derivatives as you can.

*Example:*                      fortūna: fortune, fortunate, unfortunate (etc.)

- |            |             |
|------------|-------------|
| 1. ab      | 7. imperium |
| 2. ager    | 8. magnus   |
| 3. ambulō  | 9. nauta    |
| 4. clāmō   | 10. taceō   |
| 5. dominus | 11. terreō  |
| 6. errō    | 12. vocō    |

Some common abbreviations in English come from Latin words. Note the following:

- |          |                |            |
|----------|----------------|------------|
| • cp.    | <b>comparā</b> | compare    |
| • et al. | <b>et aliī</b> | and others |

## Word Building

Based on the Latin words you have already learned, see if you can guess the meaning of each of the following and explain your guess:

- |                     |                        |
|---------------------|------------------------|
| 1. absum, abesse    | 3. dōnō, donāre        |
| 2. clāmor <i>m.</i> | 4. fortūnātus, -a, -um |

# CHAPTER 6

Imperfect and Future Active Indicative  
First and Second Conjugations  
Commands  
First and Second Conjugation Imperatives  
Vocatives  
First and Second Declensions

Chapter 1 introduced the present tense of first and second conjugation verbs and showed how finite verbs in Latin have a set of personal endings which are added to the stem of the verb. In the Latin system, the stem carries the meaning of the verb, and the endings carry information about the subject. This chapter introduces two new tenses which indicate action in the past and in the future. These tenses are marked by a tense sign which appears between the verb stem and the personal ending.

## 31. Imperfect Active Indicative (First and Second Conjugation)

The **imperfect** is one of three past tenses in Latin and is easily recognized by the tense sign **-bā-** between the verb stem and the personal endings:

	1ST CONJUGATION		2ND CONJUGATION	
<i>1st sg.</i>	amā <b>bam</b>	I was loving, etc.	docē <b>bam</b>	I was teaching, etc.
<i>2nd sg.</i>	amā <b>bās</b>	You were loving	docē <b>bās</b>	You were teaching
<i>3rd sg.</i>	amā <b>bat</b>	He / she was loving	docē <b>bat</b>	He / she was teaching
<i>1st pl.</i>	amā <b>bāmus</b>	We were loving	docē <b>bāmus</b>	We were teaching
<i>2nd pl.</i>	amā <b>bātis</b>	You (all) were loving	docē <b>bātis</b>	You (all) were teaching
<i>3rd pl.</i>	amā <b>bant</b>	They were loving	docē <b>bant</b>	They were teaching

Notice that:

- The personal endings are the same as those used in the present tense (§5) except for the first person singular where **-m** replaces **-ō**.

- A long vowel (here in **-bā-**) shortens before final **-m**, **-t**, **-nt**. This is a general rule which you have already seen in the present tense (§5 - notice the third person singular and plural forms of **amō** and **doceō**) and will see again in other verb forms.

The **imperfect** tense in Latin usually indicates an action *going on in the past but not completed*. It can be translated into English in a variety of ways, depending on the context of the sentence:

<i>Continuous action</i>	he was teaching <i>or</i> he kept teaching
<i>Repeated or Habitual action</i>	he used to teach <i>or</i> he taught every year
<i>Attempted action</i>	he tried to teach
<i>Beginning of an action</i>	he began to teach

### 32. Future Active Indicative (First and Second Conjugation)

The **future** of first and second conjugation verbs can be recognized by the tense sign **-bi-** between the verb stem and the personal endings:

	1ST CONJUGATION		2ND CONJUGATION	
<i>1st sg</i>	amā <b>bō</b>	I shall love	docē <b>bō</b>	I shall teach
<i>2nd sg</i>	amā <b>bis</b>	You will love	docē <b>bis</b>	You will teach
<i>3rd sg</i>	amā <b>bit</b>	He / she will love	docē <b>bit</b>	He / she will teach
<i>1st pl</i>	amā <b>bimus</b>	We shall love	docē <b>bimus</b>	We shall teach
<i>2nd pl</i>	amā <b>bitis</b>	You (all) will love	docē <b>bitis</b>	You (all) will teach
<i>3rd pl</i>	amā <b>bunt</b>	They will love	docē <b>bunt</b>	They will teach

Again, the personal endings are the same as those used in the present tense. Notice two points here:

- In the first person singular, the ending **-bō** is contracted from **-biō**.
- In the third person plural, **-bu-** replaces **-bi-**.

EXERCISE 34. Using the stem meanings given below, translate each of the following into English. Then, paying attention to the stem vowel in each form, see if you can write the first two principal parts as they would appear in the dictionary for each verb.

*Example:* errant (wander) “they wander”; errō, errāre

- |                             |                           |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. explōrābās (investigate) | 6. tenēbant (hold)        |
| 2. rīdēbō (laugh)           | 7. exspectābit (wait for) |
| 3. intrābunt (enter)        | 8. sustinēbam (support)   |
| 4. turbāmus (disturb)       | 9. sedēbat (sit)          |
| 5. monēbis (warn)           | 10. mūtābātis (change)    |



### 33. Commands: The Imperative

So far, you have learned that Latin expresses simple statements and simple questions by using the indicative mood (§7). To indicate a direct command, Latin uses a mood called the **imperative** (from the Latin verb **imperō**, *to command*), which usually appears in the second person (singular or plural) and present tense:

	1ST CONJUGATION		2ND CONJUGATION	
<i>2nd sg</i>	amā	(you) love!	docē	(you) teach!
<i>2nd pl</i>	amāte	(you all) love!	docēte	(you all) teach!

Notice that

- The singular form is usually the same as the present stem (§5).
- The plural form adds **-te** to the present stem.

Negative commands will be introduced in a future lesson.

### 34. Vocative Case

The **vocative** case in Latin is used to address a person (or thing) directly. Its form is identical to the nominative in both the singular and the plural of all declensions, with two exceptions:

	1ST DECLENSION	2ND DECLENSION
<i>singular</i>	fēmina	amīce
<i>plural</i>	fēminae	amīcī

Note the following:

- Second declension nouns ending in **-us** use the vocative ending **-e** in the singular.
- Second declension nouns ending in **-ius** use the vocative ending **-ī** in the singular: **filius** > **fili** (not *filiū*)

Sometimes the vocative is preceded by **ō** and, in modern texts, it is often set off from the rest of the sentence by commas. The vocative can appear in statements and questions, but it is especially common in commands:

statement:	<b>Agricola, ō amīcī, semper labōrat.</b>	(Oh) friends, the farmer is always working.
question:	<b>Nārrābisne, nauta, fābulam?</b>	Sailor, will you tell a story?
command:	<b>Amīce, puerīs fābulam nārrā!</b>	Friend, tell the boys a story!

Deucaliōn et Pyrrha in terrā virōrum fēminārumque exempla manēbant. īram deōrum timēbant sed ad templum deae ambulābant. in locō iacēbant gelidōque ōscula saxō dabant et ōrābant: Ō dea, nōs iuvā et tuō imperiō pārēbimus! dea **ōrāculum** dabat: movēte vōs ā templō et ossa post tergum magnae iactāte parentis! diū tacēbant et

imperiiis deae pārēre dubitābant. tum pārēbant et iactābant multa saxa.  
in locō **formae** saxōrum subitō formae virōrum fēminārumque sunt!

## VOCABULARY:

īra, īrae <i>f.</i>	anger	ossa (acc. pl.)	bones
dea, -ae <i>f.</i>	goddess	post (+ acc.)	behind
gelidus, -a, -um	cold	tergum, -ī <i>n.</i>	back
ōsculum, -ī <i>n.</i>	kiss	parentis (gen.)	parent
nōs (acc. pl.)	“us”	forma, -ae <i>f.</i>	shape
ōrāculum, -ī <i>n.</i>	oracle	subitō (adv.)	suddenly
vōs (acc. pl.)	“yourselves”		

PRACTICE SENTENCES (*practice guessing words in bold*)

Identify the case and use of the underlined words, then translate.

1. Ibi semper est **victoria**, ubi **concordia** est. (Publilius Syrus)
2. Sum **pius** Aenēās et fāma super caelum est. (Vergil - adapted; *the hero, Aeneas, introduces himself*)
3. **Avāritia** enim sine **poenā** nōn est. (Seneca - adapted)
4. **Mūsa**, virō **causās** bellī memorā. (Vergil - adapted; *the poet asks the Muse to help him with his poem*)

## VOCABULARY:

ibi (adv.)	there	super (+ acc.)	above, beyond
victōria, -ae <i>f.</i>	victory	avāritia, -ae <i>f.</i>	greed, avarice
ubi (adv.)	where	poena, -ae <i>f.</i>	penalty, punishment
concordia, -ae <i>f.</i>	harmony, concord	Mūsa, -ae <i>f.</i>	Muse
pius, -a, -um	pious	causa, -ae <i>f.</i>	cause, reason
Aenēās (nom. s.)	Aeneas (a Trojan hero)	memorō, -āre	recall, tell

## Chapter 6 Vocabulary

### Nouns

cēna, cēnae <i>f.</i>	dinner
exemplum, exempli <i>n.</i>	example
filia, filiae <i>f.</i>	daughter
filius, filiū <i>m.</i> (voc. = <i>fīlī</i> )	son
Italia, Italiae <i>f.</i>	Italy
pecūnia, pecūniae <i>f.</i>	money, property
populus, populī <i>m.</i>	the people; nation
rēgīna, rēgīnae <i>f.</i>	queen
vīta, vītae <i>f.</i>	life

### Verbs

intrō, intrāre, intrāvī, intrātus	to enter
maneō, manēre, mānsī	to remain, stay
nūntiō, nūntiāre, nūntiāvī, nūntiātus	to announce, report
parō, parāre, parāvī, parātus	to prepare

### Adjective

laetus, laeta, laetum	happy; fertile
novus, nova, novum	new; strange
Rōmānus, Rōmāna, Rōmānum;	Roman
Rōmānī, Rōmānōrum <i>m.</i> (pl.) ( <i>as a noun</i> )	the Romans

### Adverbs

diū	for a long time
semper	always

### Prepositions

dē (+ abl.)	down from; about, concerning
propter (+ acc.)	because of, on account of
sine (+ abl.)	without

### Conjunction

enim ( <i>never appears as the first word in a sentence - "postpositive"</i> )	for; in fact; yes, truly
--	--------------------------

# CHAPTER 7

## Third Declension Nouns Imperfect and Future Indicative of Sum Dative of Possession

So far all the nouns you have learned have been in either the first or the second declension. This chapter introduces nouns in the third declension, with a new set of case endings that must be memorized. It also introduces the imperfect and future tenses of the verb **sum**, and a new use of the dative with the verb *to be*.

### 35. Third Declension Nouns

Nouns of the third declension fall into two general categories: those whose stems end in a consonant, and those whose stems end in **-i-**. Consonant stem nouns can be divided into two groups: those that have no distinct ending in the nominative singular, and those that add **-s** to form the nominative singular. In either consonant group, you can always identify the stem by removing the case ending from the genitive singular form. Masculine and feminine nouns in the third declension use the same endings.

#### 35a. Third Declension: Masculine and Feminine

SINGULAR	[—]	[-s]	[I-STEM]	ENDINGS
<i>Nominative</i>	cōnsul	rēx	ars	—, -s
<i>Genitive</i>	cōsul <b>is</b>	rēg <b>is</b>	art <b>is</b>	<b>-is</b>
<i>Dative</i>	cōsul <b>ī</b>	rēg <b>ī</b>	art <b>ī</b>	<b>-ī</b>
<i>Accusative</i>	cōsul <b>em</b>	rēg <b>em</b>	art <b>em</b>	<b>-em</b>
<i>Ablative</i>	cōsul <b>e</b>	rēg <b>e</b>	art <b>e</b>	<b>-e</b>
PLURAL				
<i>Nominative</i>	cōsul <b>ēs</b>	rēg <b>ēs</b>	art <b>ēs</b>	<b>-ēs</b>
<i>Genitive</i>	cōsul <b>um</b>	rēg <b>um</b>	art <b>ium</b>	<b>-um, -ium</b>
<i>Dative</i>	cōsul <b>ibus</b>	rēg <b>ibus</b>	art <b>ibus</b>	<b>-ibus</b>
<i>Accusative</i>	cōsul <b>ēs</b>	rēg <b>ēs</b>	art <b>ēs</b>	<b>-ēs</b>
<i>Ablative</i>	cōsul <b>ibus</b>	rēg <b>ibus</b>	art <b>ibus</b>	<b>-ibus</b>

Note the following:

- The consonant of the stem may combine with the **-s** ending of the nominative singular:  
**rēg + s > rēx**  
**noct + s > nox**
- In the plural, the nominative and accusative endings are the same, **-ēs**, and the dative and ablative endings are the same, **-ibus**. As in the first and second declensions, the context of the sentence should help you determine what case the noun is in.
- The **i**-stem nouns use the same endings and look different only in the genitive plural.

EXERCISE 38. Identify each of the following third declension nouns by case and number. If the ending is ambiguous, include all possibilities.

*Example:* hominī dative singular

- |             |           |
|-------------|-----------|
| 1. vōce     | 5. patrum |
| 2. urbēs    | 6. uxōris |
| 3. partibus | 7. artium |
| 4. mentem   | 8. mortī  |

EXERCISE 39. Following the third declension consonant patterns above, decline **virtūs**, **dux** and **frāter** in all cases, singular and plural. Be sure to check the genitive singular forms in the Chapter Vocabulary in order to learn what stem to use for each noun.

Like the first group of masculine and feminine nouns in this declension (e.g. **cōnsul**), neuter nouns add no ending to the nominative singular. Because the nominative and accusative case endings are **always** the same for all neuters, this means the accusative singular will also lack a distinct ending.

### 35b. Third Declension: Neuter

SINGULAR	[CONSONANT STEM]	[I-STEM]	ENDINGS
<i>Nominative</i>	caput	mare	—
<i>Genitive</i>	capit <b>is</b>	mar <b>is</b>	<b>-is</b>
<i>Dative</i>	capit <b>ī</b>	mar <b>ī</b>	<b>-ī</b>
<i>Accusative</i>	caput	mare	—
<i>Ablative</i>	capit <b>e</b>	mar <b>ī</b>	<b>-e, -ī</b>
PLURAL			
<i>Nominative</i>	capit <b>a</b>	mar <b>ia</b>	<b>-a, -ia</b>
<i>Genitive</i>	capit <b>um</b>	mar <b>ium</b>	<b>-um, -ium</b>
<i>Dative</i>	capit <b>ibus</b>	mar <b>ibus</b>	<b>-ibus</b>
<i>Accusative</i>	capit <b>a</b>	mar <b>ia</b>	<b>-a, -ia</b>
<i>Ablative</i>	capit <b>ibus</b>	mar <b>ibus</b>	<b>-ibus</b>

Note:

- Neuter **i**-stems show the **-i-** in the ablative singular, and the nominative, genitive and accusative plurals.

### A Note on i-Stems.

With the exception of the ablative singular neuter, the endings of **i**-stem nouns are really no different from those of regular consonant stem nouns. As a reader of Latin, you need only be able to recognize the endings, not predict which nouns will have **i**-stems. Knowing which nouns are **i**-stems will only matter if you are writing in Latin. A general rule for determining this is included at the end of this chapter for those who want it.

### Gender

The gender of a noun in the third declension may be masculine, feminine or neuter and must be memorized when you learn the word. As in the first and second declensions (§10), however, some general patterns may be useful to remember:

- Masculine
 

WORDS ENDING	EXAMPLES
-tor, -tōris	victor, victōris; gladiātor, gladiātōris
- Feminine
 

WORDS ENDING	EXAMPLES
-tās, -tātis	cīvitās, cīvitātis; vēritās, vēritātis
-tūs, -tūtis	virtūs, virtūtis; senectūs, senectūtis
-tūdō, -tūdinis	multitūdō, multitūdinis; necessitūdō, necessitūdinis
-tiō, -tiōnis	ōrātiō, ōrātiōnis; imitātiō, imitātiōnis
- Neuter
 

WORDS ENDING	EXAMPLES
-al, ālis	animal, animālis, capital, capitālis
-us, -oris	tempus, temporis; corpus, corporis; litus, litoris
-men, -minis	flūmen, flūminis; nōmen, nōminis
-e, -is	mare, maris; cubile, cubilis

Continuous action	he was or he kept being
Repeated or Habitual action	he used to be or he (always) was
Attempted action	he tried to be
Beginning of an action	he began to be



EXERCISE 42. Translate each of the verbs into the correct Latin form of **sum**.

*Example:* She is good. est

- |                              |                             |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. The man was happy.        | 5. You (pl.) are free men.  |
| 2. Will they be our friends? | 6. The queen will be angry. |
| 3. We are in the house.      | 7. Were they being bad?     |
| 4. I used to be sick.        | 8. I will be brave.         |

### 37. Dative of Possession

In Chapter 3 you learned two common uses of the dative case (§17): to show the indirect object and for more general reference. Another common use is the dative with a form of **sum** to show possession:

- **possession** - the person who possesses

**Virō** est liber.

**The man** has a book.

(the book belongs **to the man**)

**Puerīs** pecūnia erat.

**The boys** used to have money.

EXERCISE 43. Fill in the blank(s) with the form(s) needed to complete each sentence.

- |                                      |  |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| 1. Ducēs cōsilium parā____. (future) | 4. Urbem intr____ parābāmus.   |
| 2. Urbs magn____ et pulch____ erat.  | 5. Nautae et uxōr____ laetī erant.                                       |
| 3. Dī mort____ hominibus dant.       | 6. Popul____ magna sapientia<br>____. (use present tense of <b>sum</b> ) |

EXERCISE 44. Identify obvious chunks and then translate each of the following sentences.

- |  |                                    |
|--|------------------------------------|
| 1. Filiō meō multī amīcī erunt.          | 6. Malane fortūna tuō patrī erat?  |
| 2. Magnam virtūtem in homine laudāte.    | 7. Rēx rēgīnaque bonī esse optānt. |
| 3. In urbe erāmus sed nōn erās.          | 8. Nūmen deōrum sine irā nōn erit. |
| 4. Corpus miserī rēgis in viā iacēbat et | 9. Ducī multae artēs erant.        |
| Rōmānī caput in urbem portābant.         | 10. Cōsulēs cīvitatē Rōmānam       |
| 5. Ducēs populum Rōmānum ad              | laudābant.                         |
| arma vocābunt.                           |                                    |

EXERCISE 45. Translate into Latin.

- The Roman temples were in the forest.
- The new book will belong to the consul.
- The free men were shouting with a loud (use magnus, -a, -um) voice.
- Brother, announce the death of your king to the people now.
- The leader of the people always loved his beautiful wife.
- Will the men be happy in the new state?
- The summit was high.
- My brother's leader used to have prophetic skill.
- The Roman farmer was praising the courage and reputation of his brothers.
- Your (pl.) mother will prepare many gifts for her son and daughter.

**READING 5** (*adapted*) (*practice guessing words in bold*)

*Ennius tells how Jupiter forbade the eating of human flesh.*

Sāturnus et Ops cēterīque tum  
hominēs **hūmānam** carnem solēbant edere;  
sed prīmus Iuppiter lēgēs hominibus  
morēsque dabat et ēdictō **prohibēbat**  
**hūmānam** carnem.

## VOCABULARY:

Sāturnus (nom.)	early Roman god	edere (inf.)	to eat
Ops (nom.)	goddess of plenty	prīmus, -a, -um	first
cēterī, -ae, -a	other	lex, lēgis <i>f.</i>	law
hūmānus, -a, -um	human	mos, moris <i>m.</i>	custom
carō, carnis <i>f.</i>	flesh	ēdictum, -ī <i>n.</i>	edict
		prohibeō, -ēre	to prohibit

**PRACTICE SENTENCES** (*practice guessing words in bold*)

Identify the case and use of the underlined words, then translate.

1. Mēns sāna in corpore sālō. (Juvenal)
2. Bona fāma in tenebrīs proprium **splendōrem** tenet. (Publilius Syrus)
3. Terra corpus est sed animus ignis est. (Ennius - adapted; *discussing the nature of the universe*)
4. Iam caelum terramque meō sine nūmine, ventī, mīscēre audētis? (Vergil; *Neptune, god of the sea, scolds the winds*)
5. Dīvīna nātūra dat agrōs; ars hūmāna aedificat urbēs. (Varro - adapted)
6. Mēns latet in animīs hominum et **pars** animī est. (Cicero - adapted)

## VOCABULARY:

sānus, -a, -um	sound, healthy	iam	already, now
tenebrae, -ārum <i>f.</i> (pl.)	the lower world; darkness	ventus, ventī <i>m.</i>	wind
splendor, -ōris <i>m.</i>	splendor	mīscō, mīscēre	to mix, mingle
proprius, -a, -um	one's own; permanent	dīvīnus, -a, -um	divine
ignis, -is <i>m.</i>	fire	hūmānus, -a, -um	human
		lateō, latēre, latuī	to lie hidden
		pars, partis <i>f.</i>	part

## Chapter 7 Vocabulary

### Nouns

ars, artis <i>f.</i>	skill, art
caput, capitis <i>n.</i>	head; summit
cīvitās, cīvitātis <i>f.</i>	state
cōsul, cōsulis <i>m.</i>	consul (one of two supreme magistrates elected annually in the Roman Republic)
corpus, corporis <i>n.</i>	body, corpse
dux, ducis <i>m.</i>	(military) leader, commander
frāter, frātris <i>m.</i>	brother
homō, hominis <i>m.</i>	man, human being
īra, īrae <i>f.</i>	anger
māter, mātris <i>f.</i>	mother
mēns, mentis <i>f.</i>	mind, judgment, reason
mors, mortis <i>f.</i>	death
nūmen, nūminis <i>n.</i>	divine will, divine power
pater, patris <i>m.</i>	father
rēx, rēgis <i>m.</i>	king
urbs, urbis <i>f.</i>	city
uxor, uxōris <i>f.</i>	wife
vērītās, vērītātis <i>f.</i>	truth
virtūs, virtūtis <i>f.</i>	courage, excellence, virtue
vox, vōcis <i>f.</i>	voice

### Verb

teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentus	to hold, have; restrain
------------------------------	-------------------------

### Adjective

miser, misera, miserum	miserable, unhappy
------------------------	--------------------

(22)

## i-Stem Noun Reference Section

Here are some general rules for identifying nouns with an **i**-stem. What follows is not a complete list, but is offered for those who want to see some common examples.

### Masculine and Feminine

- nouns which have the same number of syllables in the nominative and genitive singular; these usually have a nominative singular in **-is** (sometimes **-ēs**).

For example:

auris, auris <i>f.</i>	<i>ear</i>	hostis, hostis <i>m.</i>	<i>enemy</i>
caedēs, caedis <i>f.</i>	<i>murder, slaughter</i>	ignis, ignis <i>m.</i>	<i>fire</i>
cīvis, cīvis <i>m. or f.</i>	<i>citizen</i>	mōlēs, mōlis <i>f.</i>	<i>mass, structure</i>
classis, classis <i>f.</i>	<i>fleet (of ships)</i>	nāvis, nāvis <i>f.</i>	<i>ship</i>
collis, collis <i>m.</i>	<i>hill</i>	pānis, pānis <i>m.</i>	<i>bread</i>
finis, finis <i>m.</i>	<i>end</i>	piscis, piscis <i>m.</i>	<i>fish</i>

Two common exceptions are: **canis, canis** (dog) and **iuvenis, iuvenis** (young person)

- monosyllables in **-s** or **-x** preceded by a consonant. For example:

ars, artis <i>f.</i>	<i>skill, art</i>	mors, mortis <i>f.</i>	<i>death</i>
arx, arcis <i>f.</i>	<i>citadel, summit</i>	nox, noctis <i>f.</i>	<i>night</i>
dēns, dentis <i>m.</i>	<i>tooth</i>	pars, partis <i>f.</i>	<i>part</i>
gēns, gentis <i>f.</i>	<i>nation</i>	pons, pontis <i>m.</i>	<i>bridge</i>
mēns, mentis <i>f.</i>	<i>mind, judgment, ...</i>	urbs, urbis <i>f.</i>	<i>city</i>

Note that **nox, noctis** has two consonants in its stem (cf. **dux, ducis**) and is counted as an **-i** stem

### Neuter

- nouns which end in **-al**, **-ar**, or **-e**. For example:

-AL		-AR		-E	
animal, animālis	<i>animal</i>	calcar, calcāris	<i>spur</i>	mare, maris	<i>sea</i>
capital, capitālis	<i>capital crime</i>	exemplar, -āris	<i>model</i>	cubīle, cubīlis	<i>couch</i>

# CHAPTER 8

Perfect Active Indicative and Infinitive  
First and Second Conjugations  
Historic Present  
Forms of Possum  
Infinitive Use: As a Noun

So far you have learned three tenses of first and second conjugation verbs, all built on the present stem (§5): present, imperfect, and future. This chapter introduces a new tense built on the perfect stem which is found in the third principal part (§6). It also introduces a new use of the infinitive, and forms of an irregular verb which resemble the forms of **sum** you have already learned (§28 and §36).

## 38. Perfect Active Indicative

The **perfect** is a past tense in Latin which must be distinguished from the imperfect tense (§31). The perfect is formed by adding personal endings to the stem of the third principal part. To find the stem, remove the **-i-** from the third principal part:

**amāv (ī)** - first conjugation

**docu (ī)** - second conjugation

**fu (ī) - sum** (the perfect forms of this verb, and of **possum**, are regular)

The personal endings for the **perfect active indicative** are the same for all conjugations:

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
<i>1st person</i>	<b>-ī</b>	I	<b>-imus</b>	we
<i>2nd person</i>	<b>-istī</b>	you	<b>-istis</b>	you, you all
<i>3rd person</i>	<b>-it</b>	he, she, it	<b>-ērunt, -ēre</b>	they

Note that in the third person pl. form, the ending has a long **-ē-**, and that sometimes (particularly in poetry) the ending is shortened to **-ēre**. This means you will need to pay close attention to the context of the sentence to determine whether the form is an indicative or an infinitive.

Here are the **perfect active indicative** verb forms of the first and second conjugations:

	1ST CONJUGATION		2ND CONJUGATION	
<i>1st sg.</i>	amāvī	I loved, I have loved	docuī	I taught, have taught
<i>2nd sg.</i>	amāvistī	You loved	docuistī	You taught
<i>3rd sg.</i>	amāvit	He, she it loved	docuit	He, she it taught
<i>1st pl.</i>	amāvimus	We loved	docuimus	We taught
<i>2nd pl.</i>	amāvistis	You (all) loved	docuistis	You (all) taught
<i>3rd pl.</i>	amāvērunt / amāvēre	They loved	docuērunt / docuēre	They taught

The **perfect** tense in Latin has two distinct meanings:

- The **historical perfect** corresponds to the simple past tense in English, and has been described as “the tense of *narration* (as opposed to the Imperfect, the tense of *description*).”

*I traveled [perfect] to Italy one summer and, while I was walking [imperfect] around Rome, I saw [perfect] the Roman Forum.*

One way to think about the historical perfect in contrast to the imperfect is to imagine the historical perfect as a picture in a photo album, and the imperfect as a video tape.

Sometimes, in a narrative of past events when the author wants to express the action very vividly, he will use the present tense. This use is often called the **historical present**. Look back at Reading 4 (chapter 6) and see if you can find the historical present in that passage.

- The **present perfect** also refers to an action that happened in the past, but stresses the present result of that completed action.

I **have finished** my homework (and can therefore do something else now).

I **have climbed** this tree (and am now perched at the top).

I **have learned** to swim (and don't need lessons any more).

The context of the sentence will usually make clear how to understand the perfect tense, and your own competence in English will help you decide which translation “sounds better.”

EXERCISE 46. Identify each of the following verbs by person, number and tense, then translate giving two English translations where possible.

*Example:* amāvī                      first person, singular, perfect; “I have loved,” “I loved”

- |              |               |
|--------------|---------------|
| 1. nūntiāvit | 6. tenuērunt  |
| 2. errābit   | 7. erunt      |
| 3. parāvimus | 8. fuī        |
| 4. pāruiistī | 9. ambulābunt |
| 5. dolēbās   | 10. vīdistis  |

EXERCISE 47. Following the model verbs above, conjugate **pugnō** and **doleō** in the perfect active indicative, singular and plural. Be sure to check the principal parts in the Chapter Vocabulary in order to learn what stem to use for each verb.

EXERCISE 48. Translate the underlined words into Latin.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. The sailors <u>told</u> many stories.     | 5. At that time, I <u>feared</u> the danger. |
| 2. Father, <u>have</u> you <u>been</u> sick? | 6. He <u>was</u> a free man for a long time. |
| 3. We <u>entered</u> the forest.             | 7. I <u>used to</u> <u>praise</u> the king.  |
| 4. They <u>were walking</u> to the house.    | 8. <u>Has</u> she <u>prepared</u> dinner?    |

### 39. Perfect Active Infinitive

The **perfect active infinitive** is formed by adding **-isse** to the perfect stem:

1ST CONJUGATION		2ND CONJUGATION	
amāvisse	to have loved	docuisse	to have taught
laudāvisse	to have praised	vīdisse	to have seen

### 40. Forms of Possum

**Possum** is an irregular verb which comes from the combination of the verb **sum** with **potis**, an old adjective meaning *able*. The **-t-** of the adjective's stem changes to **-s-** when followed by a form of **sum** beginning with **s**, and the resulting forms all follow the conjugation of **sum** which you have already learned.

**Indicative:**

	PRESENT		IMPERFECT	FUTURE
<i>1st sg.</i>	possum	I am able, I can	poteram	poterō
<i>2nd sg.</i>	potes	You are able, can	poterās	poteris
<i>3rd sg.</i>	potest	He, she, it is able, can	poterat	poterit
<i>1st pl.</i>	possumus	We are able, can	poterāmus	poterimus
<i>2nd pl.</i>	potestis	You (all) are able, can	poterātis	poteritis
<i>3rd pl.</i>	possunt	They are able, can	poterant	poterunt
<i>Infinitive</i>	posse			

As with certain other verbs you have learned (**debeō**, **dubitō**, **optō**, **soleō**), **possum** should lead you to expect a complementary infinitive (§7) in the sentence.

Nēmō ventum **vidēre** potest. No one **can see (is able to see)** the wind.

### 41. Infinitive as a Noun

In addition to its use as a complementary infinitive, the infinitive in Latin, just as in English, can also be used as a noun. When used as a noun, the infinitive is considered neuter and singular, and it retains its ability to govern an object. This use of the infinitive as a noun is particularly common with the verb *sum* and with certain impersonal verbs.

**Amāre** est bonum.

**To love** is good; **Loving** is a good thing.

**Vidēre** pontum nautīs placet.

**To see** the ocean pleases the sailors; **Seeing** the ocean pleases the sailors; It pleases the sailors **to see** the ocean.

Note that in both examples, the Latin infinitive can be translated with either an infinitive or a gerund (*loving, seeing*) in English.

EXERCISE 49. For the following sentences, copy each chunk you see and be prepared to identify it; then translate the full sentence.

*Example:* Uxor agricolae multis cum amicis in agrum errabat  
                   uxor agricolae           (subject with modifier in the genitive)  
                   multis cum amicis   (prepositional phrase: accompaniment)  
                   in agrum               (prepositional phrase: place to which)

1. Lūcem lūnae in caelō vidēre potes?
2. Verbīs rēgis rēgīnaeque pārūerunt.
3. Erat cōsulibus magnum imperium.
4. Rōmānīs pugnāre prō patriā bonum erat.
5. Poterisne tuā cum mātrem urbem intrāre?
6. Tūm plēna periculōrum erat vīta in Ītaliā.
7. Īrātī ex turbā subitō corpus mōvēre.
8. Pars turbae dē monte subitō festināvit.
9. Rōmānī malum rēgem superāre facile possunt.
10. Nōmine nostrum patrem vocāvimus et vōce clārā laudāvimus.
11. Puerī sacra in templō vidēre dubitāvērunt.
12. Fēminae dolēbant, sed dux virōs ad opus vocāvit.

EXERCISE 50. Translate into Latin.

1. Your (sg.) book will be a great work.
2. Were they able to work without light?
3. He has grieved and now will be able to teach his friends the truth.
4. The famous man praised the laws of the state.
5. Because of the danger, many people were eager for peace and new laws.
6. We have built many temples for the god of the winds.
7. The kings have not had much wisdom.
8. We cannot see the fertile land across the ocean.
9. The name of the goddess was always sacred to the Roman people.
10. I often entered the kingdom with my son and daughter.

## READING 6 (*adapted*)

*Livy was a Roman historian who lived from 59 B.C. to A.D. 17. In this excerpt he tells of the miraculous end of Romulus, the founder and first king of Rome, in the Campus Martius in Rome.*

Titus Livius fābulam dē Rōmulō nārrāvit. Rōmulus cōntiōnem in Campō Mārtiō habēbat. subitō fuit tempestās cum magnō fragōre et **dēnsō** rēgem cēlāvit nimbō, et populus timuit. ubi post tempestātem lūx erat, Rōmānī Rōmulum nōn vīdērunt; nōn deinde in terrīs Rōmulus fuit. populus in campō mānsit, enim diū dolēbat. tandem Rōmulum deum adōrāvērunt.



## VOCABULARY:

cōntiō, cōntiōnis <i>f.</i>	meeting, assembly	nimbus, -ī <i>m.</i>	cloud,
campus, -ī <i>m.</i>	plain		storm cloud
tempestās, -tātis <i>f.</i>	storm	ubi (adv.)	when
fragor, -ōris <i>m.</i>	crash (of thunder)	deinde (adv.)	then, afterwards
dēnsus, -a, -um	thick, dense	adōro, -āre, -āvī	to worship
cēlō, -āre, -āvī	to hide		

READING 7 (*adapted*)

*Cicero (106–43 B.C.) talks about the importance of the laws to the Roman state.*

Lex est fundāmentum libertātis; mēns et animus et cōnsilium et sententia cīvītātis est in lēgibus. ut corpora nostra sine mente, sīc cīvītās sine lēge partēs adhibēre nōn potest. lēgum ministri sunt magistrātūs, lēgum **interpretēs** iūdicēs, et tandem lēgum **servī** sumus itaque libērī esse possumus.

## VOCABULARY:

fundāmentum, -ī <i>n.</i>	foundation	magistrātūs (nom. pl.)	magistrates
sententia, -ae <i>f.</i>	purpose, will	interpre, -etis <i>m.</i>	interpreter
ut (conjunction)	just as	iūdex, -icis <i>m.</i>	judge
sīc (adv.)	thus	servus, servī <i>m.</i>	servant
adhibeō, adhibēre	to use	itaque	and so, therefore
minister, ministri <i>m.</i>	servant, assistant		

## PRACTICE SENTENCES

Identify the case and use of the underlined words, then translate.

1. Errāre est **hūmānum**. (attributed to St. Jerome)
2. Neque enim esse mēns dīvīna sine ratiōne potest. (Cicero)
3. Iūra dabat lēgēsque virīs. (Vergil; *describing Queen Dido ruling her people*)
4. Lex videt irātum, irātus lēgem nōn videt. (Publilius Syrus)
5. Ars est enim **philosophia** vītāe. (Cicero)
6. Dolēre malum est. (Cicero)
7. Ars est cēlāre artem. (Anonymous)

## VOCABULARY:

hūmānus, -a, -um	human	philosophia, -ae <i>f.</i>	philosophy
neque	here = nōn	cēlō, cēlāre	to hide, conceal
iūs, iūris <i>n.</i>	right		

## Chapter 8 Vocabulary

### Nouns

lex, lēgis <i>f.</i>	law
libertās, libertātis <i>f.</i>	freedom, liberty
lūna, lūnae <i>f.</i>	moon
lūx, lūcis <i>f.</i>	light
mōns, montis <i>m.</i>	mountain
nōmen, nōminis <i>n.</i>	name
opus, operis <i>n.</i>	work, task
pars, partis <i>f.</i>	part, share, direction
patria, patriae <i>f.</i>	country, fatherland
pāx, pācis <i>f.</i>	peace
perīculum, perīculi <i>n.</i>	danger
ratio, ratiōnis <i>f.</i>	reason, judgment; method
verbum, verbī <i>n.</i>	word

### Verbs

doleō, dolēre, doluī	to grieve, mourn, suffer pain
possum, posse, potuī	to be able, "I can"
studeō, studēre, studuī (+ dat.)	to be eager, to give attention

### Adjectives

clārus, clāra, clārum	clear, bright; famous; loud
īrātus, īrāta, īrātum	angry
plēnus, plēna, plēnum (+ gen. or abl.)	full (of), filled (with)
sacer, sacra, sacrum	sacred

### Adverb

subitō	suddenly
--------	----------

### Preposition

post (+ acc.)	after, behind
---------------	---------------

# CHAPTER 9

**Third Conjugation:**  
Present Active Indicative and Infinitive  
Present Active Imperative  
**The Pronoun: Part 1**  
Personal Pronouns: Egō, Tū

So far all the verbs you have seen, with the exceptions of **sum** and **possum**, have been in the first or second conjugation. This chapter introduces verbs in the third conjugation. It also introduces the personal pronouns *I, you, we* and *you* (pl.).

## 42. Third Conjugation

Verbs in the third conjugation are characterized by having a short **-e-** on their stem, and use the same personal endings you learned for the first and second conjugations (§5).

A few common verbs in this conjugation also have an **-i-** in their stem which is visible in the first singular and third plural forms, but usually disappears before another **-i** or short **-e**. These verbs are typically called **third conjugation -iō** verbs from their first singular form.

### Third Conjugation Indicative [-e-]

	3RD REGULAR		3RD -iō	
<i>1st sg.</i>	regō	I rule	capiō	I take
<i>2nd sg.</i>	regis	You rule	capis	You take
<i>3rd sg.</i>	regit	He, she it rules	capit	He, she it takes
<i>1st pl.</i>	regimus	We rule	capimus	We take
<i>2nd pl.</i>	regitis	You (all) rule	capitis	You (all) take
<i>3rd pl.</i>	regunt	They rule	capiunt	They take

Note the following:

- The short **-e-** becomes **-u-** in the third person plural and **-i-** in the other forms. This is the same pattern you have already seen in the future tense of **sum** (§36).

The **present active infinitive**, as in the first and second conjugations, adds **-re** to the verb stem:

STEM	INFINITIVE	MEANING
rege-	<b>regere</b>	to rule
cape-	<b>capere</b>	to take

Notice that the infinitive of the third conjugation has a short **-e-**, while that of the second conjugation has a long **-ē-**:

2ND CONJUGATION	3RD CONJUGATION
doc <b>ē</b> re	regere
vid <b>ē</b> re	capere

The **present active imperative**, as in the first and second conjugations (§33), uses the verb stem for the second singular form. For the second plural, it uses **-ite**.

	3RD REGULAR	3RD -iō
<i>2nd sg.</i>	rege (you) rule!	cape (you) take!
<i>2nd pl.</i>	reg <b>ite</b> (you all) rule!	cap <b>ite</b> (you all) take!

Three common third conjugation verbs, and an irregular verb you will learn in Chapter 25 (**ferō**), form their second singular imperatives without the stem vowel:

VERB	2ND SG. IMPERATIVE	2ND PL. IMPERATIVE
dīcō	dīc	dīcite
dūcō	dūc	dūcite
faciō	fac	facite
ferō	fer	ferite

Students through the ages have remembered these forms with the following rhyme:

**dīc, dūc, fac, and fer**

Should have an **-e**, but it isn't there.

EXERCISE 51. Identify each of the following verbs by person, number and mood (indicative or imperative), then translate into English. All forms are present tense.

- |             |              |
|-------------|--------------|
| 1. scribit  | 7. dīcis     |
| 2. sedent   | 8. agunt     |
| 3. faciunt  | 9. regō      |
| 4. vince    | 10. capimus  |
| 5. mittimus | 11. dūc      |
| 6. valēs    | 12. dīscitis |

EXERCISE 52. Following the model third conjugation verbs above, conjugate **dūcō**, **mittō** and **faciō** in the present active indicative, singular and plural, and give the infinitive form.

### 43. The Pronoun

While a noun is a name (**nōmen**) for something, a **pronoun** is a word that can be used instead of a noun (**prō nōmine**) to refer to it without naming it (§2). Latin, like English, has different kinds of pronouns. This chapter and the next will introduce two important groups of pronouns, and the rest will be introduced in future chapters.

Personal pronouns in Latin, like nouns (and adjectives), have case and number, but they do not fit into regular declensions and are differentiated by person rather than gender: first person (*I, we*) and second person (*you, y'all*). Latin has no third person pronoun, but uses instead a demonstrative pronoun which you will learn in the next chapter. Because a Latin finite verb identified the subject by means of its ending, the nominative forms of the personal pronouns were generally used only for *emphasis, contrast* or *clarity*.

#### Personal Pronouns: **ego, tū**

SINGULAR	1ST PERSON		2ND PERSON	
<i>Nominative</i>	ego	I	tū	you
<i>Genitive</i>	meī	of me	tuī	of you
<i>Dative</i>	mihi	to/for me	tibi	to/for you
<i>Accusative</i>	mē	me	tē	you
<i>Ablative</i>	mē	by/with ... me	tē	by/with...you
PLURAL				
<i>Nominative</i>	nōs	we	vōs	you
<i>Genitive</i>	nostrum, nostrī	of us	vestrum, vestrī	of you
<i>Dative</i>	nōbīs	to/for us	vōbīs	to/for you
<i>Accusative</i>	nōs	us	vōs	you
<i>Ablative</i>	nōbīs	by/with ... us	vōbīs	by/with...you

Note the following:

- In the plural, the nominative and accusative forms end with **-ōs**, and the dative and ablative endings with **-ōbīs**. As with nouns, the context of the sentence should help you determine what case the pronoun is in.
- In the genitive plural, the forms **nostrum** and **vestrum** are used as partitive genitives; **nostrī** and **vestrī**, like **meī** and **tuī**, are used objectively (e.g. “love of you,” “fear of us”) - a use that will be discussed in a future chapter.
- When the ablative of these pronouns is used with **cum**, the preposition is written after the pronoun in one word: **mēcum**, **tēcum**, **nōbiscum**, **vōbiscum**.

EXERCISE 53. Translate the underlined word(s) in each sentence with the correct Latin form.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. She was walking <u>with us</u> .               | 5. Tell <u>me</u> a story!                       |
| 2. <u>I</u> like him, but <u>you</u> (pl.) don't. | 6. He is conquering <u>you</u> (pl.).            |
| 3. Who gave <u>you</u> (sg.) that book?           | 7. They led <u>you</u> (sg.) and <u>me</u> home. |
| 4. A few <u>of us</u> will stay.                  | 8. Did she run away <u>from you</u> (sg.)?       |

EXERCISE 54. Translate each of the following sentences.

1. Poëta dīvinus clārusque vōbīs multa carmina scribit.
2. Pars nostrum bona facit, pars mala.
3. Bona ratiō mihi erat, sed tibi cōsiliū dare nōn poteram.
4. Ducēs litterās dē cīvitatē ad cōsulem mittunt.
5. Hominēs arma urbemque Rōmānōrum capiunt.
6. Tū, rege imperiō populōs, Rōmāne.
7. Inter liberōs virtūs semper erit bona.
8. Erant inter montem et urbem magnus ager et multa aqua.
9. Dūc nōs ad templum et deīs sacra dabimus propter novam pācem.
10. Nōs studēbāmus bellum parāre et virōs vincere.

EXERCISE 55. Translate into Latin.

1. Obey the divine law and tell us the truth now!
2. The king rules without wisdom.
3. Your (sg.) brother was shouting very angrily ("with great anger").
4. Many of you are eager to tell us about the war in my fatherland.
5. We were sitting in the house, but you (sg.) were not able to stay with us.
6. My mother and father teach me courage.
7. The queen's life was happy.
8. Will they walk with me into the forest and will they be afraid?
9. The consul is adopting a new plan for the state.
10. You (pl.) are learning many things, but I am not.

## READING 8 (adapted)

*Pliny the Younger (A.D. 61-112), a senator during the Roman Empire, wrote many letters to friends. In this one, he chides a friend for not writing him.*

Ōlim mihi epistulās nōn mittis. 'nihil est,' dīcis, 'quod scribere possum.' sed hoc scribe, aut, 'sī valēs, bene est; egō valeō.' hoc mihi sufficit; est enim bonum. nōn lūdō, **sērius** sum. quid agis? sine sollicitūdine magnā **ignārus** esse nōn possum. Valē.

### VOCABULARY:

ōlim (adv.)	for a while now	bene (adv.)	well (good)
epistula, -ae f.	letter	sufficit	is enough
quod	which (refers to <i>nihil</i> )	lūdō, lūdere	to joke, play
		sērius, -a, -um	serious
hoc	this	sollicitūdō, -inis f.	anxiety, uneasiness
(nom. or acc. n.)		ignārus, -a, -um	ignorant, unaware
sī	if		

## READING 9 (adapted)

*Cicero writes from Athens to his wife Terentia about his recent trip and the mail he has received. The Cicero mentioned in the letter is his and Terentia's son; Tullia is their daughter.*

Sī tū et Tullia, lūx nostra, valētis, egō et Cicerō valēmus. ad Athēnās tardē et incommodē nāvigāvimus, **adversī** enim ventī erant. dē nāve ambulāvimus et nōbīs Acastus cum litterīs praestō fuit. **accēpī** tuās litterās et ex multīs amīcīs litterās.

## VOCABULARY:

sī	if	nāvis, nāvis <i>f.</i>	ship
tardē	slowly	Acastus, -ī <i>m.</i>	a friend of Cicero's
incommodē	inconveniently	praestō ( <i>adv.</i> )	present, here
adversus, -a, -um	contrary (blowing the wrong way)	accipiō, -ere, accēpī	"I have received"

## PRACTICE SENTENCES

Identify the case and use of the underlined words, then translate.

1. Dōnā nōbīs pācem, Domine. (traditional hymn)
2. Magna dī cūrant, parva neglegunt. (Cicero)
3. Vītam regit fortūna, nōn sapientia. (Cicero)
4. Nōn **ignāra** malī miserīs succurrere dīscō. (Vergil; *Queen Dido welcomes Aeneas and the Trojan refugees*)
5. **Silent** enim lēgēs inter arma. (Cicero)

## VOCABULARY:

dōnō, -āre	to give	ignārus, -a, -um	ignorant, unaware
cūrō, -āre	to care about	succurrō, -ere (+ <i>dat.</i> )	to help, aid
neglegō, -ere	to neglect	sileō, -ēre	to be silent

## Chapter 9 Vocabulary

### Nouns

carmen, carminis *n.*

song, poem

poëta, poëtae *m.*

poet

### Verbs

agō, agere, ēgī, āctus

to do, perform; drive

quid agis?

how are you (doing)?

capiō, capere, cēpī, captus

to take, seize, capture

dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictus

to say, speak, tell

dīscō, dīscere, didicī

to learn

dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus

to lead

faciō, facere, fēcī, factus

to do, make

mittō, mittere, mīsī, missus

to send

regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus

to rule

scribō, scribere, scripsī, scriptus

to write

sedeō, sedēre, sēdī

to sit

valeō, valēre, valuī

to be well, healthy; to be strong

valē, valēte (*imperative*)

goodbye, farewell

vincō, vincere, vīcī, victus

to conquer, win

### Pronouns

ego, nōs

I, we

tū, vōs

you, you (pl.)

### Adverbs

et

even, also

ōlim

once (upon a time), one day (in the future)

### Preposition

inter (+ acc.)

between, among

### Conjunction

aut ; aut ... aut

or; either ... or



# CHAPTER 10

## The Pronoun: Part 2

### Demonstrative Pronouns

Is, Ea, Id; Hic, Haec, Hoc; Ille, Illa, Illud

### Special Adjectives in -ius

### Sentence Pattern: Factitive

## 44. Demonstrative Pronouns

**Demonstrative pronouns** are used to point out (**dēmōnstrāre**) a specific person or thing: *did you hear that?*; *he likes* those. As in English, these pronouns can also be used as adjectives, modifying a noun: *did you see* that *man?*; *he likes* those *books*. All three demonstratives in this chapter have regular first and second declension forms in the plural, but some irregular singular forms. Note especially the genitive and dative singular forms which are the same for all three genders. All three pronouns in this chapter are very common and should be memorized carefully and drilled regularly.

The most common demonstrative pronoun in Latin also doubles as the personal pronoun for the third person.

**is, ea, id**

**he, she, it; this; that**

SINGULAR	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
<i>Nominative</i>	is	ea	id
<i>Genitive</i>	eius	eius	eius
<i>Dative</i>	eī	eī	eī
<i>Accusative</i>	eum	eam	id
<i>Ablative</i>	eō	eā	eō
PLURAL			
<i>Nominative</i>	eī	eae	ea
<i>Genitive</i>	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
<i>Dative</i>	eīs	eīs	eīs
<i>Accusative</i>	eōs	eās	ea
<i>Ablative</i>	eīs	eīs	eīs

Note the following uses:

as a pronoun:	<b>Is</b> est amicus. Amō <b>eam</b> . Vidēmus <b>ea</b> .	<b>He</b> is a friend. I love <b>her</b> . We see <b>those (things)</b> .
as an adjective:	<b>Is</b> amicus est bonus. Amō <b>eam</b> fēminam. Vidēmus <b>ea</b> loca.	<b>This</b> friend is good. I love <b>that</b> woman. We see <b>those places</b> .

Two other common demonstrative pronouns are the following:

**hic, haec, hoc      this, these; the latter**

SINGULAR	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
<i>Nominative</i>	hic	haec	hoc
<i>Genitive</i>	hūius	hūius	hūius
<i>Dative</i>	huic	huic	huic
<i>Accusative</i>	hunc	hanc	hoc
<i>Ablative</i>	hōc	hāc	hōc
PLURAL			
<i>Nominative</i>	hī	hae	haec
<i>Genitive</i>	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
<i>Dative</i>	hīs	hīs	hīs
<i>Accusative</i>	hōs	hās	haec
<i>Ablative</i>	hīs	hīs	hīs

**ille, illa, illud      that, those; the famous; the former**

SINGULAR	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
<i>Nominative</i>	ille	illa	illud
<i>Genitive</i>	illīus	illīus	illīus
<i>Dative</i>	illī	illī	illī
<i>Accusative</i>	illum	illam	illud
<i>Ablative</i>	illō	illā	illō
PLURAL			
<i>Nominative</i>	illī	illae	illa
<i>Genitive</i>	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
<i>Dative</i>	illīs	illīs	illīs
<i>Accusative</i>	illōs	illās	illa
<i>Ablative</i>	illīs	illīs	illīs

Note the following:

- **Hic** and **ille** are more emphatic than **is**, which is used when no emphasis is intended.

- **Hic** often refers to the latter (second) of two people or things already mentioned:
- **Ille** often refers to the former. It is also used as an adjective to indicate a well-known or famous person or thing:

**Rōmulus ille** urbem aedificāvit.

**That famous Romulus** built a city.

EXERCISE 56. Identify each of the following pronouns by case, number and gender. If the ending is ambiguous, include all possibilities.

- |          |            |
|----------|------------|
| 1. eius  | 6. illōrum |
| 2. illae | 7. eī      |
| 3. hunc  | 8. hāc     |
| 4. id    | 9. illa    |
| 5. hās   | 10. eam    |

#### 45. Special Adjectives in -īus

There are nine irregular first and second declension adjectives in Latin which follow the same pattern for the genitive and dative singular that you have just seen in the pronouns above:

	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
<i>Gen. sg.</i>	<b>-īus</b>	<b>-īus</b>	<b>-īus</b>
<i>Dat. sg.</i>	<b>-ī</b>	<b>-ī</b>	<b>-ī</b>

With the exception of the genitive and dative singular forms shown above, these adjectives are declined like **bonus, bona, bonum**. (See §49 in Chapter 11 for **ūnus, ūna, ūnum**.)

<b>alius, alia, aliud</b>	other, another	<b>tōtus, tōta, tōtum</b>	whole
<b>alter, altera, alterum</b>	the one (of two)	<b>ūllus, ūlla, ūllum</b>	any
<b>neuter, neutra, neutrum</b>	neither (of two)	<b>ūnus, ūna, ūnum</b>	one
<b>nūllus, nūlla, nūllum</b>	none	<b>uter, utra, utrum</b>	which?
<b>sōlus, sōla, sōlum</b>	alone		(of two)

#### 46. Sentence Pattern: Factitive

So far you have had four regular sentence patterns:

intransitive (§4)	<b>Agricola labōrat.</b>	The farmer works.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• subject</li> <li>• verb</li> </ul>		
transitive (§4)	<b>Fēmina rosam habet.</b>	The woman has a rose.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• subject</li> <li>• verb</li> <li>• direct object - in the accusative</li> </ul>		
special intransitive (§19)	<b>Dominō pārent.</b>	They obey the master.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• subject</li> <li>• verb</li> <li>• object - in the dative</li> </ul>		

linking (§29)

**Vir est bonus.**

The man is good.

- subject
- linking verb
- subject complement (= predicate nominative)

Another, less common pattern is sometimes called **factitive** (from **faciō**, *to make*). This pattern occurs with verbs meaning *make*, *choose*, *call* and the like, and has both an accusative direct object and a second accusative (noun or adjective) commonly called the **object complement** because it completes the picture of the object: **Is mē laetam facit** = He makes me happy. Here are the elements of this sentence pattern:

**factitive** (uses a special verb with two accusatives)

- subject
- factitive verb
- direct object
- object complement (= predicate accusative)

Here are some verbs which commonly take two accusatives in this pattern:

<b>appellō, appellāre, appellāvī, appellātus</b>	to call, name
<b>creō, creāre, creāvī, creātus</b>	to choose, elect
<b>faciō, facere, fēcī, factus</b>	to make
<b>habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus</b>	to hold; think, consider
<b>iūdicō, iūdicāre, iūdicāvī, iūdicātus</b>	to judge
<b>vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus</b>	to call

Note that the verbs which take two accusatives in this sentence pattern can also occur in a transitive pattern:

transitive:	<b>Amīcōs vocāvit.</b>	He called his friends.
	<b>Pācem faciunt.</b>	They are making peace.
factitive:	<b>Urbem Rōmam vocāvit.</b>	He called the city Rome.
	<b>Eum cōsulem faciunt.</b>	They make him consul.

When the second accusative is an adjective it can be difficult to tell which pattern is being used:

<b>Cōnsilium bonum facit.</b>	He is making a good plan. <i>or</i> He is making the plan good.
-------------------------------	---

When this happens, depend on the context to help you make your best guess.

EXERCISE 57. Identify each of the following as a transitive or factitive sentence pattern (and be prepared to say why), then translate.

- |                                 |  |
|---------------------------------|--|
| 1. Nēmō mē vocābit.             | 5. Cēnam nōbīs facit.                      |
| 2. Nēmō mē amīcum vocābit.      | 6. Hominum nātūrā nōn cognōscis.           |
| 3. Rēgem creāre student.        | 7. Bellum fēminās irātās facit.            |
| 4. Illum hominem ducem creāmus. | 8. Faciuntne ventī pontum plēnum periculī? |

EXERCISE 58. Fill in the blank(s) to complete each sentence and translate.

- |                                    |                                      |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. Ill_____ cōnulem facimus.       | 4. Nūll_____ ducum pārēbō.           |
| 2. Ex silv_____ fugiunt.           | 5. Alii eum amant, al_____ nōn.      |
| 3. E_____ (= his) uxōrem cognōscō. | 6. Puellae et frātr_____ labōrābant. |

EXERCISE 59. Identify the obvious chunks and then translate each of the following sentences.

1. Rōmānī Rōmulum deum habēbant.
2. Id opus ūnī nostrum erat.
3. Tūne ea iūra fugere audēs?
4. Ille dux ad Ītaliā cum patre filiōque fugit.
5. Agricola nōn legit, sed ille poēta huic librum parvum scribit.
6. In agrō corpus sine capite iacēbat.
7. Hoc est malum factum ūnīus.
8. Sub populī Rōmānī imperiō erāmus.
9. Alii irātī pugnant, alii pācem habēre optant.
10. Hic homō nōs nōn verbis solum sed etiam factis dūcere incipit.

EXERCISE 60. Translate into Latin.

1. You (pl.) are Romans, but I am not.
2. Show (sg.) me the money!
3. His wife had many skills, but no virtue. (use *sum* + dat.)
4. This plan will please some, but will not persuade others.
5. The whole state praised the skill of our leaders.
6. Only the gods do not grieve.
7. Do you (pl.) judge his death good?
8. The brothers were fighting about the fertile land of that (man).
9. Nevertheless, we can not praise the judgment of any man in this city.
10. Are you (sg.) beginning to read those poems?

## READING 10 (*adapted*)

*In this letter, Pliny gushes about the many talents of Pompeius Saturninus.*

Amābam Pompēium Sātūrnīnum laudābamque eius ingenium. sed nunc mē tenet, habet, possidet. eius **ōrātiōnēs** cognōscō; hic facile et ārdenter dīcit. ars eius mihi placet et placēbit tibi. hic etiam carmina facit, quālia Catullus aut Calvus. lēgit hodiē mihi epistulās uxōris; eae bonae sunt. et illa **ēleganter** scribit!

VOCABULARY:

nostrum	“my friend”	quālia	like
eius	“his”	Catullus, -ī <i>m.</i>	Catullus (a poet)
ingenium, -ī <i>n.</i>	talents, ability; genius	Calvus, -ī <i>m.</i>	Calvus (a poet)
ōratiō, -ōnis <i>f.</i>	speech, oration	hodiē (adv.)	today
possideō, possidēre	to possess	ēleganter (adv.)	elegantly
ārdenter (adv.)	passionately		

READING 11 (*adapted*)

*During the reign of the emperor Domitian, professional philosophers were expelled from Rome because of their political activities. Allowed to return a few years later, philosophers like Euphrates, whom Pliny met while serving as a military tribune in Syria, enriched the life of the city. Pliny here talks about Euphrates' talents and contrasts his own life as a prefect of the Roman treasury with that of the philosopher.*

Sī quandō urbs nostra **liberālibus studiis** flōruit, nunc maximē flōret. multa clāraque exempla sunt: vocō ūnum, Euphrātē **philosophum**. hunc egō in Syriā ōlim amīcum facere labōrāvī; sed nōn erat **difficultās**. est enim obviuS et exposituS plēnuSque **hūmānitāte**. **disputat** subtiliter, graviter, ōrnatē. sermō est cōpiōsuS et **variuS**. nūlluS horror in cultūrā, nūlla tristitia. egō sedeō prō tribūnālī, cōficiō tabulās, scribō multās litterās. soleō dē hīs **occupātiōnibuz** apud Euphrātē dīcere. ille mihi **cōnsōlātiōnem** dat sic: est haec **philosophiae** pulchra pars, agere negōtiuS **pūblicuS**, cognōscere, iūdicāre, prōmere et **exercere** iūstitiam. mihi tamen hoc nōn persuādet. Valē.

## VOCABULARY:

Sī quandō	if ever, if at any time	cultūra, -ae f.	i.e. dress and lifestyle
liberālibus (adj.)	liberal		
studium, -iī n.	study	tristitia, -ae f.	harshness
flōreō, -ēre, -uī	to flourish, blossom	prō tribūnālī	in an official capacity
maximē (adv.)	very much, especially	cōficiō, -ere	to settle, complete
Euphrātē = Euphrates	<i>Greek acc. form</i>	tabula, -ae f.	account, record
philosophuS, -ī m.	philosopher	occupātiō, -iōnis f.	occupation, task
difficultās, -tātis f.	difficulty	apud	(speaking) to
obviuS, -a, -um	accessible	(prep. + acc.)	
exposituS, -a, -um	open, affable	consōlātiō, -iōnis f.	consolation
hūmānitās, -tātis f.	humanity	sic	thus, in this way
disputō, -āre	to argue, discuss	philosophia, -ae f.	philosophy
subtiliter (adv.)	plainly, simply	agere negōtiuS	to conduct business
graviter (adv.)	heavily, with authority	pūblicuS, -a, -um	public
ōrnatē (adv.)	elegantly, splendidly	prōmō, -ere	to bring forth, produce
sermō, sermōnis, m.	discourse, manner of speaking	exerceō, -ēre	to exercise, administer
cōpiōsuS, -a, -um	eloquent	iūstitia, -ae, f.	justice
variuS, -a, -um	varied		
horror, -ōris m.	roughness		

## PRACTICE SENTENCES

Identify the case and use of the underlined words, then translate.

1. Virum bonum nātūra, nōn ōrdō facit. (Publilius Syrus)
2. Aliud est maledīcere, aliud **accūsāre**. (Cicero)
3. Trōia et huic locō nōmen est. (Livy)
4. Egō tamen frūgālītātem, id est modestiam et temperantiam, virtūtem maximam iūdicō. (Cicero; *on virtue*)
5. Egō cōsul populī Rōmānī nōn modō nihil iūdicō sed etiam nūllam sententiam prōferō. (Cicero - adapted)

## VOCABULARY:

ōrdō, ōrdinis <i>m.</i>	rank, class, station
maledīcō, -ere	to slander, speak badly (of)
accūsō, -āre	to accuse
frūgālītās, -tātis <i>f.</i>	frugality, economy, honesty
modestia, -ae <i>f.</i>	restraint, freedom from excess
temperantia, -ae <i>f.</i>	moderation
maximus, -a, -um	greatest
nōn modō	not only
sententia, -ae <i>f.</i>	opinion
prōferō, -ere	mention, reveal

## Chapter 10 Vocabulary

### Noun

factum, factī <i>n.</i>	deed, act, exploit
iūs, iūris <i>n.</i>	right, law; justice

### Verbs

cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī, cognitus	to learn, get to know, recognize
creō, creāre, creāvī, creātus	to create; elect, choose
fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitūrus	to flee (from), escape, avoid
incipiō, incipere, incēpī, inceptus	to begin
iūdicō, iūdicāre, iūdicāvī, iūdicātus	to judge; to decide
legō, legere, lēgī, lēctus	to read; choose, select
persuādēō, persuādēre, persuāsī (+ dat.)	to persuade

### Adjectives

alius, alia, aliud	other, another
aliud ... aliud	one thing ... another (thing)
aliī ... aliī	some ... others
nūllus, nūlla, nūllum	not any, no
sōlus, sōla, sōlum	alone, only
nōn sōlum ... sed etiam	not only ... but also
tōtus, tōta, tōtum	whole, entire
ūllus, ūlla, ūllum	any
ūnus, ūna, ūnum	one

### Pronouns

hic, haec, hoc	this
ille, illa, illud	that
is, ea, id	he, she, it, they; this, that

### Adverbs

etiam	even, also
ita	so, thus, in this way
tamen	however, nevertheless, yet



## READING CHAPTER II

Narrative Reading: Aeneas in Italy  
Word Derivations and Word Building  
Dictionary Practice / Form Identification

### Narrative Reading II

Adapted from Livy 1.1

*This passage picks up the story of what happens after the end of the Trojan War. Although the Trojans are defeated by the Greeks, one of their leaders (Aeneas) leads a group of survivors out of the burning city and travels to found a new city in Italy.*

Note:

- Because you have learned only certain verb forms so far, the tenses in this passage will vary. Remember that the Historical Present (§38) is sometimes used in past narratives.

Tandem Graeci **Trōiam longum** post bellum superāvērunt. Aenēās, filius Anchīsae, ex urbe fugit et multis cum sociis ad Italiam nāvigat. ibi **Trōiānī** praedam ex agris agere incipiēbant. Latīnus rēx Aboriginēsque, quī tum ea tenēbant loca, cum armīs ex urbe atque agrīs festīnāvērunt. **Trōiānī** arma ad proelium parāvērunt, sed ante bellum Latīnus ducem advenārū vocāvit ad conloquium. ‘Quī estis?’ rēx dīcit. Aenēās miseram fābulam **Trōiae** nārrāvit:

(continued)

#### VOCABULARY:

Trōia, -ae f.	Troy	Latīnus (nom.)	Latinus (an early king in Italy)
longus, -a, -um	long		
Aenēās, Aenēae m.	Aeneas, Anchises' son	Aboriginēs (nom. pl.)	original inhabitants
Anchīsēs, Anchīsae m.	Anchises	quī (nom. sg. & pl.)	who
socius, -ī m. (pl.)	comrades	atque	= et
ibi	there	proelium, -ī n.	battle
praeda, -ae f.	plunder (e.g. cattle)	ante (+ acc.)	before
		advena, -ae m.	foreigner, stranger
		conloquium, -ī n.	conference

## Narrative Reading II (*continued*)

‘**Trōiānī** sumus; ego sum Aenēās, filius Anchīsae et Veneris deae; Penātēs mēcum portō; in hōc locō novam urbem aedificāre optāmus.’  
rēx Latīnus **nōbilitātem** gentis virīque videt. huic dextram dat, fidem  
**futūrae amīcitiae**, et ducēs foedus faciunt. tum Latīnus filiam,  
**Lāviniam**, Aenēae in **mātrimōnium** dedit. **Trōiānī** novam urbem  
aedificāvērunt et Aenēās ab nōmine uxōris Lāvinium appellāvit.

### VOCABULARY:

Venus, Veneris <i>f.</i>	Venus	fidem (acc.)	pledge
dea, -ae <i>f.</i>	goddess	futūrus, -a, -um	future
Penātēs, -ium <i>m.</i> (pl.)	household gods	amīcitia, -ae <i>f.</i>	friendship
nōbilitās, -tātis <i>f.</i>	nobility	foedus, foederis <i>n.</i>	treaty
gēns, gentis <i>f.</i>	race, people, nation	Lāvinia, -ae <i>f.</i>	Lavinia
dextram (acc.)	right hand	mātrimōnium, -i <i>n.</i>	marriage
		appellō, -āre, -āvī	to name, call

## Word Derivations

For each of the following Latin words, write down as many English derivatives as you can.

- |            |             |
|------------|-------------|
| 1. ars     | 7. nōmen    |
| 2. corpus  | 8. novus    |
| 3. filius  | 9. plēnus   |
| 4. incipiō | 10. populus |
| 5. iūs     | 11. regō    |
| 6. faciō   | 12. teneō   |

## Word Building

### Roots

You have now learned enough vocabulary to begin recognizing families of words which use the same root. Look, for example, at the following set of words which use the root **am-**:

amor, amōris *m.*: love  
amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus: to love  
amīcus, amīcī *m.*: friend  
amīcitia, amīcitiae *f.*: friendship

The root meaning for **am-** is “love.” By learning some of the common roots and root meanings in Latin, you can simplify your work at building a usable Latin vocabulary.

### Vowel Weakening

As you begin to learn Latin roots, you should also be aware of a feature common to all languages, the tendency for some vowels to weaken. This is especially common with compound words:

- short **a** before a single consonant weakens to short **i**  
     **cap**iō > **in**ci*p*iō  
     **am**īcus > **in**imīcus
- short **a** before two consonants weakens to short **e**  
     **cap**tus > **in**cep*t*us

For each of the following words, identify the root, guess at its meaning, and list as many words from the Chapter Vocabulary as you can which use the same root:

*Example:*      capiō                      Root = CAP, Meaning = “take,” Other words: incipiō

- |             |             |
|-------------|-------------|
| 1.    faciō | 3    rēgnum |
| 2.    īra   | 4.    vōx   |

Based on the Latin words you have already learned, see if you can guess the meaning of each of the following:

- |                                 |                              |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1.    fuga, -ae <i>f</i> .      | 3    locō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus |
| 2.    iūdex, iūdicis <i>m</i> . | 4.    tacitus, -a, -um       |

## Dictionary Practice / Form Identification

Identify the words below based on the dictionary entries given. Be sure to indicate the **entry from which each is taken**, and the **part of speech** and to *give all possibilities for ambiguous forms*.

For **nouns** and **adjectives**: give case, number, and gender

For **verbs**: give person, number, tense (present, imperfect, future, perfect) and mood (indicative or imperative). \*All forms so far are active.

- A. amor, amōris *m*.: love
- B. amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus: to love
- C. amīcus, amīcī *m*.: friend
- D. amīcītia, amīcītia*e f*.: friendship

	<i>Entry</i>	<i>Part of Speech</i>	<i>Form ID</i>
1. amāvistī			
2. amōrī			
3. amīcitiās			
4. amābās			
5. amīcīs			
6. amāte			
7. amōrēs			
8. amāmus			
9. amīcō			
10. amāvēre			



Chariot and Triton (sea-god). Mosaic from Ostia, 2nd c. A.D.

# CHAPTER 11

## Third Conjugation Imperfect and Future Active Indicative Numerals Expressions of Cause

### 47. Imperfect Active Indicative (Third Conjugation)

The **imperfect** of the third conjugation is formed like that of the first and second conjugation (§31), with the tense sign **-ba-** between the verb stem and the personal endings:

	3RD REGULAR		3RD -iō	
<i>1st sg.</i>	regē <b>bam</b>	I was ruling, etc.	capiē <b>bam</b>	I was taking, etc.
<i>2nd sg.</i>	regē <b>bās</b>	You were ruling	capiē <b>bās</b>	You were taking
<i>3rd sg.</i>	regē <b>bat</b>	He / she was ruling	capiē <b>bat</b>	He / she was taking
<i>1st pl.</i>	regē <b>bāmus</b>	We were ruling	capiē <b>bāmus</b>	We were taking
<i>2nd pl.</i>	regē <b>bātis</b>	You (all) were ruling	capiē <b>bātis</b>	You (all) were taking
<i>3rd pl.</i>	regē <b>bant</b>	They were ruling	capiē <b>bant</b>	They were taking

Note that the stem vowel **-i-** of third **-iō** verbs is visible in these forms. While this **-i-** usually disappears before a short **-e** (**capiō**, **capere**), it remains before a long **-ē** (§42).

### 48. Future Active Indicative (Third Conjugation)

The **future** of the third conjugation uses the vowel **-e-** (**-a-** in the first singular form) before the ending, instead of the tense sign **-bi-** that appeared in the first two conjugations:

	3RD REGULAR		3RD -iō	
<i>1st sg.</i>	reg <b>am</b>	I shall rule	capi <b>am</b>	I shall take
<i>2nd sg.</i>	regē <b>s</b>	You will rule	capiē <b>s</b>	You will take
<i>3rd sg.</i>	reget	He / she will rule	capiet	He / she will take
<i>1st pl.</i>	regē <b>mus</b>	We shall rule	capiē <b>mus</b>	We shall take
<i>2nd pl.</i>	regēt <b>is</b>	You (all) will rule	capiēt <b>is</b>	You (all) will take
<i>3rd pl.</i>	rege <b>nt</b>	They will rule	capie <b>nt</b>	They will take

The personal endings are again the same as those used in the present tense except in the 1st. sg. which ends with **-m** instead of **-ō**. The stem vowel **-i-** of third **-iō** verbs is visible in all the forms.

EXERCISE 61. Identify each of the following verbs by person, number, tense (present, imperfect or future) and mood (indicative or imperative), then translate into English.

- |               |               |
|---------------|---------------|
| 1. fugiēbātis | 6. docēs      |
| 2. dūcet      | 7. scrībam    |
| 3. agēbam     | 8. crēdite    |
| 4. dīc (§ 42) | 9. vincent    |
| 5. mittēs     | 10. incipiunt |

EXERCISE 62. Write the indicated form of each verb, then translate into English.

*Example:* cadō, cadere (third sg. imperfect): cadēbat; he/she/it was falling

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. dīscō, dīscere (third pl. present)         | 7. relinquo, relinquere (third pl. imperfect) |
| 2. legō, legere (first sg. future)            | 8. cognōscō, cognōscere (third pl. future)    |
| 3. sedeō, sedēre (third sg. future)           | 9. petō, petere (first sg. imperfect)         |
| 4. crēdō, crēdere (first pl. imperfect)       | 10. scrībō, scrībere (third sg. future)       |
| 5. incipiō, incipere (second pl. future)      |   |
| 6. regō, regere (second sg. pres. imperative) |   |

## 49. Numerals

CARDINAL			ORDINAL	
I	ūnus, -a, -um	one	prīmus, -a, -um	first
II	duo, duae, duo	two	secundus, -a, -um	second
III	trēs, tria	three	tertius, -a, -um	third
IV	quattuor	four	quārtus, -a, -um	fourth
V	quīnque	five	quīntus, -a, -um	fifth
VI	sex	six	sextus, -a, -um	sixth
VII	septem	seven	septimus, -a, -um	seventh
VIII	octō	eight	octāvus, -a, -um	eighth
IX	novem	nine	nōnus, -a, -um	ninth
X	decem	ten	decimus, -a, -um	tenth
XI	ūndecim	eleven	ūndecimus, -a, -um	eleventh
XII	duodecim	twelve	duodecimus, -a, -um	twelfth
XX	vīgintī	twenty		
XXX	trīgintā	thirty		
C	centum	one hundred		
M	mille	one thousand		

So far all the adjectives you have learned have been declinable. Latin adjectives representing numerals fall into two groups. All the ordinals are declined like **bonus, -a, -um**. The cardinals, except for the first three, are indeclinable. Note the following paradigms for the first three cardinals.

<b>ūnus, -a, -um</b>			
SINGULAR	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
<i>Nominative</i>	ūnus	ūna	ūnum
<i>Genitive</i>	ūnīus	ūnīus	ūnīus
<i>Dative</i>	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī
<i>Accusative</i>	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum
<i>Ablative</i>	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō

<b>duo, duae, duo</b>			
PLURAL	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
<i>Nominative</i>	duo	duae	duo
<i>Genitive</i>	duōrum	duārum	duōrum
<i>Dative</i>	duōbus	duābus	duōbus
<i>Accusative</i>	duōs	duās	duo
<i>Ablative</i>	duōbus	duābus	duōbus

<b>trēs, tria</b>	
M. & F.	NEUTER
trēs	tria
trium	trium
tribus	tribus
trēs	tria
tribus	tribus

With numerals, Latin often uses **ē/ex** or **dē** plus the ablative instead of a partitive genitive:

<b>duae ex fēminīs</b>	two <b>of the women</b>
<b>ūnus dē virīs</b>	one <b>of the men</b>

## 50. Expressions of Cause

Latin, like English, has a variety of ways to express **cause**. Note the following:

- **ablative case without a preposition**

Dux <b>cūrīs</b> aeger erat.	The leader was sick <b>with worry</b> .
Multa glōriae <b>cupiditāte</b> facit.	He does many things <b>out of a love</b> of glory.

It is sometimes hard to distinguish this use of the ablative from an ablative of means (§21) or ablative of manner (§30). If you aren't sure, try translating "because of —," "by means of —" and "with —" to see which suits the context best.

- **preposition + accusative or ablative**

**dē** or **ex** with the **ablative**

Dux <b>ex vulnere</b> aeger erat.	The leader was sick <b>from a wound</b> .
Certīs <b>dē causīs</b> agit.	He is acting <b>for</b> definite <b>reasons</b> .

**ob** and **propter** with the **accusative**

Laetī sumus <b>propter pācem</b> .	We are happy <b>because of the peace</b> .
<b>Ob iniūriam</b> nōn pugnābit.	<b>Because of his injury</b> , he will not fight.

- **causā and grātiā** with the **genitive**

<b>Cīvitātis causā</b> pugnāte!	Fight <b>for the sake of the state</b> !
<b>Exemplī grātiā</b> ūnum dīcō.	I mention one thing <b>for example</b> .

The genitive precedes these words, as in the examples above.



EXERCISE 63. In the following paragraph identify those phrases which indicate **means**, **manner**, **accompaniment** and **cause**. (Do not translate into Latin.)

The leader marched with his men through the mountains and with great speed they attacked the city with their weapons. The citizens, terrified by the attack, ran with their wives and children to the river. But it was swollen with rain, and they refused to cross through fear. With difficulty they moved along the banks of the river and finally escaped by a path through the forest.

EXERCISE 64. Translate each of the following sentences.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Vir per montēs cum coniuge ambulat.                                 | 6. Nōs ūnūs fēminae causā bellum faciēmus.               |
| 2. Rōmānī duōs cōsulēs creāvērunt.                                     | 7. Dē huius coniuge multa dicam.                         |
| 3. Crēdēsne eī?  | 8. Rēgī pācis grātiā dōna saepe mittēbāmus.              |
| 4. Multis cum lacrimis filius filiaque ante casam patrem relinquēbant. | 9. Ducibus nostris magnam laudem grātiāque dare debēmus. |
| 5. Propter timōrem nec ducēs nec milītēs trāns flūmen fugere audēbant. | 10. Trēs aut quattuor amīcōs in urbe petēmus.            |

EXERCISE 65. Translate into Latin.

1. We were not able to see his tears.
2. The consuls will speak to the people.
3. Nine men were building a new temple.
4. That soldier leaves his weapons on the field and flees from the danger.
5. Because of the deeds of those men, the state will be famous.
6. Good leaders always act with justice.
7. They taught your (sg.) two sons the truth.
8. Five of the women were looking for water.
9. They fought three wars against these soldiers for the sake of your (pl.) freedom.
10. The whole state will thank our great leader.

## READING 12 (*adapted*)

*Tacitus (c. A.D. 56-after A.D. 113) describes the Germans' way of ruling and doing battle. Among other differences, the Germans organized their battle groups by families and clans, and encouraged the women to cheer from the sidelines.*

Germānī rēgēs ex nōbilitāte, ducēs ex virtūte legunt. Nec rēgibus **īfinīta** aut libera potestās, et ducēs exemplō potius quam imperiō agunt; sī ante aciem pugnant, admīrātiōne praesunt. Effigiāsque et **signa** ex silvīs sacris in proelium portant. Ad mātres, ad coniugēs vulnera portant; nec illae **numerāre** aut exigere plāgās timent, cibōsque et hortāmina militibus dant.



## VOCABULARY:

nōbilitās, -tātis <i>f.</i>	noble birth, nobility	signum, -ī <i>n.</i>	token, sign
īnfinītus, -a, -um	unlimited	proelium, -ī <i>n.</i>	battle
potestās, -tātis <i>f.</i>	power	vulnus, -eris <i>n.</i>	wound
potius quam	“rather than”	numerō, -āre	to count
sī	if	exigō, exigere	to demand to see
aciem (acc.)	line of battle	plāga, -ae <i>f.</i>	wound, blow
admīrātiō, -iōnis <i>f.</i>	admiration	cibus, -ī <i>m.</i>	food
praesum	to lead	hortāmen, -inis <i>n.</i>	encouragement
effigia, -ae <i>f.</i>	image (of an animal)		

READING 13 (*adapted*)

*Cicero, in his writings about the nature of the gods, talks about the ideas of previous philosophers including the Greek Xenocrates.*

Xenocratēs scribēbat librōs dē nātūrā deōrum sed nūllam speciem dīvinam **dēscribēbat**. dicēbat enim: Deī octō sunt, quīnque ex eīs in stellīs vagīs sunt, ūnus in sīderibus caelī est, ille septimum sōlem adiungit octāvamque lūnam.

## VOCABULARY:

speciem (acc.)	form	sīdus, sīderis <i>n.</i>	star
dēscribō, -ere	to describe	sōl, sōlis <i>m.</i>	sun
stellīs vagīs (abl.)	planets	adiungō, -ere	to add

## PRACTICE SENTENCES

Identify the case and use of the underlined words, then translate.

1. Aliās terrās petunt; iūra, lēgēs, agrōs, libertātem nōbīs relinquunt. (Caesar; *A Gaul is describing what previous conquerers had done*)
2. Per ego hās lacrimās dextramque tuam ōrō. (Vergil; *Dido begs Aeneas to listen to her*)
3. Forsan et haec ōlim meminisse iuvābit. (Vergil; *Aeneas tries to encourage his men*)
4. Nam sī **Graecō** poetae crēdimus Aristotelī “nūllum magnum ingenium sine mixtūrā dēmentiae fuit.” (Seneca - adapted)
5. Vōs vērō patriae filiōs iūdicō. (Cicero - adapted; *honoring men fallen in battle*)
6. Aut amat aut ōdit fēmina, nihil est tertium. (Publilius Syrus - adapted)

## VOCABULARY:

forsan (adv.)	perhaps	ingenium, -iī <i>n.</i>	talent, ability,
meminisse	to remember		genius
Graecus, -a, -um	Greek	mixtura, -ae <i>f.</i>	mixture
vērō (adv.)	in fact, in truth;	dementia, -ae <i>f.</i>	madness, folly
	certainly; indeed	odī (perfect form)	to hate (translate as a present tense)

## Chapter 11 Vocabulary

## Nouns

causa, causae <i>f.</i>	cause, reason
causā (+ gen.)	for the sake of, because of
coniūnx, coniugis <i>m.</i> or <i>f.</i>	wife; husband; spouse
flūmen, flūminis <i>n.</i>	river
grātia, grātia <i>f.</i>	grace; favor, kindness; gratitude
grātiā (+ gen.)	for the sake of, because of
grātiās agere (+ dat.)	to thank
lacrima, lacrimae <i>f.</i>	tear
laus, laudis <i>f.</i>	praise
mīlēs, mīlitis <i>m.</i>	soldier
timor, timōris <i>m.</i>	fear, terror

## Verbs

cadō, cadere, cecidī	to fall
crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditus (+ dat.)	to believe, trust
petō, petere, petīvī or petiī, petitus	to seek, go after; ask; attack
relinquō, relinquere, reliquī, relictus	to leave, abandon

## Adjectives

dexter, dextra, dextrum	right; right hand
<i>numerals in §49 as assigned by your instructor</i>	
secundus, secunda, secundum	second; favorable

## Prepositions

ante (+ acc.)	before, in front of
per (+ acc.)	through, along; because of; by (in oaths and prayers)

## Conjunctions

nam ( <i>sometimes used as a particle</i> )	for (= because); indeed, truly
nec or neque	and not
nec ... nec; neque ... neque	neither ... nor

(18 + §49 numerals, as assigned by instructor)

# CHAPTER 12

## Third Declension Adjectives Expressions of Time

So far all the adjectives you have seen have used endings taken from the first and second declensions. This chapter introduces adjectives which use third declension endings. It also introduces different ways to express time in Latin.

### 51. Third Declension Adjectives

Adjectives in the third declension follow the declension of *i*-stem nouns which you learned in Chapter 7 (§35). **Third declension adjectives** are characterized by their nominative singular endings: some use a different ending for each gender (as the first and second declension adjectives did, §25); others use one ending for masculine and feminine and a second for neuter; a third group uses one set of endings for all three genders. An example from each group is given below.

The dictionary listing for each of these adjectives will indicate which group they belong in as follows:

3-ending:	<b>ācer, ācris, ācre</b>	(nom. sg. masc. + fem. + neuter forms)
2-ending:	<b>omnis, omne</b>	(nom. sg. masc./fem. + nom. sg. n. forms)
1-ending:	<b>ingēns, ingentis</b>	(nom. sg. + gen. sg. forms)

#### Three-Ending Adjectives

SINGULAR	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
<i>Nominative</i>	ācer	ācris	ācre
<i>Genitive</i>	ācris	ācris	ācris
<i>Dative</i>	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī
<i>Accusative</i>	ācrem	ācrem	ācre
<i>Ablative</i>	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī

PLURAL	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
<i>Nominative</i>	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
<i>Genitive</i>	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
<i>Dative</i>	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
<i>Accusative</i>	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
<i>Ablative</i>	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

Note:

- An exception to this pattern is **celer**, **celeris**, **celere** (swift), which keeps the stem **-er** throughout and uses the genitive plural ending **-um**.

### Two-Ending Adjectives

SINGULAR	M. & F.	NEUTER
<i>Nominative</i>	omnis	omne
<i>Genitive</i>	omnis	omnis
<i>Dative</i>	omnī	omnī
<i>Accusative</i>	omnem	omne
<i>Ablative</i>	omnī	omnī
PLURAL		
<i>Nominative</i>	omnēs	omnia
<i>Genitive</i>	omnium	omnium
<i>Dative</i>	omnibus	omnibus
<i>Accusative</i>	omnēs	omnia
<i>Ablative</i>	omnibus	omnibus

### One-Ending Adjectives

SINGULAR	M. & F.	NEUTER
<i>Nominative</i>	ingēns	ingēns
<i>Genitive</i>	ingentis	ingentis
<i>Dative</i>	ingentī	ingentī
<i>Accusative</i>	ingentem	ingēns
<i>Ablative</i>	ingentī	ingentī
PLURAL		
<i>Nominative</i>	ingentēs	ingentia
<i>Genitive</i>	ingentium	ingentium
<i>Dative</i>	ingentibus	ingentibus
<i>Accusative</i>	ingentēs	ingentia
<i>Ablative</i>	ingentibus	ingentibus

Note that the adjectives in all these groups use the same set of regular third declension endings:

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	M/F	NEUTER	M/F	NEUTER
<i>Nominative</i>	-??	-e	-ēs	-ia
<i>Genitive</i>	-is		-ium	
<i>Dative</i>	-ī		-ibus	
<i>Accusative</i>	-em	-e	-ēs	-ia
<i>Ablative</i>	-ī		-ibus	

EXERCISE 66. Identify each of the following third declension adjectives by case, number and gender. If the ending is ambiguous, include all possibilities.

*Example:*      *difficilem*      Accusative singular masculine or feminine

- |                     |                      |
|---------------------|----------------------|
| 1. <i>forte</i>     | 4. <i>celeribus</i>  |
| 2. <i>potentium</i> | 5. <i>omnia</i>      |
| 3. <i>facilī</i>    | 6. <i>difficilēs</i> |

EXERCISE 67. Identify each of the following nouns by case, number and gender, then say which adjectives could modify the noun listed with them. Be prepared to say why the others could NOT modify the noun.

*Example:*      *caput: sacer, magna, omne, ingēns*  
                     *caput (nom. or acc. sg. n.)*  
                     *omne, ingēns (also nom. or acc. sg. n.)*

- |                    |                |                  |                 |                   |
|--------------------|----------------|------------------|-----------------|-------------------|
| 1. <i>arte:</i>    | <i>dulcī</i>   | <i>sacrum</i>    | <i>bonā</i>     | <i>difficilia</i> |
| 2. <i>hōrīs:</i>   | <i>brevis</i>  | <i>fēlicibus</i> | <i>tōtī</i>     | <i>omnēs</i>      |
| 3. <i>tempus:</i>  | <i>celer</i>   | <i>omne</i>      | <i>fēlix</i>    | <i>bonus</i>      |
| 4. <i>dominus:</i> | <i>fēlix</i>   | <i>fortēs</i>    | <i>noster</i>   | <i>potēns</i>     |
| 5. <i>flūmina:</i> | <i>altā</i>    | <i>celeria</i>   | <i>altum</i>    | <i>parvīs</i>     |
| 6. <i>mēns:</i>    | <i>pulchra</i> | <i>ūllā</i>      | <i>ācris</i>    | <i>omne</i>       |
| 7. <i>liber:</i>   | <i>magnus</i>  | <i>alium</i>     | <i>ingentem</i> | <i>omnis</i>      |
| 8. <i>vītā:</i>    | <i>facile</i>  | <i>omnī</i>      | <i>laeta</i>    | <i>novō</i>       |

EXERCISE 68. Translate each of the following noun-adjective pairs into the Latin case indicated.

- |                            |                              |
|----------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1.    short life (gen.)    | 6.    powerful leader (abl.) |
| 2.    every mother (nom.)  | 7.    new laws (gen.)        |
| 3.    huge fields (dat.)   | 8.    pleasant dinner (acc.) |
| 4.    strange truth (nom.) | 9.    lucky daughter (abl.)  |
| 5.    easy times (acc.)    | 10.    mighty masters (nom.) |

## 52. Expressions of Time

Latin expresses time with the accusative or ablative without a preposition, as follows.

- **time when** - *with* ablative *case*

Agricola **prīmā lūce** labōrat.  
 Discēditne **sextā hōrā**?

The farmer works **at first light** (= dawn).  
 Is he leaving **at the sixth hour** (= noon)?

- **time within which** - *with* ablative case

Militēs **tribus annīs** discēdent.      The soldiers will depart **within three years.**

**Tertiō annō** urbem vincent.      They will conquer the city **during the third year.**

- **length of time** - *with* accusative case

**Trēs annōs** manēbāmus.      We stayed **for three years.**

Haec **partem** aetātis faciēbat.      He was doing this **for part** of his life.

Note:

- Length of time is sometimes emphasized with the preposition **per**.

EXERCISE 69. Draw an arrow from each adjective (or pronoun used as an adjective) to the noun it modifies, and then translate each of the following sentences.

1. Illi mēns celeris est.
2. Bellum breve sed populō difficile erat.
3. Omnēs propter artem poetae dīs grātiās agunt.
4. Carmina brevia illius poetae vōbīs placēbant?
5. Militēs saepe hōc tempore pedibus pugnābant.
6. Puerī brevī tempore labōrāre incipient.
7. Hic in agrīs per tōtam aetātem labōrābat.
8. Decem hōrās manēbimus, tum in urbem ambulābimus.
9. Pater frāterque meus irae grātiā hāc hōrā discēdunt.
10. Ducibus cōsiliū bonum capere difficile erit.

EXERCISE 70. Translate into Latin.

1. Her voice is sharp.
2. The brave hero was accustomed to suffer pain for the sake of freedom
3. At that time everyone [*use omnis*] elected him leader of the city.
4. For seven hours we did not dare [*use imperfect*] to walk across that river.
5. In one year our powerful leader has harmed many men.
6. Is it easy to seek the truth?
7. Life was sweet for the lucky daughter of the second consul.
8. The boys are hurrying down from the mountain out of fear.
9. They will attack the others at the tenth hour.
10. The Romans waged war in Gaul for seven years.

## READING 14 (*adapted*)

*In this selection Ovid adopts the voice of a lover chiding his girlfriend, Corinna. She has bleached her hair and it is now falling out.*

Dicēbam, “Medicāre tuōs **dēsiste** capillōs.” Iam tibi nūlla coma est. Cui est coma tam longa, tam pulchra? Nec tamen āter erat neque erat tamen aureus ille sed, quamvis neuter, mixtus uterque **color**. Adde

quod et docilēs et tibi nullius causa doloris erant. Nunc tibi **captīvōs** mittet Germānia crīnēs. Saepe comās aliī laudābunt, sed rubēbis et dicēs, “Ēmptā nunc mē merce laudant!”

## VOCABULARY:

medicō, -āre	to treat, heal	uterque (adj.)	each
dēsistō, -ere	to stop	color, -ōris <i>m.</i>	color
capillus, -ī <i>m.</i>	(a single) hair	adde quod	and besides
iam	now	docilis, docile	manageable
coma, -ae <i>f.</i>	hair	captīvus, -a, -um	captive, of captives
cui	“To whom?” -	Germānia, -ae <i>f.</i>	Germany
dative of possession	= “Who has...?”	crīnis, crīnis <i>m.</i>	hair
tam	so	rubeō, -ēre	to blush
āter, ātra, ātrum	black, dark	ēmtus, -a, -um	bought
aureus, -a, -um	gold, golden	merx, mercis <i>f.</i>	merchandise - i.e.
quamvis	although		a wig - abl. of
neuter, -tra, -trum	neither		cause (§50)
mixtus	“was mixed”		

## PRACTICE SENTENCES

Identify the case and use of the underlined words, then translate.

1. Tullus magnā **gloriā** bellī regnāvit annōs duōs et trīgintā. (Livy; *talking about the Roman king who destroyed Alba Longa*)
2. Sic semper **tyrannīs**! (Virginia state motto)
3. Sic tōtus mundus deōrum est **immortālium** templum. (Seneca - adapted)
4. In agrum Rōmānum eō tempore incursiōnēs faciēbant. (Livy - adapted; *of the Etruscans*)
5. Post **pugnam** ad Regillum lacum nōn alia illīs annīs **pugna** clārior fuit. (Livy; *Rome conquered the Latins here in c. 496 B.C.*)
6. Sī ratiō divīna est, nullum autem bonum sine ratiōne est, bonum omne divīnum est. (Seneca)

## VOCABULARY:

glōria, -ae, <i>f.</i>	glory, fame	ad Regillum	“at Lake Regillus”
tyrannus, -ī, <i>m.</i>	tyrant	lacum	
mundus, -ī, <i>m.</i>	world, universe	pugna, -ae, <i>f.</i>	fight
immortālis, -e	immortal	clārior (nom.)	more famous
incursiō, -iōnis, <i>f.</i>	attack, raid, invasion	autem (conj.)	however

## Chapter 12 Vocabulary

### Nouns

<i>aetās, aetātis f.</i>	age, life
<i>annus, annī m.</i>	year
<i>dolor, dolōris m.</i>	pain, sorrow
<i>Gallia, Galliae f.</i>	Gaul
<i>gēns, gentis f.</i>	clan, tribe, family; nation; people
<i>hōra, hōrae f.</i>	hour, season
<i>pēs, pedis m.</i>	foot
<i>tempus, temporis n.</i>	time, opportunity

### Verbs

<i>discēdō, discēdere, discessī</i>	to depart, go away; separate
<i>gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus</i>	to bear, carry on, wear
<i>bellum gerō</i>	to wage war

### Adjectives

<i>ācer, ācris, ācre</i>	sharp, fierce; eager
<i>brevis, breve</i>	brief, short
<i>celer, celeris, celere</i>	swift, quick, rapid
<i>difficilis, difficile</i>	difficult
<i>dulcis, dulce</i>	sweet; pleasant
<i>facilis, facile</i>	easy
<i>fēlix, fēlicis</i>	fortunate, lucky
<i>fortis, forte</i>	brave; strong
<i>ingēns, ingentis</i>	huge; mighty
<i>omnis, omne</i>	all, every
<i>potēns, potentis</i>	powerful; able

### Adverbs

<i>sīc</i>	thus, so
<i>ter</i>	three times, thrice



# CHAPTER 13

Fourth Conjugation:  
 Present Active Indicative and Infinitive  
 Present Active Imperative  
 The Pronoun: Part 3  
 Interrogative Pronouns  
 Reflexive Pronouns  
 Possessive Adjectives and Possession Using *Eius*  
 Ablative of Specification (Respect)

This chapter introduces verbs in the fourth conjugation and some new pronouns. It also introduces a new use of the ablative without a preposition.

## 53. Fourth Conjugation

Verbs in the **fourth conjugation** have a stem which ends in **-ī-**, and use the same personal endings you learned for the first, second and third conjugations (§5, §42).

### Fourth Conjugation Indicative [-i-]

<i>1st sg.</i>	audi <b>ō</b>	I hear
<i>2nd sg.</i>	audi <b>īs</b>	You hear
<i>3rd sg.</i>	audi <b>t</b>	He, she it hears
<i>1st pl.</i>	audi <b>mus</b>	We hear
<i>2nd pl.</i>	audi <b>tis</b>	You (all) hear
<i>3rd pl.</i>	audiu <b>nt</b>	They hear

The **present active infinitive**, as in previous conjugations, adds **-re** to the verb stem:

STEM	INFINITIVE	MEANING
audi-	audi <b>re</b>	to hear
veni-	veni <b>re</b>	to come

The **present active imperative**, as in previous conjugations, uses the verb stem for the second singular form. For the second plural, it uses **-īte**.

#### 4TH CONJUGATION

<i>2nd sg.</i>	audī	(you) listen!
<i>2nd pl.</i>	audīte	(you all) listen!

EXERCISE 71. Identify each of the following verbs by person, number and mood (indicative or imperative), then translate into English. All forms are present tense.

- |              |              |
|--------------|--------------|
| 1. servit    | 6. sentītis  |
| 2. persuādēs | 7. prohibent |
| 3. servīte   | 8. finīs     |
| 4. sciunt    | 9. venī      |
| 5. capimus   | 10. venīmus  |

EXERCISE 72. Following the model fourth conjugation verbs, conjugate **veniō**, **sentiō** and **dormiō** in the present active indicative, singular and plural, and give the Infinitive form.

## 54. The Interrogative Pronoun

So far, you have learned personal pronouns (§43) and demonstrative pronouns (§44). The **interrogative pronoun** asks the question “who?” or “what?”. It is more common in the singular, where the masculine and feminine forms are the same. In the plural the masculine and feminine forms are distinct.

SINGULAR		M. & F.		NEUTER
<i>Nominative</i>	quis	who?	quid	what?
<i>Genitive</i>	cūius	of whom?, whose?	cūius	of what?
<i>Dative</i>	cui	to/for whom?	cui	to/for what?
<i>Accusative</i>	quem	whom?	quid	what?
<i>Ablative</i>	quō	by/with ... whom?	quō	by/with ... what?

PLURAL	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
<i>Nominative</i>	quī	quae	quae
<i>Genitive</i>	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dative</i>	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Accusative</i>	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Ablative</i>	quibus, quīs	quibus, quīs	quibus, quīs

EXERCISE 73. Translate the underlined word(s) in each sentence with the correct Latin form. Use the singular form unless plural is indicated.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. <u>Whose</u> book is this?            | 4. <u>With what</u> will you write?            |
| 2. <u>What</u> are you doing?            | 5. <u>Who</u> let the dogs out?                |
| 3. <u>To whom</u> (pl.) are you talking? | 6. <u>Whom</u> (pl.) of the men do you choose? |

## 55. The Reflexive Pronoun

The **reflexive pronoun** is used to refer back to the subject of the sentence (or clause) in which it occurs: “I see **myself**,” “you persuade **yourself**.” Because it refers back to the subject, this pronoun does not occur in the nominative case.

In Latin, the reflexive pronouns for the first and second persons are the same as the personal pronouns (§43). The third person reflexive pronoun is different and uses the same forms for the singular and plural.

### Reflexive Pronoun

SINGULAR	3RD PERSON	
<i>Genitive</i>	suī	of himself, herself, itself
<i>Dative</i>	sibi	to/for himself, herself, itself
<i>Accusative</i>	sē, sēsē	himself, herself, itself
<i>Ablative</i>	sē, sēsē	by/with ... himself, herself, itself
PLURAL		
<i>Genitive</i>	suī	of themselves
<i>Dative</i>	sibi	to/for themselves
<i>Accusative</i>	sē, sēsē	themselves
<i>Ablative</i>	sē, sēsē	by/with ... themselves

Note:

- **sēsē** is sometimes used for emphasis, with no difference in meaning from **sē**.

Examples:

<b>Mē</b> laudō.	I praise <b>myself</b> .
<b>Tibi</b> persuādēs.	You persuade <b>yourself</b> .
Ille <b>sē</b> videt.	That man sees <b>himself</b> .
Illa <b>sē</b> videt.	That woman sees <b>herself</b> .
Ille <b>eum</b> videt.	That man sees <b>him</b> (another person).

## 56. Possessive Adjectives and Possession Using Eius

- **possessive adjectives**

Since Chapter 5 you have been seeing “possessive” adjectives for the first and second persons: **meus, -a, -um** (“my”); **tuus, -a, -um** (“your” sg.); **noster, nostra, nostrum** (“our”); **vester, vestra, vestrum** (“your” pl.). These adjectives may refer back to the subject or not.

Vidēmus casam <b>nostram</b> .	We see <b>our (own)</b> house. (reflexive)
Videt casam <b>nostram</b> .	He sees <b>our</b> house. (not reflexive)

In Latin, the possessive adjective for the third person is always reflexive:

<b>suus, -a, -um</b>	his (her, its, their) own
Puer videt casam <b>suam</b> .	The boy sees <b>his own</b> house.

Remember that since these words are adjectives, they must agree with the noun they modify in case, number and gender.

- **possession using eius**

To indicate possession for the third person when it is *not* reflexive, Latin uses the genitive of the pronoun **is, ea, id** (§44).

Vidēmus casam **eius**. We see **his** house.  
(literally “the house **of him**”)  
Capiō arma **eōrum**. I am taking **their** weapons.  
 (“the weapons **of them**”)

Be careful to distinguish between this and the use of **suus, -a, -um**. Compare the following examples:

Arma **sua** videt. He sees **his own** weapons.  
Arma **eius** videt. He sees **his** (someone else’s) weapons.

EXERCISE 74. Translate into Latin.

- |                                |                               |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. They see our friends.       | 4. He was carrying her books. |
| 2. They see their own friends. | 5. He carries his own books.  |
| 3. We teach ourselves.         | 6. He will carry their books. |

## 57. Ablative of Specification (= Ablative of Respect)

The ablative *without a preposition* is used to show **in what respect** something **is** or **is done**:

**Corpore** senex, nōn **animō** est. He is an old man **in body**, but not **at heart**.  
Dux **nōmine** erat. He was commander **in name**.

This use of the ablative is often listed with the adjectives **dignus** and **indignus**:

Hī **laude dignī** sunt. They are **worthy of praise**.  
Haec **indigna homine liberō** sunt. These things are **unworthy of a free man**.

EXERCISE 75. List all the uses of the ablative case you have had so far and indicate which of these uses require a preposition and which do not.

EXERCISE 76. Translate each of the following sentences.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Quid audīs?   | 6. Cīvitās bonīs lēgibus dīgna est.                         |
| 2. Paucae fēminārum in casā dormiunt.                    | 7. Eī nihil dē iūre lēgibusque sentiunt.                    |
| 3. Potestne mortālibus cōsilia<br>superōrum intellegere? | 8. Quī tibi persuadēbunt? Cuī crēdēs?                       |
| 4. Vir ad sē omnēs amīcōs vocābat.                       | 9. Fīne ūnīus annī cōsul discēdet.                          |
| 5. Multī senēs sapientēs sunt, sed<br>nōn omnēs.         | 10. Cōpiaē post difficile iter ad finem<br>Ītaliae veniunt. |

EXERCISE 77. Translate into Latin.

1. Who is worthy of his own father?
2. Brother, serve your king without delay!
3. They are coming into their own city between those two mountains
4. The river is deep and the abundance of water hinders us.
5. A wise woman knows herself.
6. Fortune helps the brave.
7. They often hear many pleasant things in the countryside.
8. To wage war in Gaul was not easy for these soldiers.

## PRACTICE SENTENCES

Identify the case and use of the underlined words, then translate.

1. Sē suaque omnia sine morā dēdunt. (Caesar - adapted; *a Belgian tribe reacts to the arrival of Caesar's army*)
2. Ō superī, mortālia facta vidētis? (Ovid; *a spurned lover complains to the gods*)
3. Ūnā cum gente tot annōs bella gerō. (Vergil; *the goddess, Juno, talks of her hatred for the Trojans*)
4. Nam quis hoc nōn intellegit? Quis hoc nōn perspicit? (Cicero; *prosecuting a former proconsul for flagrant abuses*)
5. Dulce enim etiam nōmen est pācis. (Cicero)
6. Dux fēmina factī. (Vergil; *describing Dido's role in the founding of Carthage*)

### VOCABULARY:

dēdō, -ere	to surrender
perspicīō, -ere	to see through; observe

READING 15 (*adapted*)

*Caesar (102 - 44 B.C.) wrote accounts of two of his great military campaigns. This selection comes from the beginning of his Gallic Wars and describes the various peoples and customs of Gaul.*

Gallia est omnis dīvisā in partēs trēs: ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquītānī, tertiam Gallī. hī omnēs linguā, īnstitūtīs, lēgibus inter sē differunt. Gallōs ab Aquītānīs Garumna flūmen, ā Belgīs Mātrona et Sēquana **dīvidit**. hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, sed Helvētīī reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt. saepe proeliīs cum Germānīs **contendunt**. nam aut suīs finibus eōs prohibent, aut in eōrum finibus bellum gerunt.

## VOCABULARY:

dīvisā (adj.)	divided	Mātrona	Marne (a river)
incolō, -ere	inhabit, live in	Sēquana	Seine (a river)
Belgae, -ārum <i>m.</i> (pl.)	Belgians	Garumna	Garonne (a river)
Aquītānī, -ōrum <i>m.</i> (pl.)	Aquitanians	dīvidō, -ere	to divide
Gallī, -ōrum <i>m.</i> (pl.)	Gauls	fortissimus, -a, -um	bravest
lingua, -ae <i>f.</i>	language	Helvētīī, -ōrum <i>m.</i> (pl.)	Helvetians
īnstitūtum, -ī <i>n.</i>	way of life	praecēdō, -ere	surpass, excel
differō, -ferre	to differ	contendō, -ere	to contend, fight



Caesar's Gaul

## Chapter 13 Vocabulary

### Nouns

<i>cōpia, cōpiae f.</i>	abundance, plenty, resources, wealth; (pl.) troops
<i>finis, finis m.</i>	end; border; (pl.) boundary, territory
<i>iter, itineris n.</i>	journey, path, route; a day's march
<i>mora, morae f.</i>	delay
<i>senex, senis m.</i>	old man

### Verbs

<i>audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus</i>	to hear, listen
<i>dormiō, dormīre, dormīvī</i>	to sleep
<i>finiō, finīre, finīvī, finītus</i>	to end, finish; die; limit
<i>impediō, impedīre, impedīvī, impeditus</i>	to hinder, prevent
<i>intelligō, intelligere, intellēxī, intellēctus</i>	to understand
<i>prohibeō, prohibēre, prohibuī, prohibitus</i>	to prohibit, keep from
<i>sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītus</i>	to know; to know how to (+ inf.)
<i>sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsus</i>	to feel, perceive
<i>serviō, servīre, servīvī or servīi (+ dat.)</i>	to serve
<i>veniō, venīre, vēnī</i>	to come

### Adjectives

<i>dignus, digna, dignum</i>	worthy; worth, fitting
<i>indignus, indigna, indignum</i>	unworthy; undeserved; shameful
<i>mortālis, mortāle</i>	mortal, transient; human
<i>paucī, paucae, pauca (pl.)</i>	few
<i>reliquus, reliqua, reliquum</i>	remaining, rest, rest of
<i>sapiēns, sapientis</i>	wise
<i>superus, supera, superum</i>	upper, higher, above
<i>superī, superōrum m. (pl.)</i>	gods
<i>suus, sua, suum</i>	his, her, its, their own

### Pronoun

<i>quis, quid</i>	who?, what?
<i>suī, sibi, sē</i>	himself, herself, itself, themselves





# CHAPTER 14

## Fourth Conjugation Imperfect and Future Active Indicative Accusative of Degree and Extent

### 58. Imperfect Active Indicative (Fourth Conjugation)

The **imperfect** of the fourth conjugation is formed like that of third **-iō** verbs (§47), with the tense sign **-ba-**:

4TH CONJUGATION		
<i>1st sg.</i>	audi <b>ē</b> bam	I was hearing, I used to hear, etc.
<i>2nd sg.</i>	audi <b>ē</b> bās	You were hearing
<i>3rd sg.</i>	audi <b>ē</b> bat	He / she was hearing
<i>1st pl.</i>	audi <b>ē</b> bāmus	We were hearing
<i>2nd pl.</i>	audi <b>ē</b> bātis	You (all) were hearing
<i>3rd pl.</i>	audi <b>ē</b> bant	They were hearing

### 59. Future Active Indicative (Fourth Conjugation)

The **future** of the fourth conjugation, uses the vowel **-ē-** (**-a-** in the first singular form) before the ending and looks just like the future of third **-iō** verbs (§48):

4TH CONJUGATION		
<i>1st sg.</i>	aud <b>iā</b> m	I shall hear
<i>2nd sg.</i>	aud <b>iē</b> s	You will hear
<i>3rd sg.</i>	aud <b>iē</b> t	He / she will hear
<i>1st pl.</i>	aud <b>iē</b> mus	We shall hear
<i>2nd pl.</i>	aud <b>iē</b> tis	You (all) will hear
<i>3rd pl.</i>	aud <b>iē</b> nt	They will hear

EXERCISE 78. Identify each of the following verbs by person, number, tense (present, imperfect or future) and mood (indicative or imperative), then translate into English.

- |             |               |
|-------------|---------------|
| 1. inveniet | 6. stāte      |
| 2. aberātis | 7. audī       |
| 3. monēte   | 8. finiebās   |
| 4. rapiunt  | 9. prohibēmus |
| 5. gerent   | 10. adveniam  |

EXERCISE 79. Write the indicated form of each verb, then translate into English.

*Example:* pōnō, pōnere (first pl. imperfect)      pōnēbāmus; we were putting

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. absum, abesse (third pl. imperfect)  | 6. audiō, audire (first sg. future)            |
| 2. dormiō, dormire (third sg. future)   | 7. finio, finire (second pl. imperfect)        |
| 3. stō, stare (second sg. present)      | 8. scribō, scribere (first sg. imperfect)      |
| 4. rapiō, rapere (third sg. present)    | 9. intellegō, intellegere (second pl. present) |
| 5. impediō, impedire (first pl. future) | 10. optō, optare (third sg. imperfect)         |

## 60. Accusative of Extent and Degree

Just as Latin expresses extent (length) of time by using the accusative without a preposition (§52), it also expresses extent of space and degree with the accusative *without a preposition*. These uses only occur with a few vocabulary words (indicating measures of space or degree - “miles,” “feet,” “very much,” “not at all,” etc.), and are not as common as the other uses of the accusative you have seen so far.

- **extent of space** - *with accusative case*

Arborēs octō **pedēs** altae erant.  
Flūmen **iter** abest.

The trees were eight **feet** high.  
The river is a **day's march** away.

- **degree** - *with accusative case*

Tē **tantum** amō.  
Agricola **multum** in agrō labōrat.

I love you **so much**.  
The farmer works **a lot** (“**much**”) in the field.

EXERCISE 80. In the following paragraph identify those phrases which indicate length of time, extent of space and degree. (Do not translate into Latin.)

On the second day after the king's death, the soldiers left the city at dawn and marched for many hours. They grieved greatly and cared nothing for the difficulty of the journey. Having covered fifty miles in a few days, they set up camp a few paces from a small river and stayed there one month. During the night of the next full moon, they returned to the city and found a new wall nine feet high around the town.

EXERCISE 81. Translate each of the following sentences.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Hostēs nostram pecūniam rapiunt.                          | 6. Sī (“if”) id aedificās, venient.                              |
| 2. Amīcī, meum novum carmen audīte!                          | 7. Sapiēns ad rēgnum advenit.                                    |
| 3. Magnae arborēs in mediā urbe erant.                       | 8. Aut inveniam viam aut faciam.                                 |
| 4. Paucōs nostrum ante hoc templum<br>inveniēbat.            | 9. Illō tempore lēgātī bellum<br>pācemque cūrābant.              |
| 5. Per tōtam noctem in agrīs puerī<br>puellaeque dormiēbant. | 10. Hōc annō itinera difficilia per finēs<br>Rōmānōrum faciēmus. |

EXERCISE 82. Translate into Latin.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Do you know how to speak the truth?                                 | 6. The king ruled for many years.   |
| 2. The troops obey their leader.                                       | 7. Were you listening to that rumor?  |
| 3. That sea was twenty feet deep in this place.                        | 8. We will all sleep under that tree.   |
| 4. He sees himself in the water.                                       | 9. The old man’s wife is worthy of honor.   |
| 5. In a few nights they will finish their long journey and make peace. | 10. He will send forth envoys into all parts of Gaul with letters about their crimes. |

### READING 16 (*adapted*)

*Livy tells the story of how, once Rome was founded, the new settlers tried to find women to be their wives.*

Iam urbs Rōmāna erat valida bellō, sed pēnūriā fēminārum hominis aetātem **magnitūdō** manēre nōn poterat. Tum ex cōnsiliō patrum Rōmulus lēgātōs circā vicinās gentēs mittēbat. Hī societātem cōnūbiumque novō populō petēbant. Dīcēbant, “Sī urbēs virtūs dīque iuvant, magnās opēs sibi magnumque nōmen facient.” Sed hominēs cum hominibus sanguinem et genus **mīscēre** dubitant, nam gentēs Ītaliae tantam in mediō cīvitatē sibi et posterīs suis **metuēbant**. Lēgātōs multīs cum contumēliis dīmittēbant.

#### VOCABULARY:

validus, -a, -um	strong, powerful	cōnūbium, -ī <i>n.</i>	marriage
pēnūria, -ae <i>f.</i>	lack, shortage	sī	if
hominis aetātem	one generation (lit. “the lifetime of a man”)	opēs (acc.)	wealth, resources
magnitūdō, -inis <i>f.</i>	greatness	sanguis, -inis <i>m.</i>	blood
patrēs, -um <i>m.</i>	the senate (“fathers”)	mīscēō, -ēre	to mix
vicīnus, -a, -um	neighboring, nearby	posterī, -ōrum	descendants
societās, -tātis <i>f.</i>	partnership	<i>m.</i> (pl.)	
		metuō, -ere	to fear
		contumēlia, -ae <i>f.</i>	insult

## PRACTICE SENTENCES

Identify the case and use of the underlined words, then translate.

1. Tē omnī honōre semper dīgnū iūdicāvī. (Cicero - adapted; *speaking to a rival in court*)
2. Dē meō frātre nihil egō tē accūsāvī. (Cicero - adapted; *writing to his wife*)
3. Semper honōs nōmenque tuum laudēsque manēbunt. (Vergil; *Aeneas thanks Dido for helping the Trojans*)
4. Monet amīcus meus tē. (Cicero)
5. Ō crūdēlis Alexī, nihil mea carmina cūrās? (Vergil; *the speaker complains that a young boy, Alexis, spurns him*)
6. Quid est aliud in illā prōvinciā genus hominum? Nūllum. (Cicero; *arguing that no one on Sicily likes the defendant*)

## VOCABULARY:

honōs, -ōris <i>m.</i>	another form of <i>honor</i> , <i>honōris m.</i>
accūsō, -āre, -āvī	to blame, find fault (with), accuse
crūdēlis, -e	cruel, unfeeling
prōvincia, -ae <i>f.</i>	province

## Chapter 14 Vocabulary

## Nouns

arbor, arboris <i>f.</i>	tree
genus, generis <i>n.</i>	birth, origin; kind; race
honor, honōris <i>m.</i>	honor; public office
hostis, hostis <i>m.</i> ( <i>usually in pl.</i> )	enemy
lēgātus, lēgātī <i>m.</i>	delegate, envoy, ambassador; legion commander
mare, maris <i>n.</i>	sea
nox, noctis <i>f.</i>	night
scelus, sceleris <i>n.</i>	crime, wicked deed, wickedness

## Verbs

absum, abesse, āfuī	to be absent, away, distant
adveniō, advenīre, advēnī	to arrive, come to; happen
cūrō, cūrāre, cūrāvī, cūrātus	to care for/about, pay attention to; cure
dīmīttō, dīmītere, dīmīsī, dīmīssus	to send away, send forth; dismiss; abandon
inveniō, invenīre, invēnī, inventus	to find; discover, invent
moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus	to warn, advise
rapiō, rapere, rapuī, raptus	to seize, snatch, carry off
stō, stāre, stetī	to stand

## Adjectives

longus, longa, longum  
medius, media, medium  
tantus, tanta, tantum

long  
middle (of)  
so much, so great

## Adverb

iam

now, already

## Preposition

circum / circā (+ acc.)

around

(21)



Snack Bar. Pompeii, 1st c. A.D.

# CHAPTER 15

## Third and Fourth Conjugations

### Perfect Active Indicative

### Pluperfect and Future Perfect Active Indicative (All conjugations)

### Perfect Active Infinitives (All conjugations)

So far you have learned the perfect tense of first and second conjugation verbs (§38). This chapter introduces the perfect tense of **third and fourth conjugation verbs**, and the rest of the perfect active verb system for all conjugations. It also introduces the **active infinitives** of the perfect system for the third and fourth conjugations.

## 61. Perfect Active Indicative

The **perfect** tense of third and fourth conjugation verbs, like that of verbs in the first and second conjugations (§38), is formed by adding personal endings to the stem of the third principal part. To find the stem, remove the **-i-** from the third principal part:

regō, regere, **rēx** (ī) - third conjugation

capiō, capere, **cēp** (ī) - third conjugation **-iō**

audiō, audire, **audīv** (ī) - fourth conjugation

Note that some verbs drop the **-v** from the stem:

petō, petere, **petīvī** or **petīī**

audiō, audire, **audīvī** or **audiī**

The personal endings are the same as those for the perfect of first and second conjugation verbs (§38).

Here are the **perfect active indicative** verb forms of the third and fourth conjugations:

	3RD CONJUGATION		4TH CONJUGATION		ENDINGS
<i>1st sg.</i>	<b>rēxī</b>	I ruled, I have ruled	<b>audīvī</b>	I heard, have heard	<b>-ī</b>
<i>2nd sg.</i>	<b>rēxistī</b>	You ruled	<b>audīvistī</b>	You heard	<b>-istī</b>
<i>3rd sg.</i>	<b>rēxit</b>	He, she, it ruled	<b>audīvit</b>	He, she, it heard	<b>-it</b>
<i>1st pl.</i>	<b>rēximus</b>	We ruled	<b>audīvimus</b>	We heard	<b>-imus</b>
<i>2nd pl.</i>	<b>rēxistis</b>	You (all) ruled	<b>audīvistis</b>	You (all) heard	<b>-istis</b>
<i>3rd pl.</i>	<b>rēxērunt / rēxēre</b>	They ruled	<b>audīvērunt / audīvēre</b>	They heard	<b>-ērunt / ēre</b>

There is no distinction between forms of the third conjugation and third conjugation **-iō** verbs in the perfect. Remember (§38) that the perfect tense in Latin can either correspond to the simple past tense in English (historical perfect: “I studied”) or stress the present result of a past action (present perfect: “I have studied”).

EXERCISE 83. Identify each of the following verbs by person, number and tense, then translate both as a historical perfect and a present perfect.

*Example:* **rēximus** first person, plural, perfect: “we ruled,” “we have ruled”

- |                       |                      |
|-----------------------|----------------------|
| 1. <b>posuit</b>      | 7. <b>scīvimus</b>   |
| 2. <b>cēpī</b>        | 8. <b>vēnit</b>      |
| 3. <b>dormīvērunt</b> | 9. <b>ēgistī</b>     |
| 4. <b>fūgimus</b>     | 10. <b>volvistis</b> |
| 5. <b>sēnsistis</b>   | 11. <b>rapuērunt</b> |
| 6. <b>petīi</b>       | 12. <b>vīcēre</b>    |

## 62. Pluperfect Active Indicative

The **pluperfect** tense is sometimes called the past perfect because it refers to an action completed in the past. The pluperfect is formed by adding **-era-** + the regular endings (**-m, -s, -t, -mus, -tis, -nt**) to the perfect stem. Many students remember these forms as a combination of the perfect stem + the imperfect of **sum** (§36):

	1ST CONJUGATION		ENDINGS
<i>1st sg.</i>	<b>amāveram</b>	I had loved	<b>-era m</b>
<i>2nd sg.</i>	<b>amāverās</b>	You had loved	<b>-erā s</b>
<i>3rd sg.</i>	<b>amāverat</b>	He, she, it had loved	<b>-era t</b>
<i>1st pl.</i>	<b>amāverāmus</b>	We had loved	<b>-erā mus</b>
<i>2nd pl.</i>	<b>amāverātis</b>	You (all) had loved	<b>-erā tis</b>
<i>3rd pl.</i>	<b>amāverant</b>	They had loved	<b>-era nt</b>



	2ND CONJ.	3RD CONJ.	4TH CONJ.	SUM, ESSE, FUĬ
<i>1st sg.</i>	docu <b>eram</b>	rēx <b>eram</b>	audī <b>veram</b>	fu <b>eram</b>
<i>2nd sg.</i>	docu <b>erās</b>	rēx <b>erās</b>	audī <b>verās</b>	fu <b>erās</b>
<i>3rd sg.</i>	docu <b>erat</b>	rēx <b>erat</b>	audī <b>verat</b>	fu <b>erat</b>
<i>1st pl.</i>	docu <b>erāmus</b>	rēx <b>erāmus</b>	audī <b>verāmus</b>	fu <b>erāmus</b>
<i>2nd pl.</i>	docu <b>erātis</b>	rēx <b>erātis</b>	audī <b>verātis</b>	fu <b>erātis</b>
<i>3rd pl.</i>	docu <b>erant</b>	rēx <b>erant</b>	audī <b>verant</b>	fu <b>erant</b>

EXERCISE 84. Change each perfect verb form to the pluperfect and translate the new form.

*Example:* rēximus      rēxeramus: “we had ruled”

- |               |                |
|---------------|----------------|
| 1. sēdistī    | 7. dūxit       |
| 2. pugnāvimus | 8. fēcistī     |
| 3. ēgī        | 9. volvistis   |
| 4. tenuit     | 10. prohibuēre |
| 5. vēnistis   | 11. petiī      |
| 6. mānsērunt  | 12. fuit       |

EXERCISE 85. Translate into Latin.

- |                            |                               |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. We slept.               | 10. It fell.                  |
| 2. We used to sleep.       | 11. It had fallen.            |
| 3. We had slept.           | 12. It was falling.           |
| 4. They kept speaking.     | 13. You (pl.) seized.         |
| 5. They spoke.             | 14. You (pl.) tried to seize. |
| 6. They had spoken.        | 15. You (pl.) had seized.     |
| 7. You (sg.) had put.      | 16. I stood.                  |
| 8. You (sg.) put. (past)   | 17. I was standing.           |
| 9. You (sg.) were putting. | 18. I had stood.              |

### 63. Future Perfect Active Indicative

The **future perfect tense** (which is rarely used in English) refers to an action completed in the future. It is formed by adding **-eri-** (**-er-** in the first sg.) + the present endings (**-o, -s, -t, -mus, -tis, -nt**) to the perfect stem. Except in the third plural form, these endings are identical to the future of **sum** (§36):

#### Future Perfect Active Indicative

	1ST CONJUGATION		ENDINGS
<i>1st sg.</i>	amā <b>verō</b>	I shall have loved	<b>-er ō</b>
<i>2nd sg.</i>	amā <b>veris</b>	You will have loved	<b>-eri s</b>
<i>3rd sg.</i>	amā <b>verit</b>	He, she, it will have loved	<b>-eri t</b>
<i>1st pl.</i>	amā <b>verimus</b>	We shall have loved	<b>-eri mus</b>
<i>2nd pl.</i>	amā <b>veritis</b>	You (all) will have loved	<b>-eri tis</b>
<i>3rd pl.</i>	amā <b>verint</b>	They will have loved	<b>-eri nt</b>

	2ND CONJ.	3RD CONJ.	4TH CONJ.	SUM, ESSE, FUĪ
<i>1st sg.</i>	docu <b>erō</b>	rē <b>xerō</b>	audi <b>verō</b>	fu <b>erō</b>
<i>2nd sg.</i>	docu <b>eris</b>	rē <b>xeris</b>	audi <b>veris</b>	fu <b>eris</b>
<i>3rd sg.</i>	docu <b>erit</b>	rē <b>xerit</b>	audi <b>verit</b>	fu <b>erit</b>
<i>1st pl.</i>	docu <b>erimus</b>	rē <b>xerimus</b>	audi <b>verimus</b>	fu <b>erimus</b>
<i>2nd pl.</i>	docu <b>eritis</b>	rē <b>xeritis</b>	audi <b>veritis</b>	fu <b>eritis</b>
<i>3rd pl.</i>	docu <b>erint</b>	rē <b>xerint</b>	audi <b>verint</b>	fu <b>erint</b>

EXERCISE 86. Change each perfect verb form to the future perfect and translate the new form.

*Example:* rēximus      rēxerimus: “we shall have ruled”

- |               |                |
|---------------|----------------|
| 1. mīsi       | 6. debuit      |
| 2. dīxerunt   | 7. finīvimus   |
| 3. creāvisti  | 8. dedī        |
| 4. incēpistis | 9. iactāvērunt |
| 5. fēcēre     | 10. vīdisti    |

EXERCISE 87. Translate into Latin.

- |                          |                                |
|--------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. I will arrive.        | 6. You (sg.) will have warned. |
| 2. I will have arrived.  | 7. She discovered.             |
| 3. They will try.        | 8. She will have discovered.   |
| 4. They will have tried. | 9. You (pl.) will put          |
| 5. You (sg.) will warn.  | 10. You (pl.) will have put    |

EXERCISE 88. Identify each of the following verbs by person, number and tense, then translate. Can you write the principal parts of these verbs from memory?

*Example:* āfueram      first singular pluperfect of absum: “I had been away”

- |              |               |
|--------------|---------------|
| 1. eram      | 7. potuerint  |
| 2. fuisti    | 8. ēgerāmus   |
| 3. fuerō     | 9. ēgeris     |
| 4. poterant  | 10. dederant  |
| 5. poterunt  | 11. gessistis |
| 6. potuērunt | 12. mōvērunt  |

## 64. Perfect Active Infinitive

The **perfect active infinitive** of the third and fourth conjugations is formed by adding **-isse** to the perfect stem. This is the same formation you learned for the first and second conjugations (§39):

3RD CONJUGATION		4TH CONJUGATION	
rē <b>xisse</b>	to have ruled	audi <b>visse</b>	to have heard

EXERCISE 89. Translate each of the following sentences.

1. Hostēs corpus lēgātī volvērunt in humum.
2. Ea neque viderāmus neque audierāmus.
3. Primā lūce humō surrēxērunt et aurum petere incēpērunt.
4. Nōs in prōvinciā vestrā pedem pōnere prohibēbātis.
5. Graecī cīvēsque Rōmānī scelera multa viderint.
6. Hic multōs annōs fēlix potēnsque fuerat.
7. Monūerātisne iam eōs dē periculō?
8. Fortēs pugnāverant diū, sed ē vītā tandem cessērunt.
9. Magnō cum labōre tōtam vērītātem inveniēmus.
10. Senēs fessī et tristēs fuerant propter mortēs militum.

EXERCISE 90. Translate into Latin.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. They tried to conquer the city with fire.                         | 6. To have learned many things is good.                            |
| 2. We saw the heart of a brave man.                                  | 7. Our leaders began to wage war.                                  |
| 3. The work had made his wife tired.                                 | 8. He came, he saw, he conquered.                                  |
| 4. In a short time, many new citizens will have arrived in our city. | 9. His wife had put a golden lamp in the middle of the temple.     |
| 5. The soldiers attacked the enemy for seven nights.                 | 10. They will have stood on the mountain for a long time in peace. |

## PRACTICE SENTENCES

Identify the case and use of the underlined words, then translate.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Flūmen sub <u>undīs</u> scūta virōrum galēasque et fortia corpora volvit.   | (Vergil - adapted; <i>of the Trojans killed in the war</i> )               |
| 2. Egō litterās Graecās senex didicī.  | (Cicero - adapted)   |
| 3. Nīl sine magnō vīta labōre dedit <u>mortālibus</u> .  | (Horace; <i>quoting another poet</i> )                                     |
| 4. Nōn solum <u>cīvium</u> lacrimās vērum etiam patriae precēs repudiāvit!   | (Cicero; <i>of a civil enemy</i> )   |
| 5. Dē <u>sellā</u> surrēxit atque discessit.   | (Cicero - adapted; <i>of a magistrate</i> )                                |
| 6. Patrum nostrōrum <b>memoriā</b> per lēgātum Cineam Pyrrhus nōn virōrum modo sed etiam fēminārum animōs dōnīs temptāvit. | (Livy - adapted; <i>Cato speaks about a time when bribes were common</i> ) |

### VOCABULARY:

scūtum, -ī <i>n.</i>	shield	sella, -ae <i>f.</i>	seat, chair
galea, -ae <i>f.</i>	helmet	memoria, -ae <i>f.</i>	memory; time
nīl = nihil		Cineās, -ae <i>m.</i>	a Thessalian diplomat
vērūm = sed			
prex, precis <i>f.</i>	request, prayer	Pyrrhus, -ī <i>m.</i>	a king of Epirus and enemy of Rome
repudiō, -āre, -āvī	to refuse, reject		

## Chapter 15 Vocabulary

### Nouns

aurum, aurī <i>n.</i>	gold
cīvis, cīvis <i>m.</i> or <i>f.</i>	citizen
humus, humī <i>f.</i>	ground, earth
ignis, ignis <i>m.</i>	fire
labor, labōris <i>m.</i>	work, labor, effort; hardship
lītus, lītoris <i>n.</i>	shore, beach, coast
lūmen, lūminis <i>n.</i>	light, lamp, torch; eye
pectus, pectoris <i>n.</i>	breast, chest; heart
prōvincia, prōvinciae <i>f.</i>	province
unda, undae <i>f.</i>	wave, waters; sea

### Verbs

cēdō, cēdere, cessī	to go, withdraw; yield
pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus	to put, place
surgō, surgere, surrēxī, surrēctus	to get up, (a)rise
temptō, temptāre, temptāvī, temptātus	to try, attempt; test, prove
volvō, volvere, volvī, volūtus	to roll, turn/twist around

### Adjectives

aureus, aurea, aureum	golden
dūrus, dūra, dūrum	hard, harsh, rough
fessus, fessa, fessum	tired
tristis, triste	sad; gloomy

### Adverb

forte	by chance
-------	-----------

### Preposition

super (+ acc.)	over, above, on (top of)
----------------	--------------------------

### Conjunction

atque, ac	and
-----------	-----

# CHAPTER 16

Fourth Declension  
Fifth Declension  
Locative Case

This chapter introduces the last two declensions and a final case which is used only rarely.

## 65. Fourth Declension Nouns

The stem of nouns in the fourth declension ends in **-u**, which usually weakens to **-i** before the dative and ablative ending **-bus**. Masculine and feminine nouns share the same endings.

### Fourth Declension

SINGULAR	MASCULINE (& F.)	NEUTER	ENDINGS	
<i>Nominative</i>	vult <b>us</b>	gen <b>ū</b>	<b>-us</b>	<b>-ū</b>
<i>Genitive</i>	vult <b>ūs</b>	gen <b>ūs</b>	<b>-ūs</b>	<b>-ūs</b>
<i>Dative</i>	vult <b>uī</b>	gen <b>ū</b>	<b>-uī</b>	<b>-ū</b>
<i>Accusative</i>	vult <b>um</b>	gen <b>ū</b>	<b>-um</b>	<b>-ū</b>
<i>Ablative</i>	vult <b>ū</b>	gen <b>ū</b>	<b>-ū</b>	<b>-ū</b>
PLURAL				
<i>Nominative</i>	vult <b>ūs</b>	gen <b>ua</b>	<b>-ūs</b>	<b>-ua</b>
<i>Genitive</i>	vult <b>uum</b>	gen <b>uum</b>	<b>-uum</b>	<b>-uum</b>
<i>Dative</i>	vult <b>ibus</b>	gen <b>ibus</b>	<b>-ibus</b>	<b>-ibus</b>
<i>Accusative</i>	vult <b>ūs</b>	gen <b>ua</b>	<b>-ūs</b>	<b>-ua</b>
<i>Ablative</i>	vult <b>ibus</b>	gen <b>ibus</b>	<b>-ibus</b>	<b>-ibus</b>

Note the following:

- Most nouns in the fourth declension are masculine. The most common feminine and neuter nouns in this declension are:

#### FEMININE

domus, -ūs    house, home  
manus, -ūs    hand; band (of men)

#### NEUTER

cornū, -ūs    wing (of an army); horn  
genū, -ūs    knee

- **Domus** is a fourth declension noun, but also uses some forms from the second declension:

Acc. sg.	<b>domum</b>	(to a) home
Abl. sg.	<b>domō</b>	from home
Acc. pl.	<b>domōs</b>	to (more than one) homes
Locative sg.	<b>domī</b>	at home (see §67 below)

EXERCISE 91. Identify each of the following nouns by case, number and gender. If the ending is ambiguous, include all possibilities.

- |              |            |
|--------------|------------|
| 1. impetūs   | 6. domus   |
| 2. flūctibus | 7. genū    |
| 3. cornua    | 8. metū    |
| 4. humum     | 9. vultuum |
| 5. manūī     | 10. cāsūm  |

EXERCISE 92. Following the fourth declension patterns above, decline **cāsus** and **cornū** in all cases, singular and plural. Be sure to check the genitive singular forms in the Chapter Vocabulary to learn what stem to use for each noun.

EXERCISE 93. Translate the underlined words into Latin using vocabulary in this chapter.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Some of the <u>accidents</u> were terrible.   | 4. He is building the house <u>by hand</u> .        |
| 2. They are expecting the army's <u>attack</u> . | 5. She liked his <u>face</u> . (use <b>vultus</b> ) |
| 3. The <u>destruction</u> of the city was quick. | 6. We are members of the <u>Roman senate</u> .      |

## 66. Fifth Declension Nouns

The stem of nouns in the fifth declension ends in **-ē**.

### Fifth Declension

SINGULAR			ENDINGS
<i>Nominative</i>	<b>diēs</b>	<b>rēs</b>	<b>-ēs</b>
<i>Genitive</i>	<b>diēī</b>	<b>reī</b>	<b>-ēī, -eī</b>
<i>Dative</i>	<b>diēī</b>	<b>reī</b>	<b>-ēī, -eī</b>
<i>Accusative</i>	<b>diem</b>	<b>rem</b>	<b>-em</b>
<i>Ablative</i>	<b>diē</b>	<b>rē</b>	<b>-ē</b>
PLURAL			
<i>Nominative</i>	<b>diēs</b>	<b>rēs</b>	<b>-ēs</b>
<i>Genitive</i>	<b>diērum</b>	<b>rērum</b>	<b>-ērum</b>
<i>Dative</i>	<b>diēbus</b>	<b>rēbus</b>	<b>-ēbus</b>
<i>Accusative</i>	<b>diēs</b>	<b>rēs</b>	<b>-ēs</b>
<i>Ablative</i>	<b>diēbus</b>	<b>rēbus</b>	<b>-ēbus</b>

- The genitive and dative singular endings have **-eī** (instead of **-ēī**) after a consonant.
- Except for **diēs** and **rēs**, most fifth declension nouns don't appear in the plural.

EXERCISE 94. Identify each of the following nouns by case, number and gender. If the ending is ambiguous, include all possibilities.

- |           |          |
|-----------|----------|
| 1. diērum | 4. fidē  |
| 2. faciēs | 5. rēbus |
| 3. speī   | 6. spem  |

EXERCISE 95. Following the fifth declension patterns above, decline **spēs** and **faciēs** in all cases, singular and plural. Be sure to check the genitive singular forms in the Chapter Vocabulary to learn what stem to use for each noun.

EXERCISE 96. Translate the underlined words into Latin using vocabulary in this chapter where possible.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. We will leave on the third <u>day</u> .   | 5. <u>For seven days</u> they sailed in the ship. |
| 2. She thought <u>about his appearance</u> . | 6. You fight us <u>without hope</u> of victory.   |
| 3. His <u>eyes</u> were green.               |   |
| 4. Do you love the <u>state</u> ?            |   |

## 67. Locative

In Chapter 4 you learned that **place where** is regularly expressed by a preposition + the ablative case (§23). With the names of towns, small islands and a few other words the **locative** case is used instead. The locative endings are the same as the genitive singular in the first and second declension, and elsewhere usually the same as the ablative:

	1ST DECL.	2ND DECL.	3RD DECL.	4TH DECL.	5TH DECL.
<i>Singular</i>	<b>-ae</b>	<b>-ī</b>	<b>-ī or -e</b>	[domī]	<b>-ē</b>
<i>Plural</i>	<b>-īs</b>	<b>-īs</b>	<b>-ibus</b>		

Here are some common examples:

<b>Rōmae</b>	at Rome, in Rome	<b>Rhodi</b>	at Rhodes, on Rhodes
<b>Corinthī</b>	at Corinth, in Corinth	<b>Athēnīs</b>	at Athens, in Athens
<b>domī</b>	at home	<b>bellī</b>	in war
<b>humī</b>	on the ground	<b>rūrī</b>	in the country

Note also that when these same place names and other words are used to express **place to which** and **place from which**, the preposition is usually omitted:

<b>Rōmam</b>	to Rome	<b>Rōmā</b>	from Rome
( <b>ad Rōmam</b> = to the vicinity of Rome)			
<b>Athēnās</b>	to Athens	<b>Athēnīs</b>	from Athens
<b>domum</b>	(to) home	<b>domō</b>	from home

EXERCISE 97. Translate each of the following sentences.

1. Militēs Rōmae trēs diēs mănēbunt.
2. Domūs Corinthī duōs diēs ārdēbant.
3. Cīvēs rūre ac urbibus vēnerant.
4. Cāsus reī pūblicae hominēs omnēs temptāvit.
5. Rhodī multōs diēs mănēmus, inde domum veniēmus.
6. Flūctūs trēs pedēs altī erant.
7. Humī paucās hōrās dormiēbāmus.
8. Metū rūre fugitis.
9. Senex lūmen in dextrā manū portāvit tōtum iter.
10. Rōmam aliī festīnāvērunt, sed veniēbam ad templum.

EXERCISE 98. Translate into Latin. \*Use dative of possession for #6.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. He was resting (use <b>ponō</b> ) his hands on his knees. | 6. He had the face of an old man.  |
| 2. Will our leaders abandon the state?                       | 7. I stayed in the country for seven days.                               |
| 3. You (pl.) will have walked eight miles.                   | 8. They had warned us about him.   |
| 4. That man had been a leader in the senate for many years.  | 9. The soldiers on the right wing were strong, but their fear was great. |
| 5. In five days he walked to Athens and then sailed home.    | 10. We will conquer the enemy with a small band of men.                  |

### READING 17 (*adapted*)

*Livy tells about a miracle involving a boy named Servius Tullius, who was being brought up in the royal house of king Tarquinius and his wife, Tanaquil. Servius may originally have had the status of a slave (although Livy rejects this idea), but he grew up to become the sixth king of Rome and was ultimately assassinated by his son-in-law and successor, Tarquinius "the Proud."*

Eō tempore in rēgiā prōdigium vīsū ēventūque mīrābile fuit. Puer — eī Servius Tullius fuit nōmen — dormiēbat et caput ārdēbat multōrum in cōspectū. Multō **clāmōre** inde ad tantae reī **mīrāculum** rēgēs advēnērunt, et ūnus familiārium aquam portābat, sed rēgīna eum prohibuit. Mox cum **somnō** et **flamma** abiit. Tum Tanaquil in **sēcrētum** virum **abdūxit** et, “vidēsne tū puerum hunc?” inquit, “eum tam humilī cultū **ēducāmus**. Hic lūmen quondam rēbus nostrīs **dubiīs** erit praesidiumque rēgiae adflictae.” Proinde māteriam ingentis **pūblicē** **privātīm**que decoris omnī **indulgentiā** nūtriēbant.



## VOCABULARY:

rēgia, -ae <i>f.</i>	palace	humilis, -e	humble, poor
prōdigium, -ī <i>n.</i>	omen, miraculous sign	cultus, -ūs <i>m.</i>	treatment, style
vīsus, -ūs <i>m.</i>	sight; phenomenon	ēducō, -āre	to raise, rear
ēventus, -ūs <i>m.</i>	result; consequence	quondam	some day
mīrābilis, -e	extraordinary, wonderful	dubius, -a, -um	uncertain, dangerous
cōspectus, -ūs <i>m.</i>	sight	praesidium, -iī <i>n.</i>	protection, guard
clāmor, -ōris <i>m.</i>	shout, cry	adflctus, -a, -um	weakened, distressed
mīrāculum, -ī <i>n.</i>	miracle, amazing event	proinde (adv.)	accordingly
familiāris, -e	servant, attendant	māteria, -ae <i>f.</i>	cause (i.e. the boy will be the cause)
mox (adv.)	soon	pūblicē (adv.)	publicly
somnus, -ī <i>m.</i>	sleep	prīvātīm (adv.)	privately
flamma, -ae, <i>f.</i>	flame	decus, -oris <i>n.</i>	honor, distinction
sēcrētum, -ī <i>n.</i>	private quarters (of palace)	nūtriō, -īre	to rear, foster
abdūcō, -ere	to lead off / away	indulgentia, -ae <i>f.</i>	gentleness, indulgence
inquit	she said		

## READING 18 (adapted from Tacitus)

*Tacitus tells how Sejanus becomes a trusted advisor to the emperor, Tiberius Caesar, despite his rumored intrigues against the state.*

Ac forte illis diebus oblātum Caesarī periculum auxit **rūmōrēs** praeuitque illi magnam causam amicitiae fideique cum Sēiānō. cēnābant in villā, Spēluncā nōmine ... nātīvō in specū. eius ōs subito cecidit et saxa obruērunt ministrōs. tum metus in omnēs et **fuga** ē spēcū. Sēiānus genū vultūque et manibus super Caesarem **suspendit** ac opposuit sēsē saxīs atque habitū hōc eum mīlitēs invēnērunt.

## VOCABULARY:

oblātum (+ dat.)	inflicted on	spēcus, -ūs <i>m.</i>	grotto, hollow
augeō, -ēre, auxī	to increase	ōs, ōris <i>n.</i>	mouth
rūmor, -ōris <i>m.</i>	rumor	obruō, -ere, -uī	to bury, cover over
praebeō, -ēre, -uī	to provide, offer	minister, -trī <i>m.</i>	attendants
cēnō, -āre, -āvī	to dine, eat	fuga, -ae <i>f.</i>	flight
villa, -ae <i>f.</i>	= casa in rūri	suspendō, -ere	to hang
spēlunca, -ae <i>f.</i>	cave, grotto	oppōnō, -ere,	to put (acc.)
nātīvus, -a, -um	natural	opposuī	before (dat.)
		habitus, -ūs <i>m.</i>	condition

## PRACTICE SENTENCES

Identify the case and use of the underlined words, then translate.

1. Flēte meōs cāsūs. (Ovid)
2. [Ventī] **vastōs** volvunt ad litora flūctūs. (Vergil; *describing a storm at sea*)
3. Illō diē dux ad iūdicium omnem suam **familiam** cōgit. (Caesar - adapted; *full text in Reading Chapter 6*)
4. Īrārū tantōs volvis sub pectore flūctūs. (Vergil; *Jupiter, talking to Juno*)
5. Rūrī agere vītā cōstituit. (Livy - adapted; *of a retired general*)
6. Rēs est magna tacēre. (Martial)

### VOCABULARY:

flēō, -ēre	to weep; mourn for	cōgō, -ere	to gather together, collect
vastus, -a, -um	huge, vast		
famīlia, -ae f.	family	constituō, -ere	to decide
iūdicium, -ī n.	judgment, trial	agō, agere	to spend (life)

## Chapter 16 Vocabulary

### Nouns

<i>cāsus, cāsūs m.</i>	fall; misfortune, destruction; chance, accident
<i>cornū, cornūs n.</i>	horn; wing (of an army)
<i>diēs, diēi m. or f.</i>	day; fem. used when it is an appointed, or set day
<i>domus, domūs f.</i>	house(hold), home
<i>faciēs, faciēi f.</i>	face; appearance
<i>fidēs, fidei f.</i>	faith, trust
<i>flūctus, flūctūs m.</i>	wave; commotion
<i>genū, genūs n.</i>	knee
<i>impetus, impetūs m.</i>	attack; charge; impulse
<i>manus, manūs f.</i>	hand; band (of men)
<i>metus, metūs m.</i>	fear, dread; anxiety
<i>passus, passūs m.</i>	pace, footstep
<i>mille passūs; mīlia passuum (pl.)</i>	mile (lit. “1000 paces”); miles
<i>rēs, rei f.</i>	thing, matter, business; court case
<i>rēs pūblica, rei pūblīcae f.</i>	state, republic
<i>rūs, rūris n.</i>	the country(side)
<i>senātus, senātūs m.</i>	senate
<i>spēs, spei f.</i>	hope
<i>vultus, vultūs m.</i>	expression; face

### Verb

<i>ārdeō, ārdēre, ārsi</i>	to burn, be on fire, glow
----------------------------	---------------------------

### Adverbs

<i>igitur</i>	therefore
<i>inde</i>	from there; then, from that time forth
<i>tam</i>	so, to such a degree



Mosaics outside Merchants' Office Complex, Ostia, end 2nd c. A.D.

## READING CHAPTER III

Narrative Reading: Numa

Word Building

Dictionary Practice / Form Identification

### Narrative Reading III

(Adapted from Livy)

*After the death of Romulus, Numa, a Sabine leader, became king of Rome. He built the famous temple of Janus, established priesthoods and a series of religious rites, and became known for his piety and peaceful policies.*

[Numa] **pietāte** omnium pectora **imbuēbat**, ita fidēs ac iūs prō lēgum ac poenārum metū cīvitatē regēbant. Fideī sollemne instituit et multa alia **sacrificia** locaque sacrīs dēdicāvit. Haec “Argeōs” pontificēs vocant. omnium tamen māximum eius operum fuit tūtēla per omne rēgnī tempus haud mīnor pācis quam rēgnī. ita duo deinceps rēgēs, alius aliā viā, ille bellō, hic pāce, cīvitatē auxērunt. Rōmulus septem et trīgintā rēgnāvit annōs, Numa trēs et quadrāgintā. nōn sōlum valida sed etiam temperāta et bellī et pācis artibus erat cīvitas.

VOCABULARY:

pietās, -tātis <i>f.</i>	piety (etc.)	māximus, -a, -um	greatest
imbuō, -ere	to imbue, instill	fuit	Perfect of est
ac = et		tūtēla, -ae <i>f.</i>	protection
poēna, -ae <i>f.</i>	penalty	haud mīnor	no less
Fidēs, -ēī	Faith (as a goddess)	deinceps (adv.)	in order,
sollemne, -is <i>n.</i>	festival, ceremony		successively
sacra, -ōrum	sacrifices	alius aliā viā	“one in one way,
institūō, -ere,	to establish,		the other in
institūī	institute		another way”
sacrificium, -ī <i>n.</i>	sacrifice	augeō, augēre,	to enrich; increase
Argēī	shrines (source	auxī	
	unknown)	validus, -a, -um	strong, powerful
pontifex, -icis <i>m.</i>	high priest	temperātus,	well-ordered
		-a, -um	

## Word Building

### Families of Words

Reading Latin is easier and more fun if you can make good guesses at the meaning of words, rather than always looking everything up. One way to make a good guess is to focus on common roots (see Reading Chapter 2), identify the part of speech of the new word, and think of other words you have already learned. This takes practice, but will pay many rewards.

Guess the meaning of each word, and list at least one word you have already learned that is related to it:

*Example:* iūdex, iūdicis *m.* “judge”: iūs, iūris *n.* (justice);  
iūdicō, iūdicāre (to judge)

- |                                 |                            |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. adventus, adventūs <i>m.</i> | 3. servus, servī <i>m.</i> |
| 2. infēlix, infēlicis           | 4. spērō, spērāre          |

### Consonant Changes

Certain consonants in combination yield predictable changes. Understanding these patterns can make learning vocabulary (and principal parts) much easier and can help you see connections between words that may not initially seem related (e.g. cadō and cāsus):

- **b** before **s** or **t** becomes **p**  
\*scrib-sī > scrīpsī  
\*scrib-tus > scrīptus
- **g** or **h** before **t** becomes **c**  
\*āg-tus > āctus  
\*trah-tus > tractus
- **g** or **c** before **s** becomes **x**  
\*rēg-s > rēx  
\*duc-s > dux
- **d** or **t** before **d**, **t**, or **s** (**dt**, **tt**, **ds**, **ts**) often becomes **s**  
\*cad-tus > cāsus  
\*pat-tus > passus  
\*ced-sī > cessī  
\*mīlet-s > mīles

Explain the consonant changes in the bold form of the following dictionary entries:

*Example:* **vox**, vocis      The nominative form was \*vocs, but the **c** + **s** turned into **x**

- |                                       |  |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| 1. <b>ars</b> , artis                 | 5. videō, vidēre, vīdī, <b>vīsus</b>                         |
| 2. audeō, audēre, <b>ausus sum</b>    | 6. <b>fēlix</b> , fēlicis                                    |
| 3. dīcō, dīcere, <b>dīxī</b> , dictus | 7. ārdeō, ārdere, <b>ārsī</b> , ārsus                        |
| 4. lābor, lābī, <b>lāpusus</b>        | 8. intellegō, intellegere, <b>intellēxī</b> ,<br>intellēctus |

## Dictionary Practice / Form Identification

Identify the words below based on the dictionary entries given. Be sure to indicate the **entry from which each is taken**, and the **part of speech** and to *give all possibilities for ambiguous forms*.

For **nouns** and **adjectives**: give case, number, and gender

For **verbs**: give person, number, tense (present, imperfect, future, perfect) and mood (indicative or imperative) \*All forms so far are active.

- A. dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus: to lead
- B. duo, duae, duo: two
- C. dux, ducis *m.*: leader
- D. ductō, ductāre, ductāvī, ductātus: to cheat
- E. ductus, ductūs *m.*: drawing, form

	<i>Entry</i>	<i>Part of Speech</i>	<i>Form ID</i>
1. ductūs			
2. ducibus			
3. dūc			
4. ductāvistī			
5. duce			
6. duōs			
7. ductābit			
8. ductum			
9. dūcēmus			
10. duārum			
11. dūcunt			
12. dūcēbam			





Street. Pompeii, 1st c. A.D.



# CHAPTER 17

Present, Imperfect, and Future Passive Indicative (All conjugations)  
Present Passive Infinitive  
Sentence Pattern: Passive  
Ablative of Agent

So far you have learned all the indicative forms in the active voice for all four conjugations. This chapter will introduce the passive voice, with passive forms of the present, imperfect and future tenses, and a new sentence pattern in which they appear. It will also introduce a new use of the ablative case.

## 68. Passive Voice

A verb in the active voice indicates that the subject is doing the action. A verb in the **passive** voice indicates that the subject is being **acted upon**.

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
He is carrying.	He is being carried.
They eat.	They are being eaten.

EXERCISE 99. In the following passage, copy out all verbs you think are passive and see if you can generate a “rule” for forming the passive in English based on your examples.

As the English language began its formation from the earlier Germanic	1
languages, there were many changes. One was the loss of the passive	2
voice. Although it existed in the Germanic language, as the Indo-	3
European language branched off, the passive voice was not carried	4
over. Thus, the passive voice is nearly nonexistent in Old English. The	5
structure of the language was such that the passive form simply was not	6
used. Slowly, though, the language was changing, and the passive voice	7
was introduced. The first example that is most commonly cited in the	8
history of the English language is that of the verb “building”. In the	9
sentence “The house was building,” the speaker means “the house was	10
being built”, but without the passive form, this was the only structure	11
available. At first only certain verbs could be transformed into the	12
passive, and there was great resistance to its use at all. One scholar has	13

noted that “the usage is fully accepted only in the 16th century, not in literature but in informal and private papers ... but [otherwise] it does not come into the open till the end of the 18th century.” From that point on, use of the passive continued to develop, and today the passive voice is so accepted and frequently used that many people do not even notice it.

In Latin, the passive voice for the present, imperfect and future tenses is signalled by personal endings which are different from those you learned for the active voice (§5). These endings are added to the stem of the verb just as the active endings are. The personal endings for the passive indicative are the same for all conjugations:

	SINGULAR		PLURAL
1st person	<b>-r</b>	I am _____ ed	<b>-mur</b> We are _____ ed
2nd person	<b>-ris, -re</b>	You are _____ ed	<b>-minī</b> You, you all are _____ ed
3rd person	<b>-tur</b>	He, she, it is _____ ed	<b>-ntur</b> They are _____ ed

Note:

- The alternate **-re** ending for the second person singular appears mostly in poetry and will not be stressed in this book.

Sample translations of the present, imperfect, and future passives:

present:	amātur	he (she, it) is loved, he is being loved
imperfect:	amābātur	he was being loved, he kept being loved, he used to be loved
future:	amābitur	he will be loved

69. Present Passive Indicative

	1ST CONJ.	2ND CONJ.	3RD CONJ.	3RD CONJ. -iō	4TH CONJ.	ENDINGS
1st sg.	amor	doceor	regor	capior	audior	<b>-r</b>
2nd sg.	amāris	docēris	regeris	caperis	audīris	<b>-ris</b>
3rd sg.	amātur	docētur	regitur	capitur	audītur	<b>-tur</b>
1st pl.	amāmur	docēmur	regimur	capimur	audīmur	<b>-mur</b>
2nd pl.	amāminī	docēminī	regiminī	capiminī	audīminī	<b>-minī</b>
3rd pl.	amantur	docentur	reguntur	capiuntur	audiuntur	<b>-ntur</b>

EXERCISE 100. Following the model verbs above, conjugate **moneō** and **cernō** in the present passive indicative, singular and plural.

EXERCISE 101. Identify each of the following verbs by person, number, tense and voice, then give an English translation.

- |              |                  |
|--------------|------------------|
| 1. iūdicāmur | 8. dūcor         |
| 2. impediris | 9. tenētur       |
| 3. raperis   | 10. moventur     |
| 4. monēminī  | 11. volvimur     |
| 5. laudantur | 12. relinquuntur |
| 6. trahitur  | 13. iactātur     |
| 7. finiuntur | 14. invenior     |

## 70. Imperfect Passive Indicative

The **imperfect passive**, like the active, is formed with the tense sign **-bā-** between the verb stem and the personal endings in all four conjugations:

	1ST	2ND	3RD	3RD -iō	4TH
<i>1st sg.</i>	amābar	docēbar	regēbar	capiēbar	audiēbar
<i>2nd sg.</i>	amābāris	docēbāris	regēbāris	capiēbāris	audiēbāris
<i>3rd sg.</i>	amābātur	docēbātur	regēbātur	capiēbātur	audiēbātur
<i>1st pl.</i>	amābāmur	docēbāmur	regēbāmur	capiēbāmur	audiēbāmur
<i>2nd pl.</i>	amābāminī	docēbāminī	regēbāminī	capiēbāminī	audiēbāminī
<i>3rd pl.</i>	amābantur	docēbantur	regēbantur	capiēbantur	audiēbantur

EXERCISE 102. Following the model verbs above, conjugate **spectō**, **teneō** and **cernō** in the imperfect passive indicative, singular and plural.

## 71. Future Passive Indicative

The **future passive** of first and second conjugation verbs, like the future active, can be recognized by the tense sign **-bi-** between the verb stem and the personal endings. The **future passive** of third and fourth conjugation verbs, like the future active, uses the vowel **-e-** (**-a-** in the first singular form) before the ending:

	1ST	2ND	3RD	3RD -iō	4TH
<i>1st sg.</i>	amābor	docēbor	regar	capiar	audiār
<i>2nd sg.</i>	amāberis	docēberis	regēris	capiēris	audiēris
<i>3rd sg.</i>	amābitur	docēbitur	regētur	capiētur	audiētur
<i>1st pl.</i>	amābimur	docēbimur	regēmur	capiēmur	audiēmur
<i>2nd pl.</i>	amābiminī	docēbiminī	regēminī	capiēminī	audiēminī
<i>3rd pl.</i>	amābuntur	docēbuntur	regentur	capientur	audientur

Note in second person singular of the third conjugation, the distinction between present and future is only the length of the stem vowel. This is not an issue for 3rd -iō forms:

PRESENT (SHORT -e-)	FUTURE (LONG -ē-)
regeris	regēris
caperis	capiēris

EXERCISE 103. Following the model verbs above, conjugate **spectō**, **cernō** and **finiō** in the future passive indicative, singular and plural.

EXERCISE 104. Identify each of the following verbs by person, number, tense and voice, then give an English translation.

- |                  |                 |
|------------------|-----------------|
| 1. pōnēbāminī    | 8. pōnar        |
| 2. vidētur       | 9. monēberis    |
| 3. īnstituentur  | 10. temptābitur |
| 4. traheris      | 11. voluntur    |
| 5. cernēris      | 12. dūcimur     |
| 6. spectābantur  | 13. rapiēbar    |
| 7. cōstituēbātur | 14. iactāris    |

EXERCISE 105. Transform each of the following present passive forms into the passive imperfect or future, as indicated, and then translate the new form.

*Example:* vincitur (future)      vincētur - he will be conquered

- |                          |                           |
|--------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. spectāmur (imperfect) | 6. legor (future)         |
| 2. trahuntur (future)    | 7. mittor (imperfect)     |
| 3. videor (future)       | 8. vocātur (future)       |
| 4. invenīris (imperfect) | 9. sentiuntur (imperfect) |
| 5. finīminī (future)     | 10. volvimur (future)     |

EXERCISE 106. Translate the underlined words into Latin.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. <u>He kept being rolled</u> by the waves.    | 5. <u>We will be sent</u> on a quest soon.       |
| 2. <u>You (sg.) will be placed</u> on a throne. | 6. The cart <u>is being pulled</u> by the horse. |
| 3. Time <u>was lost</u> while we said goodbye.  | 7. <u>Were you (pl.) warned</u> repeatedly?      |
| 4. The girls <u>seem</u> nice enough.           | 8. The money <u>will be held</u> by the king.    |

## 72. Present Passive Infinitive

The **present passive infinitive** of the first, second and fourth conjugations is formed by changing the final -e of the active infinitive to an -ī:

1ST CONJ.	2ND CONJ.	4TH CONJ.
amārī to be loved	docērī to be taught	audīrī to be heard
laudārī to be praised	vidērī to be seen, seem	finīrī to be finished

The **present passive infinitive** of the third is formed by replacing the whole **-ere** of the active infinitive to an **-i**:

3RD CONJ.		3RD CONJ. -iō	
regī	to be ruled	capī	to be taken
pōnī	to be put	rapī	to be seized

EXERCISE 107. Transform each of the following active infinitive forms into the passive, and then translate the new form.

*Example:* spectāre      spectārī - to be watched

- |             |               |
|-------------|---------------|
| 1. invenīre | 5. habēre     |
| 2. vidēre   | 6. pōnere     |
| 3. vincere  | 7. aedificāre |
| 4. nāvigāre | 8. impedīre   |

### 73. Sentence Pattern: Passive

So far you have had five regular sentence patterns:

- |   |                            |                       |
|---|----------------------------|-----------------------|
| intransitive (§4)                             | <b>Agricola labōrat.</b>   | The farmer works.     |
| • subject                                     |                            |                       |
| • verb  |                            |                       |
| transitive (§4)                               | <b>Fēmina rosam habet.</b> | The woman has a rose. |
| • subject                                     |                            |                       |
| • verb  |                            |                       |
| • direct object - in the accusative           |                            |                       |
| special intransitive (§19)                    | <b>Dominō pārent.</b>      | They obey the master. |
| • subject                                     |                            |                       |
| • verb  |                            |                       |
| • object - in the Dative                      |                            |                       |
| linking (§29)                                 | <b>Vir est bonus.</b>      | The man is good.      |
| • subject                                     |                            |                       |
| • linking verb                                |                            |                       |
| • subject complement (= predicate nominative) |                            |                       |
| factive (§46)                                 | <b>Is mē laetam facit.</b> | He makes me happy.    |
| • subject                                     |                            |                       |
| • factitive verb                              |                            |                       |
| • direct object                               |                            |                       |
| • object complement (= predicate accusative)  |                            |                       |

The last major sentence pattern is the **passive**. This pattern has two elements:

**passive**

- subject
- passive verb

In this pattern, the direct object in the transitive pattern becomes the subject in the passive pattern, and the subject in the transitive pattern may be omitted altogether. This is handy when one doesn't want to name the person doing an action, as in the sentence "Mistakes were made."

transitive pattern:	<b>Fēmina rosam tenet.</b>	The woman holds a rose.
passive pattern:	<b>Rosa tenētur.</b>	A rose is (being) held.

EXERCISE 108. Transform each of the following transitive sentences into the passive, and then translate the new sentence. Omit the subject of the original sentence for now.

*Example:* Dux lēgēs scribit. Lēgēs scribuntur. - The laws are (being) written.

- |                          |                             |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. Vir amīcōs vocābat.   | 5. Senex lūmen portat.      |
| 2. Puellae aquam habent. | 6. Homō casam aedificābit.  |
| 3. Poēta vocem audit.    | 7. Hostēs pecūniam rapiunt. |
| 4. Nōs arborem vidēmus.  | 8. Ego tē amō.              |

## 74. Ablative of Agent

With a passive verb, the person (or animal) by whom something is done is expressed with the preposition **ā/ab** plus an **animate** object. This use is called the **ablative of agent**.

- **agent** — the person by whom something is done

Puer bonus <b>ā patre</b> laudātur.	The good boy is praised <b>by his father</b> .
Aqua <b>ab agricolā</b> portābatur.	The water was being carried <b>by the farmer</b> .

If the action is done by a **thing** rather than a person, Latin uses the same ablative *without a preposition* that you learned in Chapter 4 (§21):

- **means / instrument** — the thing by or with which something is done

Bellum <b>armīs</b> pugnātur.	The war is being fought <b>with weapons</b> .
-------------------------------	---

Remember that an **ablative of agent** can only occur **when the noun is animate**. It is possible to have a prepositional phrase with **ā/ab** in a passive sentence which does not indicate agent:

Fēminae <b>ab agrīs</b> mittuntur.	The women are being sent away from the fields.
------------------------------------	--

EXERCISE 109. Go back to Exercise 108 and add the ablative of agent to the sentences you transformed. Follow the example below.

*Example:* Lēgēs **ā duce** scribuntur. The laws are (being) written **by the leader**.

EXERCISE 110. Translate each of the following sentences.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Multitūdō nōn ratiōne dūcitur<br>sed impetū.      | 5. Arma in proelium ab exercitū<br>portābuntur. |
| 2. Urbs ā Rōmānīs cōstituēbātur.                     | 6. Ā quō ille liber scribēbātur?                |
| 3. Ā multitūdine hostium montēs<br>tenēbantur.       | 7. Nostrī ducēs bonī esse videntur.             |
| 4. Senex nec ā puerīs nec puellīs<br>audīrī poterat. | 8. Hic puer ā frātre meō laudābātur.            |
|  | 9. Ā militibus ad flūmen trahēris.              |
|  | 10. Hostēs ā Graecīs arte vincēbantur.          |

EXERCISE 111. Translate into Latin.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. During the day the boys are<br>helped by their father. | 6. We are being watched by many<br>soldiers and a few envoys. |
| 2. At night we will be helped by that<br>large lamp.      | 7. They are running away from<br>the camp.                    |
| 3. The large trees will be burned by<br>the fire.         | 8. You (pl.) were warned to be<br>good.                       |
| 4. Can the dangers be avoided by<br>those (men)?          | 9. A letter ought to be sent to our<br>troops.                |
| 5. The cruel sailors will be captured<br>by you (sg).     | 10. He seemed to be loved by<br>everyone.                     |

## READING 19 (*adapted*)

*Livy tells the story of how the Romans and Albans decided to settle their war through a battle fought by two sets of triplets, the Horatii and the Curiatii.*

Forte in duōbus tum exercitibus erant trigeminī frātrēs nec aetāte nec viribus disparēs, Horātiī et Curiātiī. hī frātrēs cōstituērunt prō suā quisque patriā pugnāre ferrō. ante proelium foedus icēbātur inter Rōmānōs et **Albānōs** hīs lēgibus: imperium erit **victōribus**. tum trigeminī arma capiunt. cōsēderant suis prō castrīs duo exercitūs et **spectāculum** spectāre incēpērunt.

(*continued*)

### VOCABULARY:

trigeminus, -a, -um	triplet	icō, -ere, icī, ictus	to make (a treaty)
virēs (pl.)	strength	Albānus, -a, um	Alban
dispār, disparis	unlike, unequal	victor, -ōris <i>m.</i>	victor
quisque (nom.)	each	cōsīdō, -ere,	to sit down
foedus, -eris <i>n.</i>	treaty	cōsēdī	
		spectāculum, -ī <i>n.</i>	spectacle

READING 19 (*continued*)

datur **signum** īnfestisque armīs, velut aciēs, trēs iuvenēs magnōrum exercituum animōs gerentēs concurrunt. duo Rōmānī super alium alius expīrantēs cadunt; trēs Albānī vulnerantur. **horror** ingēns Rōmānōs perstringit et spēs tōta āmittitur, nam ūnus Rōmānus contrā trēs Curiātiōs stābat. Forte is integer fuit. ... [*continuārī*]

## VOCABULARY:

signum, -ī <i>n.</i>	signal, sign	expīrantēs (nom. pl.)	dying
īnfestus, -a, -um	hostile, dangerous	vulnerō, -āre	to wound
velut	just like	horror, -ōris <i>m.</i>	horror, dread
iuvenis, -is <i>m.</i>	young man	perstringō, -ere	to paralyze, chill
gerentēs (nom. pl.)	“displaying”	integer, -gra, -grum	unhurt; whole

## PRACTICE SENTENCES

Identify the case and use of the underlined words, then translate.

1. Mittuntur etiam ad eās cīvitātēs lēgātī. (Caesar)
2. **Certum**que eī reī tempus cōstituītur. (Caesar; *enemies agree to a meeting*)
3. Laudātur ab hīs, culpātur ab illīs. (Horace; *of a man who goes to one extreme trying to avoid another*)
4. Ā filiīs in iūdicium vocābātur. (Cicero)
5. Quid ab hīs maleficiīs sceleris abesse vidētur? (Cicero - adapted; *defending a man charged with parricide, Cicero talks about the many crimes of the accusers*)
6. Erunt etiam altera bella atque iterum ad Trōiam magnus mittētur Achillēs. (Vergil; *giving a prophecy for Rome*)

## VOCABULARY:

certus, -a, -um	fixed, definite	iterum (adv.)	again, a second time
culpō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus	to blame	Achillēs (nom.)	Achilles, a Greek hero who fought at Troy
malefīcium, -iī <i>n.</i>	wrong, misdeed		



## Chapter 17 Vocabulary

### Nouns

aciēs, aciēī <i>f.</i>	battle line
castra, castrōrum <i>n.</i> (pl.)	camp
castra pōnere	to pitch camp
epistula, epistulae <i>f.</i>	letter
exercitus, exercitūs <i>m.</i>	army
ferrum, ferrī <i>n.</i>	iron; sword
iūdicium, iūdicīī <i>n.</i>	court; trial; judgment
multitūdō, multitudinis <i>f.</i>	multitude, great number, crowd
proelium, proeliī <i>n.</i>	battle

### Verbs

āmittō, āmittere, āmīsī, āmissus	to lose
cernō, cernere, crēvī, crētus	to see, perceive, decide
cōstituō, cōstituere, cōstituī, cōstitutus	to decide, appoint, establish
currō, currere, cucurrī	to run
concurrō, concurrere	to charge, rush together, clash
incendō, incendere, incendiī, incēsus	to set fire to, burn; inflame
īstituō, īstituere, īstituī, īstitutus	to establish, institute, build; educate
spectō, spectāre, spectāvī, spectātus	to watch, look at
trahō, trahere, trāxī, tractus	to draw, drag
videor, vidērī, vīsus sum	to seem; be seen
(often with dative of the person)	“it seems best to _____”

### Adjectives

alter, altera, alterum (gen. -īus)	the one, the other (of two); next, second
ferus, fera, ferum	wild, fierce; cruel; uncivilized
ferī, -ōrum <i>m.</i> (pl.)	wild animals

### Prepositions

ā/ab (+ <i>animate noun, in a passive sentence</i> )	by
contrā (+ acc.)	opposite; against; (adv.) in reply; face to face



Neptune on his Chariot and Sea Creatures. Mosaic from Ostia, 2nd c. A.D.

# CHAPTER 18

## Dependent Clauses (1) - Adverbial

Time

Cause

Condition

Place

Dative with Adjectives

So far you have been reading simple and compound sentences and dealing with conjunctions (§2) which connect either words or phrases with the same function or independent sentences (§14). This chapter introduces complex sentences and the conjunctions which connect a dependent clause to the main clause in these sentences. It also introduces a new use of the dative case.

## 75. Dependent Clauses

A **dependent** (= **subordinate**) **clause** is one which can not stand alone as a complete sentence. Compare the following:

DEPENDENT CLAUSE

COMPLETE SENTENCE

When we go to Rome, ...

We go to Rome.

If it is raining, ...

It is raining.

A sentence which has a dependent clause is called a complex sentence. In such sentences, the main (independent) clause carries the most important information, and the dependent clause adds extra information. The dependent clauses in this chapter are used like **adverbs** (§20) and add information that answers the questions When?, Why?, Where?, and usually modifies the verb in the main sentence.

The conjunctions you have seen so far are called **coordinating conjunctions** because they connect items on the same level in a sentence. New in this chapter are **subordinating conjunctions** which do NOT connect same, but instead connect dependent clauses to main clauses. This book will call these subordinating conjunctions “**clause markers**” because they help to mark the beginning of a dependent clause. Be careful, because although clause markers come first in English word order, they may not be the first word in a Latin clause.

The clause markers in this chapter are indeclinables and carry essential information about the category of information contained in the dependent clause. Memorize completely the following clause markers for clauses in this chapter:

ADVERBIAL CLAUSE MARKER	ENGLISH MEANING	CATEGORY
<b>antequam</b>	before	time
<b>cum</b>	when	time
<b>dum</b>	while, as long as	time
<b>postquam</b>	after	time
<b>quia</b>	because	cause
<b>quod</b>	because	cause
<b>sī</b>	if	condition
<b>ubi</b>	when	time
<b>ubi</b>	where	place

Note:

- **Cum** can appear as a preposition with an ablative (§30), so be careful to distinguish this use from that of **cum** as a clause marker.
- **Dum** (“while”) regularly appears with a present tense in Latin to show continued action in the past (cf. historical present §38). When translating into English, use the imperfect tense.

EXERCISE 112. In the following passage, circle each clause marker, and bracket the entire dependent clause. Be ready to explain how you decided where each dependent clause begins and ends.

Once upon a time after he had established his worship in Greece the god, Bacchus, was traveling with his companion, Silenus, in Phrygia. Shepherds in the area did not recognize Silenus when they found him drunk in their fields and so took him to King Midas. Since Midas had accepted the rites of Bacchus, however, he recognized the god’s friend and after he threw a big party he sent him back to Bacchus. Because he was grateful, Bacchus granted Midas one wish, and Midas said, “May everything I touch turn to gold.” Although Bacchus was sorry the monarch had not chosen better, he granted this wish. Now when Midas touched a leaf, it turned to gold! And if he picked up a stone, it turned to gold! While this gift was new, Midas rejoiced in his luck, but soon he came to regret his wish. For although he became very rich, he found he could not even eat or drink. When he picked up bread, it also turned to gold, and when he tried to drink fresh water, it hardened as soon as his lips touched the liquid. Finally he begged Bacchus for help and the god told him to go where he could wash away his “magic touch.”

## Word Order

In Latin, as in English, a dependent clause may come anywhere in the main sentence:

- **If you don't memorize the clause markers**, you will have trouble reading Latin.
- You may still have trouble **although you work hard**, but you will succeed in the end.
- Do it **because I said so!**

Notice in the examples above (and in those from Ex. 112) that once a dependent clause starts, the main clause does not interrupt it. Even if one dependent clause interrupts another in a sentence, the clause that interrupts must finish before the interrupted clause can continue:

[**If the weather** <when we leave on our trip> **is unpleasant**] we will be sorry.

This is also true in Latin. So, as you begin to read complex sentences, a good practice is to mark each dependent clause as you read the sentence from left to right. Then concentrate on what the **main** clause means, before you try to fit the adverbial dependent clause into your translation.

EXERCISE 113. Identify the **dependent** clauses in each of the following sentences and then translate the **main** clauses only.

1. Magnō cum gaudiō tibi hanc epistulam mittimus dum Rōmae sumus.
2. Cum Rōmam exercitus vēnit, omnēs fūgimus.
3. Sī potēns civitās vestra est omnēs laetī estis.
4. Propter bellum fēminae puellaeque dum virī pugnant patriam relinquēbant.
5. Postquam adventum hostium invēnerat copiās ex urbe hic dūxit.
6. Illī nōn crēdidī quod multa scelera fēcit.

EXERCISE 114. Now add the dependent clauses to your translations of the sentences in Ex. 113.

EXERCISE 115. Identify the **dependent** clauses in each of the following sentences.

1. We ran to the mountains when we heard the shouts of the crowd.
2. He fought with courage as long as he was not tired from his wounds.
3. While you give us gold we will accept your troops in our province.
4. Come where the god's great temples are.
5. Because his father loved him the son always tried to be good.
6. We will all be killed if the enemy enters the city.

EXERCISE 116. Translate each of the sentences from Ex. 115 into Latin.

## 76. Dative with Adjectives

The dative is often used with adjectives meaning *friendly*, *unfriendly*, *similar*, *dissimilar*, *faithful*, *suitable*, *fit*, *equal*, *near*, etc. This use corresponds to the English idiom in most cases.

Cōsulēs **nōbīs** sunt amīcī.

Locus aptus erat **castrīs**.

Rōmānī dissimilēs **Graecīs** erant.

The consuls are friendly **to us**.

The place was suitable **for a camp**.

The Romans were unlike **the Greeks**.

EXERCISE 117. Translate each of the following sentences.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Domum filium mīsit dum sacra parat.                                  | 6. Ingēns gaudium ducī fuit. (§37)                           |
| 2. Quod amīcī ferīs fuerāmus, amīcī nōbīs erant.                        | 7. Amīcus regīnae inimicus mihi erat.                        |
| 3. Postquam exercitus bellum multōs annōs gesserat, illās gentēs vīcit. | 8. Bonās lēgēs scribere senātūī difficile fuit.              |
| 4. Haec dum geruntur, nostrī ducēs nova cōsilia capiēbant.              | 9. Labōrābāsne rūrī ubi agrī ab hostibus capiēbantur?        |
| 5. Antequam sacra parāvī, servum domum mīsīmus.                         | 10. Sī fidēlis nōbīs nōn eris, amīcī tuī esse nōn poterīmus. |

EXERCISE 118. Translate into Latin.

- Husbands ought to be faithful to their wives.
- During the night many lives were lost.
- Is that mortal equal to you in prophetic skill?
- Because the boy was dear to his mother, she taught him many skills. (§8)
- If they are not friendly to you (pl.), should you be friendly to these nations?
- A good friend is like gold.
- Learning these things is easy for me.
- Before they came to the city, they had a lot of money.
- Our laws are equal to those of our fathers in court.
- After we ran for six miles, we were received by a crowd of friends.

## READING 20 (*adapted*)

*Livy continues the story of how the Romans and Albans decided to settle their war through a battle fought by two sets of triplets. Two of the Horatii have been killed, but Horatius remains to fight the three Curiatii.*

Ūnus ex Horātiīs integer fuit et contrā trēs Curiātiōs stetit. Quia **sēgregāre pugnam** eōrum optābat, cēpit **fugam**. Iam aliquantum **spatiū** ex eō locō ubi pugnāverant fūgerat, cum ūnus haud procul ab sēsē aberat. In eum magnō impetū rediit; et dum Albānus exercitus clāmat Curiātiīs, iam Horātius hostem ceciderat et **victor** secundam **pugnam** petēbat. Tunc clāmōre Rōmānī adiuvant militem suum. Dum

alter nec procul aberat, alterum Curiātium cōnficit; iamque duo mīlītēs mānsērunt, sed nec spē nec vīribus parēs. alter intactum ferrō corpus et duās **victoriās** habēbat, alter fessus vulnere, fessus cursū erat. Nec illud proelium fuit. Rōmānus ‘duōs’ dixit, ‘frātrum Manibus dedī; tertium causae bellī huius dabō.’ Postquam Horātius tertium cecīdit, Rōmānī eum accipiunt magnō cum gaudiō.

## VOCABULARY:

integer, -gra, -grum	unhurt; whole	caedō, -ere,	to kill
sēgregō, -āre	to separate, divide	cecīdī, caesus	
pugna, -ae <i>f.</i>	fight, attack	victor, -ōris <i>m.</i>	victor
fuga, fugae <i>f.</i>	flight	tunc (adv.)	then
aliquantus, -a, -um	considerable (amount)	adiuvō, -āre	to help, encourage
spatium, -iī <i>n.</i>	space, distance	viribus (abl.)	strength
haud (adv.)	by no means	intactus, -a, -um	unhurt, untouched
procul (adv.)	far, at a distance	victōria, -ae, <i>f.</i>	victory
rediit	to go back	cursus, cursūs, <i>m.</i>	running
(third sg. perfect)		Manēs,	Shades, spirits of
		-ium <i>m.</i> (pl.)	the dead

## PRACTICE SENTENCES

Identify the form and use of the underlined words, then translate.

1. Hominēs, dum docent, discunt. (Seneca)
2. Hoc dum [ea] nārrat, forte audīvī. (Terence; *of eavesdropping*)
3. Ille mīhī pār esse deō vidētur, ille, sī fās est, superāre deōs. (Catullus - adapted; *the poet envies the man sitting beside Lesbia, his own beloved*)
4. Nam sī āmittī vīta beāta potest, beāta esse nōn potest. (Cicero)
5. Nēmō enim patriam quia magna est amat, sed quia sua. (Seneca)

## VOCABULARY:

beātus, -a, -um	happy, blessed
fās ( <i>n.</i> indecl.)	right

PRACTICE SENTENCES (*cont.*)

6. Si vōbīs aequa et **honestā** postulātiō vidētur, (Cicero; *arguing against the*  
iūdicēs, egō contrā brevem postulātiōnēm *prosecution's claim in court*  
 adferō.
7. [Rōmulus] centum creat **senātōrēs**, sive quia is (Livy - adapted; *describing the*  
**numerus** satis erat, sive quia solī centum creārī *foundation of the Roman state*  
 patrēs possunt.

## VOCABULARY:

aequus, -a, -um	fair; equal	sive ... sive	whether ... or
honestus, -a, -um	honorable	satis	enough, sufficient
postulātiō, -iōnis <i>f.</i>	claim, demand	numerus, -ī <i>m.</i>	number
adferō	to bring forward	senātor, -ōris <i>m.</i>	senator
(first sg. pres. act.)	(esp. as an excuse)	patrēs (pl.)	heads of clans

## Chapter 18 Vocabulary

## Nouns

adventus, adventūs <i>m.</i>	arrival
clāmor, clāmōris <i>m.</i>	shout; cheer
fās <i>n.</i> (indeclinable)	right; divine law
gaudium, gaudī <i>or</i> gaudiī <i>n.</i>	joy, delight
vulnus, vulneris <i>n.</i>	wound

## Verbs

accipiō, accipere, accēpī, acceptus	receive
cōnficiō, cōnferere, cōnfēcī, cōnfectus	to finish, accomplish; kill

## Adjectives

amīcus, amīca, amīcum	friendly (to)
aptus, apta, aptum	fit, suitable (for)
cārus, cāra, cārum	dear (to)
fidēlis, fidēle	faithful, loyal (to)
inimīcus, inimīca, inimīcum	unfriendly, hostile (to)
pār, parī	equal (to)
similis, simile	similar (to), like

## Conjunctions

antequam	before
cum	when
dum	while, as long as
postquam	after; when
quia	because
quod	because; since
sī	if
ubi	when; where



# CHAPTER 19

The Pronoun: Part 4  
Relative Pronouns  
Dependent Clauses (2)  
Adjectival  
Noun

The last chapter introduced dependent clauses which were used like adverbs and marked by indeclinable words such as **cum**, **dum** and **ubi**. This chapter introduces dependent clauses which are used like adjectives or nouns and whose clause markers do decline. These clause markers are **relative pronouns**.

## 77. Relative Pronoun

The **relative pronouns** in English are: who, which, that; whom is the objective (accusative) case of who, and whose is the possessive. In Latin the relative pronoun is declined as follows:

SINGULAR	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
<i>Nominative</i>	quī	quae	quod
<i>Genitive</i>	cūius	cūius	cūius
<i>Dative</i>	cuī	cuī	cuī
<i>Accusative</i>	quem	quam	quod
<i>Ablative</i>	quō	quā	quō
PLURAL	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
<i>Nominative</i>	quī	quae	quae
<i>Genitive</i>	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dative</i>	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Accusative</i>	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Ablative</i>	quibus	quibus	quibus

Note:

- The plural forms are identical to those of the **interrogative pronoun** (§54) which you learned in Chapter 13. The singular forms are almost identical.

- When the ablative of these pronouns is used with **cum**, the preposition is written after the pronoun in one word: **quōcum**, **quācum**, **quibuscum**.

## 78. Relative Clause - Adjectival Use

Most relative clauses modify a noun in the main clause, playing the same role a simple adjective plays. Compare the following English examples:

*Big* monsters scare me.                      Monsters *which are big* scare me.

EXERCISE 119. Rewrite the following sentences replacing the first adjective with a relative clause.

1. Big monsters are often green.
2. The claws of green monsters are huge.
3. I like purple monsters better.
4. Once I gave my supper to a purple monster.

In English, the relative clause comes immediately after the noun it modifies — this noun is often called its *antecedent*. In Latin this is not necessarily true, but the **antecedent will always have the same gender and number as the relative pronoun**. Because the case of a word identifies its function in its own clause, and because a relative pronoun is in a different clause from its antecedent, the cases of the two words are likely to be different. Compare the following examples and identify the case and use of the relative pronoun in each example:

Virum **quī** currit vidēmus.

We see the man **who is running**.

Vir **cuius** librum puer amīsit  
irātus est.

The man **whose book the boy lost** is angry.  
The man **to whom I gave the book** praises

Vir **cui** librum dedī mē laudat.

me.

Virum **quem** monuērunt vidēmus.

We see the man **whom they advised**.

Virum **ā quō** laudāmur vidēmus.

We see the man **by whom we are praised**.

As with the dependent clauses you learned in the last chapter, once the relative clause starts, the main clause does not interrupt it. Even if one dependent clause interrupts another in a sentence, the interrupting clause must finish before the interrupted clause can continue:

We elected the man [**who saved the state** <which Romulus founded>] consul.

It remains a good practice, therefore, to bracket each dependent clause as you read the sentence from left to right. Then concentrate on what the **main** clause means, before you try to fit the relative clause into your translation.

EXERCISE 120. Bracket all the **dependent** clauses in the following passage, and then translate the core items of the **main** clause only.

Intereā eā legiōne, quam sēcum habēbat, mīlitibusque, quī ex prōvinciā convēnerant, ā lacū Lemannō, quī in flūmen Rhodānum influit, ad montem Iūram, quī finēs Sequanōrum ab Helvetiīs dīvidit, mīlia passuum XIX mūrum in altitūdinem pedum XVI fossamque perdūcit.

VOCABULARY:

intereā	meanwhile	influo, -ere	to flow into
legiō, -iōnis <i>f.</i>	legion	mūrum, -ī <i>n.</i>	wall
conveniō, -īre, -vēnī	to gather	fossa, -ae <i>f.</i>	ditch
lacus, -ūs <i>m.</i>	lake	perducō, -ere	to construct, extend

EXERCISE 121. Draw an arrow from the **dependent** clause at the right to the noun in the main clause that it modifies. Then translate the whole sentence.

- |                                  |                          |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. Epistulam virō dedī.          | [quī ad rēgem vēnit]     |
| 2. Epistulam virō dedī.          | [quam ad rēgem mīsistī]  |
| 3. Epistulam virō dedī.          | [quem ad rēgem mīsistī]  |
| 4. Nautae ā nāvibus discēdebant. | [quōs amāmus.]           |
| 5. Nautae ā nāvibus ambulābant.  | [quī eās aedificāverant] |
| 6. Nautae ā nāvibus discēdebant. | [quae frangēbantur]      |

EXERCISE 122. Translate the underlined words into Latin.

- The laws which that man wrote are good.
- We left the city in which many people were working.
- I know a man whose name is Caesar.
- The woman whom the boys saw was making dinner.
- The girl to whom I used to give roses was pretty.
- He sees the soldiers who are fighting.
- You who are my sister are beautiful.
- I who am your mother will always love you.

## 79. Relative Clause - Noun Use

Just as a regular adjective can be used without an accompanying noun (Ch. 5, §25), so too the antecedent of the relative clause may not always be expressed. In this situation, the relative clause itself functions as a noun in the main clause. Compare the examples below.

[AS A SUBJECT]

**Vir** est fortis. The **man** is strong.  
**Quī in agrō labōrat** fortis est. **Whoever / (He) who works in the field** is strong.

[AS A DIRECT OBJECT]

**Fortēs** laudāmus. We praise the brave (men).  
**Quōs Caesar amāvit** laudāmus. We praise **those whom Caesar loved**.

When the relative clause has no expressed antecedent, it is often called an **indefinite relative clause**. When you translate the clause into English, you will need to supply an antecedent (he who... / those who ...) or use the English indefinite form (whoever ...).

EXERCISE 123. Translate each of the following sentences.

1. Paucī Trōiānōrum suās nāvēs incendērunt.
2. Quī hoc scelus fēcit ab militibus capiētur.
3. Quī dolōre caret fēlix est nam nātūra mortālibus mala saepe facit.
4. Lēgātus cūius equus ab amīcō cūrēbātur Rōmam ambulāvit.
5. Ad ducem, cūius militēs in propinquō locō castra pōnēbant, cucurrērunt.
6. Quī semper vērītatem dīcit sapiēns est.
7. Quibus librōs dedistī quōs scrīpseram?
8. Cōsul cūi erant magnae aurēs nōn pulcher erat.
9. Ego quae tua māter sum tē semper amābō.
10. Caelum in quō ventī nūbēs agunt spectāmus.

EXERCISE 124. Translate into Latin.

1. I used to love the man who was speaking.
2. We praise the girls who found the gold.
3. The part of the city which is near the river was being attacked by the army.
4. The farmers by whom the house was being built were Greek.
5. Did you see the women to whom I gave the money?
6. The boy who did this will be found.
7. The sailors whose ship is being wrecked are brave.
8. The man with whom we used to sail did not like [use *amō*] the heat.
9. Her sister, whom we left in the country, had always been faithful to the state.
10. Whoever built these ships has great skill, but needs money.

READING 21 (*adapted*)

*Caesar describes a disaster at sea with his transport ships.*

Eādem nocte cum erat lūna plēna, is diēs, quī **maritimōs** aestūs maximōs in **ōceanō** efficere cōsuēvit, vēnit nostrisque id erat **incognitum**. ita ūnō tempore et longās nāvēs, quibus Caesar exercitum trānsportāverat quāsque in **āridum** subdūxerat, aestus complēbat, et eās <nāvēs>, quae ad **ancorās** erant dēligātae, tempestās adflictābat, neque ūllum nostris auxilium dabātur. multae nāvēs frangēbantur et reliquae, postquam fūnēs, **ancorās**, reliquaque armāmenta amiserant, nāvigāre nōn poterant. magna, id quod **necesse** erat, tōtius exercitūs perturbātiō fuit. neque enim nāvēs erant aliae, quibus portārī poterant.

## VOCABULARY:

īdem, eādem, idem	the same	erant dēligātae	“had been fastened”
maritimus, -a, -um	of the sea, marine		
maximus, -a, -um	greatest, very big	adflictō, -āre, -āvī	to knock about
ōceanus, -ī <i>m.</i>	ocean	fūnis, -is <i>m.</i>	rope
cōsuēscō, -ere, -ēvī (+ inf.)	to be accustomed (to), usually ____	armāmenta, -ōrum <i>n.</i> (pl.)	equipment
incognitus, -a, -um	unknown	necesse	necessary,
āridum, -ī <i>n.</i>	dry land		inevitable
subdūcō, -ere, -dūxī	to pull up, haul	perturbātiō,	disturbance,
compleō, -ēre, -ēvī	to fill	-iōnis <i>f.</i>	commotion
ancora, -ae <i>f.</i>	anchor		

## PRACTICE SENTENCES

Identify the case and use of the underlined words, then translate.

1. Dum haec in Venetīs geruntur, Q. Titūrius (Caesar)  
Sabīnus cum eīs copiīs, quās ā Caesare accēperat,  
in finēs Venellōrum pervēnit.
2. Erant itinera duo, quibus domō exīre poterant. (Caesar - adapted; *the*  
*Helvetii consider how to leave*  
*their territory*)
3. Nunc tē patria, quae **commūnis** est **parēns** (Cicero; *trying to convince*  
omnium nostrum, ōdit ac metuit. *Catiline to leave Rome*)
4. Condidit urbem Rōmulus quam ex nōmine suō (Eutropius)  
Rōmam vocāvit.
5. Nōn omnēs quī habent citharam sunt (Varro)  
citharoedī.
6. Quis est quī mē vocat? (Plautus)
7. Ante mare et terrās et quod tegit omnia caelum (Ovid; *describing the very*  
ūnus erat totō nātūrae vultus in orbe, quem *beginning of the universe*)  
dīxere “chaos”.
8. Frangitur ipsa suīs Rōma superba ipsīs. (Propertius)
9. Quī hoc dicunt videntur mihi errāre. (Seneca)

## VOCABULARY:

Venetī, -ōrum	Veneti (a tribe in Gaul)	commūnis, -e	common
Q. Titūrius	Quintus Titurius Sabinus	parēns, -entis <i>m.</i>	parent
Sabīnus	(a Roman general)	ōdī, -isse (has only perfect forms)	to hate
Venellī, -ōrum	Venelli (another tribe in Gaul)	condō, -ere, condidī, conditus	to found
perveniō, -īre, pervēnī	to come into, reach, arrive	cithara, -ae <i>f.</i>	cithara, lyre
exīre	to go forth (from)	citharoedus, -ī <i>m.</i>	lyre player
		tegō, -ere	cover
		orbis, orbis <i>m.</i>	circle; universe
		superbus, -a, -um	proud

## Chapter 19 Vocabulary

### Nouns

aestus, aestūs <i>m.</i>	heat; tide
auris, auris <i>f.</i>	ear
auxilium, auxiliū <i>n.</i>	aid, help; <i>in pl. often</i> auxiliary troops
Caesar, Caesaris <i>m.</i>	Caesar
equus, equī <i>m.</i>	horse
Graecia, Graeciae <i>f.</i>	Greece
memoria, memoriae <i>f.</i>	memory, recollection
nāvis, nāvis <i>f.</i>	ship
nūbēs, nūbis <i>f.</i>	cloud
Rōma, Rōmae <i>f.</i>	Rome
soror, sorōris <i>f.</i>	sister
Trōia, Trōiae <i>f.</i>	Troy

### Verbs

careō, carēre, caruī (+ abl.)	to be without, free from; need, miss
efficiō, efficere, effēcī, effectus	to bring about, produce
frangō, frangere, frēgī, frāctus	to break, wreck
vertō, vertere, vertī, versus	to turn; turn around, destroy

### Adjectives

Graecus, Graeca, Graecum	Greek
levis, leve	light, easy
propinquus, propinqua, propinquum	near (to), neighboring, related (to)
Trōiānus, Trōiāna, Trōiānum	Trojan

### Conjunction / Pronoun

quī, quae, quod	who, which, what
-----------------	------------------





# CHAPTER 20

Perfect, Pluperfect and Future Perfect Passive Indicative (All conjugations)  
Perfect Passive Infinitives (All conjugations)  
Paradigm of *vīs, vīs, f.*

So far you have learned the perfect active forms (Ch. 8 and 15), and the present, future and imperfect passive forms of all four conjugations (Ch. 17). This chapter introduces the perfect passive indicative system for all conjugations.

## 80. Perfect Passive Indicative

The **perfect passive** is formed by combining the fourth principal part with the present tense forms of **sum**.

<i>1st sg.</i>	<i>amātus</i> (-a, -um)	<i>sum</i>	I was loved / have been loved
<i>2nd sg.</i>	<i>amātus</i> (-a, -um)	<i>es</i>	You were loved / have been loved
<i>3rd sg.</i>	<i>amātus</i> (-a, -um)	<i>est</i>	He, she, it was loved / etc.
<i>1st pl.</i>	<i>amātī</i> (-ae, -a)	<i>sumus</i>	We were loved
<i>2nd pl.</i>	<i>amātī</i> (-ae, -a)	<i>estis</i>	You were loved
<i>3rd pl.</i>	<i>amātī</i> (-ae, -a)	<i>sunt</i>	They were loved

The fourth principal part is a participle (a verbal adjective) whose ending agrees with the subject in gender and number. Compare the following:

<i>Equus vīsus est.</i>	The horse was / has been seen.
<i>Haec cīvītās rēcta est.</i>	This state was / has been ruled.
<i>Hoc carmen audītum est.</i>	This song was / has been heard.
<i>Hominēs doctī sunt.</i>	The men were / have been taught.

Remember (§38) that the perfect tense in Latin can either correspond to the simple past tense in English (historical perfect: “I was seen”) or stress the present result of a past action (present perfect: “I have been seen”).

EXERCISE 125. Following the model verb above, conjugate **moneō** and **vincō** in the perfect passive indicative, singular and plural.

EXERCISE 126. Change each of the following perfect active forms into perfect passive, then translate.

*Example:*    *rēximus*            *rēctī sumus*; “we have been ruled” or “we were ruled”

- |                     |                       |
|---------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. <i>posuit</i>    | 7. <i>īstituimus</i>  |
| 2. <i>cēpī</i>      | 8. <i>trāxit</i>      |
| 3. <i>dīmīsimus</i> | 9. <i>ēgistī</i>      |
| 4. <i>frēgērunt</i> | 10. <i>volvistis</i>  |
| 5. <i>sēnsistis</i> | 11. <i>vertērunt</i>  |
| 6. <i>petīī</i>     | 12. <i>spectāvēre</i> |

### 81. Pluperfect Passive Indicative

The pluperfect passive is formed by combining the fourth principal part with the imperfect forms of **sum**.

<i>1st sg.</i>	<i>amātus (-a, -um)</i>	<i>eram</i>	I had been loved
<i>2nd sg.</i>	<i>amātus (-a, -um)</i>	<i>erās</i>	You had been loved
<i>3rd sg.</i>	<i>amātus (-a, -um)</i>	<i>erat</i>	He, she, it had been loved
<i>1st pl.</i>	<i>amātī (-ae, -a)</i>	<i>erāmus</i>	We had been loved
<i>2nd pl.</i>	<i>amātī (-ae, -a)</i>	<i>erātis</i>	You had been loved
<i>3rd pl.</i>	<i>amātī (-ae, -a)</i>	<i>erant</i>	They had been loved

EXERCISE 127. Following the model verb above, conjugate **habeō** and **vertō** in the pluperfect passive indicative, singular and plural.

EXERCISE 128. Translate into Latin.

- |                        |                               |
|------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. we were carrying    | 8. it had been placed         |
| 2. we were carried     | 9. they were being placed     |
| 3. he had carried      | 10. they have been placed     |
| 4. he had been carried | 11. you (s.) are saved        |
| 5. she was heard       | 12. you (s.) were saved       |
| 6. she had been heard  | 13. you (pl.) have been saved |
| 7. she had heard       | 14. you (pl.) had been saved  |

## 82. Future Perfect Passive Indicative

The future perfect passive is formed by combining the fourth principal part with the future forms of **sum**.

<i>1st sg.</i>	amātus (-a, -um)	erō	I shall have been loved
<i>2nd sg.</i>	amātus (-a, -um)	eris	You will have been loved
<i>3rd sg.</i>	amātus (-a, -um)	erit	He, she, it will have been loved
<i>1st pl.</i>	amātī (-ae, -a)	erimus	We will have been loved
<i>2nd pl.</i>	amātī (-ae, -a)	eritis	You will have been loved
<i>3rd pl.</i>	amātī (-ae, -a)	erunt	They will have been loved

EXERCISE 129. Following the model verb above, conjugate **condō** and **finiō** in the future perfect passive indicative, singular and plural.

EXERCISE 130. All the verbs in this exercise are passive. Identify each by person, number and tense, then translate.

*Example:* caesus erat      third singular pluperfect of caedō: “he had been killed”

- |                  |                    |
|------------------|--------------------|
| 1. incēsum est   | 6. tractī erant    |
| 2. audītī erimus | 7. raptus es       |
| 3. spectāta erat | 8. cōstitutum erat |
| 4. ācta sunt     | 9. monitae erunt   |
| 5. scrīpta erunt | 10. aperta erant   |

## 83. Perfect Passive Infinitive

The **perfect passive infinitive** is formed by combining the fourth principal part with the infinitive of **sum**:

### CONJUGATION

<i>First</i>	amātus (-a, -um) esse	to have been loved
<i>Second</i>	doctus (-a, -um) esse	to have been taught
<i>Third</i>	rēctus (-a, -um) esse	to have been ruled
<i>Fourth</i>	audītus (-a, -um) esse	to have been heard

EXERCISE 131. Change each of the following present passive infinitives into perfect passive infinitives, then translate.

*Example:* monēri      monitus esse; “to have been warned”

- |              |             |
|--------------|-------------|
| 1. pōnī      | 5. scīrī    |
| 2. aperīrī   | 6. clāmārī  |
| 3. vitārī    | 7. frangī   |
| 4. prohibērī | 8. invenīrī |

84. Paradigm of *vīs*, *vīs*, *f*.

The third declension word **vīs** (stem: **vī-**) has some unusual forms in the singular and in the plural is easily confused with the second declension noun **vir**. It is worth memorizing these forms now so they won't cause trouble later:

	<b>vīs, vīs</b> <i>f</i> power; pl. strength		<b>vir, virī</b> <i>m.</i> man	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nominative</i>	vīs	vīrēs	vir	virī
<i>Genitive</i>	[vīs - rarely seen]	vīrium	virī	virōrum
<i>Dative</i>	[vī - rarely seen]	vīribus	virō	virīs
<i>Accusative</i>	vīm	vīrēs	virum	virōs
<i>Ablative</i>	vī	vīribus	virō	virīs

EXERCISE 132. Translate each of the following sentences.

1. Arx victa vī ferrōque hostium est.
2. Autem dī etiam fatō rēctī sunt.
3. Fēminae cupiērunt pulchrae vidēri, sed puerī fortēs.
4. Rēs pūblica ā reliquīs cīvibus magnō cum dolōre relicta erat.
5. Ille locus erat in quō urbs Rōmāna condita est.
6. Auribus animisque id acceptum erat.
7. Et nautae et militēs caesī sunt.
8. Militēs quī in bellō pugnāverant ab omnibus cīvibus vīsī sunt.
9. Vīrēs magnae eīs quī labōrem nōn vītāverunt erant.
10. Virī in aperta perīcula quae nōn vitārī poterant missī sunt.

EXERCISE 133. Translate into Latin.

1. Those dangers had been avoided.
2. You (sg.) sailed to the coast of Troy.
3. The murder of the leader was desired by his brother.
4. The army was led through the forest by the brave leader.
5. The songs were sung by this poet with great skill.
6. The girl was watched from a distance.
7. His letters had been written at night.
8. The authority which the senate had was worthy of great praise. (see §57, ch. 13)
9. Were the envoys who lacked strength sent into the city during the night?
10. The destruction of the citadel had been desired by many.

READING 22 (*adapted*)

*Livy tells how the Romans, under the leadership of Scipio, capture the city of New Carthage, a settlement established by the Carthaginians in Spain. Mago is the Carthaginian commander.*

[Scipiō] partem copiārum ad tumulum mittit, partem ipse ad arcem dūcit. et tumulus prīmō impetū est captus, et Mago arcem temptāvit **dēfendere**, sed cum omnia hostium plēna vīdit, sē arcemque et praesidium dēdidit. quia dēdita arx est, caedēs totā urbe passim factae sunt et omnis pūbēs quī

obvius fuit cōficiēbātur: tum signum datum est et caedibus finis factus est et ad praedam **victōrēs** versī sunt, quae ingēns fuit. inde quī cīvēs Novae Carthāginis erant dīmīsit urbemque et sua omnia quae reliqua eīs bellum fēcerat restituit.

## VOCABULARY:

tumulus, -ī <i>m.</i>	hill	pūbēs, puberis	adult
ipse = nom. <i>m.</i> (sg.)	(he) himself	obvius, -a, -um	at hand, in the way
dēfendō, -ere	to defend	praeda, -ae <i>f.</i>	plunder
praesidium, -ī <i>n.</i>	garrison	victor, -ōris <i>m.</i>	victor
dēdō, -ere, -idī, -itus	to surrender	dīmittō, -ere, -mīsī	to let go, send away
passim	here and there	restituō, -ere	to restore, give back

## PRACTICE SENTENCES

Identify the case and use of the underlined words, then translate.

- Arma virumque canō, Trōiae quī p̄rimus ab ōrīs (Vergil; these are the opening lines of the *Aeneid*)  
 Ītaliā fātō profugus Lāvīnaque vēnit  
 lītora ... saevae memorem Iūnōnis ob īram.
- Gratiās agimus et ducibus vestrīs et exercitibus, (Livy; *the dictator of Tusculum speaks to the Roman senate*)  
 quod oculīs magis quam auribus credidērunt.
- Cīvis erat expulsus is quī rem pūblicā (Cicero; *speaking with irony about a man punished for doing the right thing*)  
 ex senātūs auctōritāte cum omnibus bonīs  
 dēfenderat, et expulsus nōn aliō aliquō, sed eō  
 ... **crīmine**; erat autem expulsus sine iūdicīō, vī,  
 lapidibus, ferrō.
- Simul cēnāre et in eō locō somnum capere (Cicero - adapted)  
 voluērunt.

## VOCABULARY:

profugus, -a, -um	exiled, fugitive	magis quam	more than
Lāvīnus, -a, -um	Lavinian, of Lavinium (the city Aeneas founded - see Reading Chapter 2)	expellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus	to expel; drive out
		aliquī, -quae, -quod	some, any
		crīmen, -inis <i>n.</i>	crime
memor, memoris	mindful, remembering	lapis, -idis <i>m.</i>	stone
		simul	at the same time
Iūnō, Iūnōnis <i>f.</i>	Juno (a goddess)	cēnō, -āre	to dine, eat
		volō, velle, voluī	to want

## Chapter 20 Vocabulary

### Nouns

<i>arx, arcis f.</i>	citadel; fortress (on a hill)
<i>auctōritās, auctōritātis f.</i>	authority
<i>caedēs, caedis f.</i>	slaughter, murder
<i>fātum, fātī n.</i>	fate, destiny
<i>ōra, ōrae f.</i>	coast; border
<i>signum, signī n.</i>	sign, token, signal; standard
<i>somnus, somnī m.</i>	sleep
<i>vīs, vīs f.</i>	power, force, violence;
<i>vīrēs, vīrium</i>	strength (pl.)

### Verbs

<i>aperiō, aperīre, aperuī, apertus</i>	to open, uncover
<i>caedō, caedere, cecidī, caesus</i>	to kill, cut; sacrifice (of animals)
<i>canō, canere, cecinī, cantus</i>	to sing
<i>condō, condere, condidī, conditus</i>	to found, build, establish
<i>cōservō, cōservāre, cōservāvī, cōservātus</i>	to save, preserve, keep
<i>cupiō, cupere, cupīvī or cupīī, cupītus</i>	to want, desire
<i>vītō, vītāre, vītāvī, vītātus</i>	to avoid

### Adjectives

<i>apertus, aperta, apertum</i>	open, uncovered, exposed
<i>saevus, saeva, saevum</i>	cruel, savage

### Adverbs

<i>autem</i>	however; moreover
<i>intereā</i>	meanwhile
<i>procul</i>	at a distance, from a distance

### Preposition

<i>ob (+ acc.)</i>	because of
--------------------	------------

# READING CHAPTER IV

Narrative Reading: Tullus and the Treachery of Mettius

Word Building

Dictionary Practice / Form Identification

## Narrative Reading IV

(Adapted from Livy)

*The Albans, after the battle of the Horatii and Curiatii, swear allegiance to the Romans. But their leader, Mettius, induces two Roman colonies, the Fidenates and the Veientes, to revolt, promising that he will help them. When the battle is engaged, however, Mettius helps neither the Romans nor the colonies, but withdraws to see which side will be victorious. When Tullus and the Romans win, they invite the Albans to a thanksgiving ceremony. Tullus offers quite different rewards to the Albans and their leader.*

Nec diū pāx **Albāna** mānsit. invidia vulgī, quod tribus militibus fortūna pūblica commissa erat, vānum ingenium **dictātōris** corrūpit, et quōniam rēcta cōsilia nōn bene **ēvēnerant**, prāvīs reconciliāre populārīum animōs coēpit. igitur ut prius in bellō pācem, sīc in pāce bellum petiit, et quia suae cīvitātī animī sunt sed nōn virēs, bellum parat et aliōs concitat populōs. Fīdēnātēs, **colōnia** Rōmāna, et Vēientēs pactō trānsitiōnis Albānōrum ad bellum atque arma **incitantur**.

(continued)

### VOCABULARY:

Albānus, -a, -um	Alban, of the Albans	ēveniō, -īre, -vēnī	to come out, turn out
invidia, -ae f.	discontent	prāvus, -a, -um	evil, improper
vulgus, -ī n.	people, the masses	reconciliō, -āre	to win back
committo, -ere, -misī, -misum	to entrust	populārēs, -ium m.	the popular party
vānus, -a, -um	weak, idle	coepit	“he began”
ingenium, -iī n.	nature, character	ut prius	“just as before”
dictātōr, -ōris m.	dictator	concitō, -āre	to stir up, rouse
corrumpō, -ere, -rūpī	corrupt	colōnia, -ae f.	colony
quōniam	since, seeing that	pactum, -ī n.	promise, agreement
rēctus, -a, -um	honest	trānsitiō, -ōnis f.	desertion
bene (adv.)	well	incitō, -āre	to incite, stir up

**Narrative Reading IV** (*continued*)

Cum Fīdēnae apertē descīerunt, Tullus Mettium exercitumque eius ab Albā accīvit et eōs contrā hostēs dūcit. Tullus adversus Vēientem hostem dērigit suōs, Albānōs contrā legiōnem Fīdēnātium conlocat. Albānō neque animus erat nec fidēs. nec manēre ergō nec trānsīre apertē ausus est, sed sēnsim ad montēs succēdit.

Post pugnam in quā Rōmānī vicērunt, centuriōnēs armātī Mettium circumsistunt et Tullus inquit: “Albānī, populum omnem Albānum Rōmam trādūcere in animō est, cīvitatē dare plēbī, prīmōrēs in patrēs legere, ūnam urbem, ūnam rem pūblicam facere.” sed Mettius duōs in currūs distentus inligātus est. tum in dīversum iter equī concitātī sunt et lacerum in utrōque currū corpus portāvērunt. avertēre omnēs ab tantā foeditātē spectāculī oculōs. prīmum ultimumque illud supplicium apud Rōmānōs exemplī parum memoris lēgum hūmānārum fuit.

## VOCABULARY:

Fīdēnae, -ārum <i>f.</i>	Fidenae (a town in Latium)	currus, -ūs <i>m.</i>	chariot, team of horses
apertē (adv.)	openly	distentus, -a, -um	stretched out
dēscīscō, -ere, -īī	to revolt	inligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus	to attach
acciō, -ere, accīvī	to summon	dīversus, -a, -um	opposite
adversus, -a, -um	facing, opposing	iter, iteris <i>n.</i>	direction
dērigō, -ere	to direct, turn	lacer, -era, -erum	torn
conlocō, -āre	to place, station	uterque (adj.)	each (of two); both
ergō (adv.)	therefore		
trānseō, -īre	to desert	āvertō, -ere, -tī	to avert, turn away
sēnsim (adv.)	gradually	foeditās, -tātis <i>f.</i>	horror, hideousness
succēdō, -ere	to retreat	spectāculum, -ī <i>n.</i>	sight
circumsistō, -ere	to surround	ultimus, -a, -um	last
centuriōnēs (pl.)	(Roman) captains	supplicium, -ī <i>n.</i>	punishment
inquit	“(he) said”	apud (+ acc.)	among
trādūcō, -ere	to transfer	exemplī parum	“of a type too little
plēbs, -is <i>f.</i>	common people	memoris	mindful of”
prīmōrēs, -um <i>m.</i>	first rank		



## Word Building: Compounds

A good way to help build your Latin vocabulary is to watch for compound words made up of simple stems you already know. Words in Latin are compounded in predictable ways, so you can learn to pull them apart and make educated guesses even about words you've never seen before. (Review Reading Chapter 2 for spelling changes!) Here are some examples:

- **verbs with prefixes which come from prepositions**

PREPOSITION	VERB	COMPOUND WORD	MEANING
ā / ab	mittere	āmittere	to send away, lose
ad	venīre	advenīre	to come to, arrive
ante	pōnere	antepōnere	to place before, prefer
circum	dare	circumdare	to put around, surround
cum (com-, con-)	currere	concurrere	to run together, charge
in	capere	incipere	to take in (hand), begin
sub (sup-)	iacere	subicere	to throw (place) under
super	sedēre	supersedēre	to sit over, preside

- **other compounds**

TYPE OF FORMATION	PARTS OF THE COMPOUND	COMPOUND WORD	MEANING
<i>two adjectives</i>	omnis + potēns	omnipotēns	all-powerful
<i>adjective + noun</i>	māgnus + animus	magnanimus	great-spirited
<i>noun + verb</i>	ager + colō (to till, cultivate)	agricola	farmer

Guess the meaning of each compound below and identify the two parts in each compound:

- |               |             |
|---------------|-------------|
| 1. subscribō  | 5. armiger  |
| 2. addūcunt   | 6. dēpōnō   |
| 3. excidimus  | 7. mātīcīda |
| 4. manūmittit | 8. āmēns    |

Dictionary Practice / Form Identification

Identify the words below based on the dictionary entries given. Be sure to indicate the **entry from which each is taken**, and the **part of speech** and to *give all possibilities for ambiguous forms*.

For **nouns** and **adjectives**: give case, number, and gender

For **verbs**: give person, number, tense, voice (active *or* passive) and mood (indicative or imperative); if infinitive, give tense and voice

- A. servīlis, servīle: slavish, servile
- B. serviō, servīre, servīvī : to be a slave
- C. servitūs, servitūtis *f*.: slavery
- D. servō, servāre, servāvī, servātus: to watch over

	Entry	Part of Speech	Form ID
1. servātī erunt			
2. servitūtī			
3. servīvērunt			
4. servābar			
5. servīle			
6. serviam			
7. servīlēs			
8. servāvistī			
9. servāta erat			
10. servitūs			
11. servī			
12. servābunt			
13. servātus sum			
14. servīlibus			
15. servārī			

# CHAPTER 21

Irregular Verbs: **volō, nōlō, mālō**  
 Negative Commands with **nōlō**  
 Infinitive Noun Clauses (1): Objective Infinitive

So far you have seen infinitives used to complete finite verbs (§7) and, less often, as the equivalents of nouns (§41). This chapter introduces a new use of the infinitive, as the verb of a noun clause dependent on certain verbs (e.g. to command, prevent, warn). It also introduces three common irregular verbs which are sometimes followed by infinitives.

## 85. Irregular Verbs: **volō, nōlō, mālō**

The verbs **volō, nōlō, mālō** have irregular forms in the present tense and the present infinitive. They have no passive forms, and their perfect forms are completely regular.

Here are the present active indicative forms of these irregular verbs:

	TO WANT	NOT TO WANT	TO PREFER
<i>1st sg.</i>	volō	nōlō	mālō
<i>2nd sg.</i>	vīs	nōn vīs	māvīs
<i>3rd sg.</i>	vult	nōn vult	māvult
<i>1st pl.</i>	volumus	nōlumus	mālumus
<i>2nd pl.</i>	vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis
<i>3rd pl.</i>	volunt	nōlunt	mālunt
<i>Infinitive</i>	velle	nōlle	mälle
<i>Imperative</i>	(none)	nōlī nōlīte	(none)

## 86. Negative Commands with **Nōlō**

The imperative forms of **nōlō** are often used with a complementary infinitive (§7) to express a negative command:

**Nōlī** hoc **facere**.

Do not do this!

**Nōlīte** **rapere** illa.

Do not take those things!

EXERCISE 134. Translate each of the following into Latin.

- |                           |  |
|---------------------------|--|
| 1. He wants.              | 6. Do not kill (pl.) us!                 |
| 2. They prefer.           | 7. I do not want to flee.                |
| 3. Do not speak! (sg.)    | 8. You (sg.) prefer to do that.          |
| 4. We are unwilling.      | 9. They dare to want these things.       |
| 5. Are you (sg.) willing? | 10. You (pl.) are unwilling to wage war. |

## 87. Noun Clause: Objective Infinitive

Verbs with the meaning “to order” or “to wish” (and the like) often appear with an infinitive clause as their object. This use is therefore called the **objective infinitive**. It is similar to the complementary infinitive (§7), except that the objective infinitive has its own subject:

I want <b>to stay</b> .	complementary	They dare <b>to fight</b> .	complementary
I want <b>you to stay</b> .	objective	We advise <b>them to fight</b> .	objective

In Latin, the **subject of the infinitive** is in the **accusative** case:

Volō <b>tē manēre</b> .	I want <b>you to stay</b> .
Monēmus <b>eōs pugnāre</b> .	We advise <b>them to fight</b> .
Nōlunt <b>nōs venīre</b> .	They do not want <b>us to come</b> .
Prohibet <b>militēs pugnāre</b> .	He prevents <b>the soldiers from fighting</b> .

Here are some of the common verbs which may be followed by this construction:

cōgō, cōgere, cōgēī, cōactus	to force, compel
cupiō (ch. 20)	to wish, want
iubeō, iubēre, iūssī, iūssus	to order, command
mālō, mālle, mālui	to prefer, want (something) more
moneō (ch. 14)	to warn, advise
nōlō, nōlle, nōlui	to be unwilling, not want
postulō, postulāre, postulāvī, postulātus	to demand
prohibeō (ch. 13)	to prevent
sinō, sinere, sīvī, sītus	to allow, permit; let alone
vetō, vetāre, vetuī, vetitus	to forbid; order ... not
volō, velle, volui	to wish, want, be willing

You have now had three uses of the infinitive:

complementary	§7 Chapter 1
as a noun (“subjective”)	§41 Chapter 8
objective	§87 Chapter 21

Review these uses before you do the next exercise.

EXERCISE 135. In each of the following sentences, identify the form and use of the infinitive.

*Example:* Ille prohibet milites pugnare. pugnare: present active inf.; objective

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Cōsul haec audire solēbat.                   | 7. Caesar iussit arma rapī.                       |
| 2. Semper multa cupere bonum nōn est.           | 8. Cupisne in urbem ambulāre?                     |
| 3. Nōluit fugere.                               | 9. Illam urbem condere potuimus.                  |
| 4. Nōluērunt vōs fugere.                        | 10. Vidēre est crēdere.                           |
| 5. Senex multōs annōs vīvere potuerat.          | 11. Dolōs illius fugere volumus.                  |
| 6. Rōmānīs dulce erat prō patriā<br>pugnāvisse. | 12. Hostēs ab nostrīs militibus vincī<br>possunt? |

EXERCISE 136. Translate the sentences from Ex. 135.

EXERCISE 137. List all the uses of the accusative case you have had so far and indicate which of these uses require a preposition and which do not.

EXERCISE 138. Translate each of the following sentences.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Patriam tuam amāre dēbēs.  | 7. Graecīs multae nāvēs erant.   |
| 2. Ab hostibus capī nōlumus.  | 8. Uxor Rōmām cum coniuge venīre<br>vult.                                |
| 3. Māvultisne mortālēs esse?  | 9. Postquam moenia aedificāta erant,<br>virī eum ducem creāre voluērunt. |
| 4. Nōlite vestram urbem in illō<br>locō condere.                      | 10. Mōs erat Rōmānīs magnum<br>honōrem principibus dare.                 |
| 5. Caesar milites moenia celeriter<br>facere decem pedēs alta iussit. |  |
| 6. Cōgitisne ceterōs in agrīs labōrāre?                               |  |

EXERCISE 139. Translate into Latin.

1. It was necessary to abandon the slaves after we arrived in Italy.
2. I want this money to be given to him.
3. Many of the Greeks who sailed to Troy did not want to fight.
4. It is the custom to praise the wise, but not the unwise.
5. In six days they were able to build a small house for their leader.
6. He forbids those soldiers from fleeing and sends a messenger to Caesar.
7. Caesar was not willing to send troops into this province.
8. Our father allowed us to sing songs at night.
9. The leaders ordered us to take the city by force.
10. Free men prefer to live with war (rather) than without freedom.

READING 23 (*adapted*)

*Caesar describes how Cicero managed to get important letters through to Caesar and his legion commanders when he was besieged during the Roman campaign in Gaul.*

Erat ūnus intus Nervius, nōmine Verticō, quī ā primā obsidiōne ad Cicerōnem perfūgerat suamque eī fidem praestiterat. hic servō spē libertātis magnisque persuadet praemiis, ita servus litterās ad Caesarem portat. hās ille iaculō inligatās effert et Gallus inter Gallōs sine ūllā **suspiciōne** versātus ad Caesarem pervenit. ab eō dē periculīs Cicerōnis **legiōnis**que cognōscit. Caesar litterās hōrā circiter ūndecimā diē accipit et statim nūntium ad Marcum Crassum **quaestōrem** mittit, cūius hiberna aberant ab eō mīlia passuum xxv; iubet mediā nocte **legiōnem** proficiscī celeriterque ad sē venīre. exit cum nūntiō Crassus. alterum ad Gāium Fabium lēgātum mittit, et iubet eum in Atrebatium finēs **legiōnem** addūcere.

## VOCABULARY:

intus	within, “in the army”	suspiciō, -ōnis <i>f.</i>	suspicion
Nervius, -a, -um	a Nervian (Nervians were a tribe in Gaul)	versātus, -a, -um	coming and going
obsidiō, -iōnis <i>f.</i>	siege	perveniō, -īre	to reach
perfugio, -ere, perfūgī	to desert, flee for refuge	legiō, -ōnis <i>f.</i>	Roman legion
praestō, -āre, -stitī	to show, prove	circiter (adv.)	around, about
praemium, -ī <i>n.</i>	reward	statim (adv.)	immediately
iaculum, -ī <i>n.</i>	javelin	quaestor, -ōris <i>m.</i>	quaestor
inligātus, -a, -um	attached	hiberna, -ōrum <i>n.</i> (pl.)	winter quarters
efferrō, efferre	to carry out	proficiscī (inf.)	to set out, proceed
extulī, ēlātus		exeō, -īre	to leave, go out
		Atrebatēs, -ium <i>m.</i> (pl.)	Atrebatēs (Gallic tribe)

## PRACTICE SENTENCES

Identify the case and use of the underlined words, then translate.

- [Catō] esse quam vidēri bonus mālēbat. (Sallust)
- Magna sunt ea quae dīcō, mihi crēde; nōlī haec contemnere. (Cicero)
- Nōlīte perturbārī. (Petronius)
- Hominēs id quod vōlunt crēdunt. (Caesar)
- Omnēs diēs iubēmus esse iūridicōs. (C.Th. 2.8.18)
- Multa ēveniunt hominī quae vult, quae nōn vult. (Plautus - adapted)
- In longum sermōnem mē vocās, Attice, quem tamen, nisi Quīntus aliud quid nōs agere māvult, suscipiam, et, quōniam vacuī sumus, dīcam. (Cicero; *the author talks with two friends about civil law*)

## VOCABULARY:

contemnō, -ere	to disparage, think light of
perturbō, -āre	to confuse, disturb
iūridicus, -a, -um	open for court proceedings
ēveniō, -īre	to happen, result, turn out
sermō, -ōnis <i>m.</i>	discussion, conversation
nisi	unless
aliud quid	some other (activity), something else
suscipiō, -ere	to undertake
quoniam	since
vacuus, -a, -um	at leisure, free

## Chapter 21 Vocabulary

## Nouns

dolus, dolī <i>m.</i>	trick, deceit
moenia, moenium <i>n.</i> (pl.)	walls, defenses
mōs, mōris <i>m.</i>	custom, tradition
nūntius, nūntiī <i>m.</i>	messenger; message
prīnceps, prīncipis <i>m.</i>	leader, chief, first citizen, emperor
servus, servī <i>m.</i>	slave; servant

## Verbs

cōgō, cōgere, cōgēī, cōactus	to force, compel; collect
iubeō, iubēre, iūssī, iūssus	to order, command
mālō, mālle, mālui	to prefer, want (something) more
necesse est	it is necessary
nōlō, nōlle, nōlui	to be unwilling, not want
postulō, postulāre, postulāvī, postulātus	to demand, claim; prosecute
sinō, sinere, sīvī, sītus	to allow, permit
vetō, vetāre, vetuī, vetitus	to forbid; order ... not
vīvō, vīvere, vīxī, victus	to live
volō, velle, voluī	to wish, want, be willing

## Adjective

cēterī, ceterae, cetera	the rest; the others
-------------------------	----------------------

## Adverbs

celeriter	quickly
fortiter	bravely, forcefully
quam	(rather) than, as ( <i>in comparisons</i> )



Forum with Mt. Vesuvius in the distance. Pompeii, 1st c. A.D.



# CHAPTER 22

## Review of Infinitive Forms

### Future Infinitives (Active and Passive)

### Infinitive Noun Clauses (2): Indirect Statement

### Tenses of the Infinitive in Indirect Statement

This chapter provides a review of infinitive forms and introduces the future infinitive. It also introduces another infinitive noun clause called the indirect statement.

## 88. Infinitive Forms

In previous chapters (1, 8, 9, 13, 16 and 20) you have learned all the regular infinitive forms except the future infinitive. The formation of these infinitives is very regular and therefore predictable:

*present active infinitive* = present stem + **-re:**     **amāre**

*present passive infinitive* = present stem + **-rī:**     **amārī**

(except third conj.) > present stem + **-ī:**     **capī**

*perfect active infinitive* = perfect stem + **-isse:**     **amāvisse**

*perfect passive infinitive* = participial stem\* + **-us, -a, -um + esse:** **amātus esse**

\* the fourth principal part provides the participial stem

*future active infinitive* = participial stem + **-ūr + -us, -a, -um + esse:** **amātūrus esse**

The future passive infinitive is very rare and its form is given in the chart of endings below only for reference.

Review of infinitive endings:

	ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
<i>Present</i>	-re	to ____	-rī (-ī)	to be ____ed
<i>Perfect</i>	-isse	to have ____ed	-us esse*	to have been ____ed
<i>Future</i>	-ūrus esse*	to be about to ____	[-um īrī] <i>very rare</i>	[to be about to be ____ed]

\*Special Note: **esse** is sometimes omitted from the infinitive in these forms. In those cases, depend on the context to alert you to the possibility that you may have an infinitive form.

Here is a review of the infinitive forms for each conjugation:

	ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
<i>Present</i>	1	amāre	1	amārī
	2	docēre	2	docērī
	3	regere	3	regī
	4	audīre	4	audīrī
<i>Perfect</i>	1	amāvisse	1	amātus (-a, -um) esse
	2	docuisse	2	doctus (-a, -um) esse
	3	rēxisse	3	rēctus (-a, -um) esse
	4	audīvisse	4	audītus (-a, -um) esse

Future infinitive forms:

	ACTIVE		PASSIVE
<i>Future</i>	1	amātūrus (-a, -um) esse	
	2	doctūrus (-a, -um) esse	-----
	3	rēctūrus (-a, -um) esse	
	4	audītūrus (-a, -um) esse	

The infinitives of **sum** are:

<i>Present</i>	esse
<i>Perfect</i>	fuisse
<i>Future</i>	futūrus esse or fore

EXERCISE 140. Write the principal parts and give all the infinitive forms (except the future passive) for the following verbs:

- |          |           |
|----------|-----------|
| 1. vītō  | 5. caedō  |
| 2. pōnō  | 6. aperiō |
| 3. iubeō | 7. dīcō   |
| 4. capiō | 8. spērō  |

## 89. Noun Clause: Indirect Statement

In the previous chapter, you learned that an infinitive with an accusative subject can be expected after verbs of ordering, wishing, and the like. A similar clause can also be expected after verbs of saying, thinking, and perceiving. This clause is called an **indirect statement** (sometimes also indirect discourse, or *ōrātiō obliqua*). Unlike the infinitives in the previous chapter, however, those in indirect statement are often best translated by a finite form in English:

Videt <b>tē manēre.</b>	He sees ( <b>that</b> ) <b>you are staying.</b>
Gaudent <b>nōs venīre.</b>	They are glad ( <b>that</b> ) <b>we are coming.</b>
Crēdimus <b>eōs pugnāre.</b>	We believe ( <b>that</b> ) <b>they are fighting.</b>

Notice that in the translations above, the indirect statements can use the clause marker “that” in English even though Latin has no clause marker.

Here are some verbs which may be followed by an indirect statement:

### VERBS OF SAYING, SPEAKING, TELLING:

dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictus	to say
moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus	to warn, advise
nārrō, nārrāre, nārrāvī, nārrātus	to tell
negō, negāre, negāvī, negātus	to deny, say that ... not
nūntiō, nūntiāre, nūntiāvī, nūntiātus	to announce, report
respondeō, respondēre, respondī, respōnsus	to answer, reply
trādō, trādere, trādidī, trāditus	to report

### VERBS OF THINKING:

cōgitō, cōgitāre, cōgitāvī, cōgitātus	to think
iūdicō, iūdicāre, iūdicāvī, iūdicātus	to judge, decide
putō, putāre, putāvī, putātus	to think, consider
spērō, spērāre, spērāvī, spērātus	to hope

### VERBS OF KNOWING, BELIEVING:

cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī, cognitus	to know, recognize, understand
crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditus	to believe
nesciō, nescīre, nescīvī, nescītus	not to know
sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītus	to know

### VERBS OF PERCEIVING:

audiō, audīre, audīvī or audīī, audītus	to hear
cernō, cernere, crēvī, crētus	to see, discern, perceive, decide
intellegō, intellegere, intellēxī, intellēctus	to understand, perceive, realise
sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsus	to feel, perceive
videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsus	to see

## OTHERS:

gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum	to rejoice, be glad
ostendō, ostendere, ostendī, ostentus/ostēsus	to show, reveal
petō, petere, petīvī or petīī, petītus	to seek; ask; attack
scribō, scribere, scrīpsī, scrīptus	to write

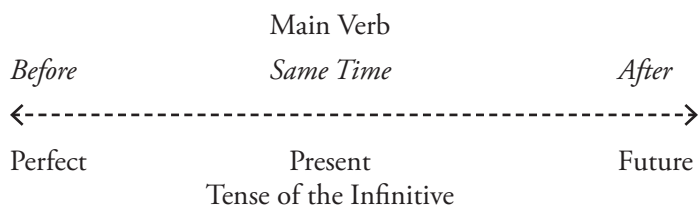
EXERCISE 141. Translate each of the following into Latin

1. I say that all men love the gods.
2. He writes that we are coming.
3. The leaders know the men are brave.
4. We see that those boys run.
5. Do you think the ship is wrecked?
6. The messenger announces that the king is preparing to rule.

## 90. Tenses of the Infinitive in Indirect Statement

Sometimes the action of the infinitive and that of the main verb happen at different times. In all the sentences above, the action of the infinitive happened at the same time as that of the main verb and was expressed in Latin by a present infinitive. If the action of the infinitive had happened before that of the main verb, Latin would have used a perfect infinitive; if the action was expected, but hadn't happened yet, Latin would have used a future infinitive.

This pattern showing the relation between the *time* of the main verb and the *tense* of the infinitive is very regular and predictable:



Study the following examples:

### TIME OF MAIN VERB

<i>Present</i>	Dīcō eum <b>vēnisse</b> .	I say that he came.
	Dīcō eum <b>venīre</b> .	I say that he is coming.
	Dīcō eum <b>ventūrum esse</b> .	I say that he will come.
<i>Past</i>	Dīxī eum <b>vēnisse</b> .	I said that he had come.
	Dīxī eum <b>venīre</b> .	I said that he was coming.
	Dīxī eum <b>ventūrum esse</b> .	I said that he would come.

## EXERCISE 142. Translate each of the following into Latin

1. We say that all men used to love the gods.
2. He says that all men will love the gods.
3. They said that all men used to love (= had loved) the gods.
4. She said that all men would love the gods.
5. You (sg.) deny that the war was fought there.
6. I denied that the war had been fought there.
7. He answered that the women would take the water.
8. He answered that the women were being taken.
9. He answered that the women had been taken.
10. They thought the citizens were appointing a new leader.
11. Do you think the leaders are ruling well?
12. He thinks that consul will rule well.
13. The envoy believes that we are burning the city.
14. The envoy believed that you (pl.) were burning the city.
15. The enemy will report that they burned the city.

## EXERCISE 143. Translate each of the following sentences.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Virī hostēs arma trādere postulābant.                        | 7. Putant id esse aurum, sed nōn est.                              |
| 2. Virī dīxerunt hostēs arma trādidisse.                        | 8. Poēta dīcēbat montēs verbīs suis mōtōs esse.                    |
| 3. Servus negāvit sē dominum suum cōnfēcisse.                   | 9. Intellegō ratiōnem mentem sed gaudium timōremque pectus regere. |
| 4. Epistula senātuī nūntiāvit Galliam ā Caesare superātam esse. | 10. Māter facile docet liberōs haec facere.                        |
| 5. Senēs spērant puerōs mātres patrēque auditūrōs esse.         |  |
| 6. Caesar dīxit sē ducem copiīs fore.*                          |  |

\* see §88

## EXERCISE 144. Translate into Latin.

1. The boy's father said he was brave.
2. The god of the sea said he would help the Roman sailors.
3. After he read our letter, he wrote that he would come home in three days.
4. Those who are wise warn that money is produced by work, not luck.
5. The farmer, whose house had been burned by the soldiers, wants to build a new house.
6. Children should be seen and not heard.
7. Before the enemy attacked, the people believed the gods would save them.
8. I know that you (sg.) listen to the plan of the consuls.
9. I hope that you (pl.) are willing to fight on behalf of the state.
10. The soldier reported to his commander that the troops were delayed [hindered] for five days.

READING 24 (*adapted*)

*Cornelius Nepos (c. 99-24 B.C.) writes about Themistocles' trip to Asia, preferring the Greek historian Thucydides as a source about whether Themistocles made the trip during the reign of the Persian ruler Xerxes or Artaxerxes.*

Sciō multōs scripsisse Themistoclēn dum Xerxēs **rēgnābat** in Asiam trānsisse. Sed egō potissimum Thucydidī crēdō, quod aetate proximus dē iīs quī illōrum tempōrum **historiam** reliquērunt, et eiusdem cīvitatīs fuit. Is ait ad Artaxerxēn eum vēnisse atque hīs verbīs epistulam mīsisse: Themistoclēs vēnī ad tē, quī plūrima mala omnium Graecōrum in domum tuam intulī quam diū mihi necesse fuit adversum patrem tuum **bellāre** patriamque meam **dēfendere**.

## VOCABULARY:

Themistoclēn = <i>Greek acc. form</i>	Themistocles	historia, -ae <i>f.</i>	history
rēgnō, -āre	to reign, to rule	eiusdem (gen.)	the same
trānseō, trānsīre, trānsiī	to cross, go across	plūrimus, -a, -um	most
potissimum (adv.)	above all, chiefly	īnferō, īnferre, intulī	to bring
proximus, -a, -um	closest, nearest	quam diū	as long as
dē (+ abl.)	among	adversum (+ acc.)	against
iīs = eīs		bellō, -āre	to fight a war
		dēfendō, -ere	to defend

## PRACTICE SENTENCES

Identify the form and use of the underlined words, then translate.

1. Tamen putābat causam calumniae sē repertūrum. (Cicero - adapted; *explaining one of Verres' schemes*)
2. "Omnēs" inquit "iūrant esse mē Iovis filium, sed vulnus hoc hominem esse mē clāmat" (Seneca; *quoting Alexander*)
3. Lāocoōn **dēcurrit** ab arce et procul: "ō miserī cīvēs, crēditis āvectōs [esse] hostēs? Aut ūlla putātis dōna carēre dolīs Danaum?" (Vergil - adapted; *Laocoon was the only Trojan to warn against accepting the Trojan Horse*)
4. "Aiō tē, Aiacida, Rōmānōs vincere posse." (Ennius; *quoting a famously ambiguous oracle*)
5. Fortibus est fortūna virīs data. (Ennius)
6. Eō annō - nec trāditur causa - interrēgnum initum. (Livy)
7. Brevis ā natūrā vīta nōbis data est; at memoria bene redditae vītae sempiterna. (Cicero)

## VOCABULARY:

calumnia, -ae *f.*  
 reperiō, -īre, repperī, repertus  
 iūrō, -āre  
 Iuppiter, Iovis *m.*  
 dēcurrō, -ere = dē + currō  
 āvehō, -ere, -vēxī, -vectus  
 Danaum = Graecōrum  
 Aiacida (= Greek acc. form)

interrēgnum, -ī *n.*

initum (est)  
 at  
 reddō, -ere, -didī, -ditus  
 sempiternus, -a, -um

false charge  
 to discover, find  
 to swear  
 Jupiter, Jove (king of the Roman gods)  
 to run down (from)  
 to carry away; (*passive*) sail away, be carried  
 descendant of Aeacus (i.e. Achilles' son,  
 Pyrrhus) \*Pyrrhus asked the Delphic oracle  
 if he should fight the Romans  
 interregnum (the time between the death  
 of one leader and the election of the next)  
 "was begun"  
 but  
 to spend  
 everlasting

## Chapter 22 Vocabulary

## Nouns

artus, artūs <i>m.</i>	limb, joint
liberī, liberōrum <i>m.</i> (pl.)	children
modus, modī <i>m.</i>	manner, way, method
orbis, orbis <i>m.</i>	circle, orb
orbis terrārum	world

## Verbs

ait, aiunt; aiō	he says, they say; I say
cōgitō, cōgitāre, cōgitāvī, cōgitātus	to think, consider
gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum	to rejoice, be glad; delight in (+ abl.)
inquit	he said ( <i>introduces a direct quotation</i> )
negō, negāre, negāvī, negātus	to deny, say that ... not
nesciō, nescīre, nescīvī, nescītus	not to know
ostendō, ostendere, ostendī,	to show, reveal
ostentus/ostēnsus	
putō, putāre, putāvī, putātus	to think, consider; suppose
respondeō, respondēre, respondī,	to answer, reply; correspond to
respōnsus	
spērō, spērāre, spērāvī, spērātus	to hope, hope for ( <i>often + future inf.</i> )
trādō, trādere, trādidī, trāditus	to hand over, surrender; hand down, report

## Adjectives

imprūdēns, imprūdentis  
prūdēns, prūdentis

unwise; unaware, ignorant (of)  
wise, prudent, knowing; skilled

## Adverbs

bene  
hodiē  
ibi

well  
today  
there

(20)



# CHAPTER 23

Intensive Pronouns: *ipse, idem*  
 Indefinite Pronoun: *quidam*  
 Deponent Verbs; Semi-Deponent Verbs  
 Special Intransitive Sentence Pattern:  
 Verbs used with an Ablative

So far you have learned three common demonstrative pronouns (§44). This chapter introduces two more demonstrative pronouns which are sometimes called “intensive” pronouns because they put special emphasis on the words they modify, and one indefinite pronoun. The chapter also introduces a group of verbs which lacks active forms, some of which take their object in the ablative case.

## 91a. Intensive Pronouns: *ipse, idem, quidam*

Review what you have already learned about demonstrative pronouns in Chapter 10 (§44). **Intensive pronouns** are used in the same way as **is**, **hic** and **ille**, but carry special emphasis.

As the paradigms below indicate, these pronouns decline just like the other demonstrative (and special adjectives) you learned in Chapter 10. The “odd” forms are in bold below.

**ipse, ipsa, ipsum**      **\_\_\_\_\_self, himself, herself, itself, themselves**

SINGULAR	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
<i>Nominative</i>	ipse	ipsa	ipsum
<i>Genitive</i>	<b>ipsīus</b>	<b>ipsīus</b>	<b>ipsīus</b>
<i>Dative</i>	<b>ipsī</b>	<b>ipsī</b>	<b>ipsī</b>
<i>Accusative</i>	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum
<i>Ablative</i>	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō
PLURAL			
<i>Nominative</i>	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
<i>Genitive</i>	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
<i>Dative</i>	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
<i>Accusative</i>	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
<i>Ablative</i>	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

**īdem, eadem, idem****the same**

SINGULAR	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
<i>Nominative</i>	<b>īdem</b>	eadem	idem
<i>Genitive</i>	<b>eiusdem</b>	<b>eiusdem</b>	<b>eiusdem</b>
<i>Dative</i>	<b>eīdem</b>	<b>eīdem</b>	<b>eīdem</b>
<i>Accusative</i>	<b>eundem</b>	<b>eandem</b>	idem
<i>Ablative</i>	eōdem	eādem	eōdem
PLURAL			
<i>Nominative</i>	eīdem	eaedem	eadem
<i>Genitive</i>	<b>eōrundem</b>	<b>eārundem</b>	<b>eōrundem</b>
<i>Dative</i>	eīsdem	eīsdem	eīsdem
<i>Accusative</i>	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
<i>Ablative</i>	eīsdem	eīsdem	eīsdem

**91b. Indefinite Pronoun: quīdam**

The pronoun **quīdam, quaedam, quoddam** (“a certain, a sort of”) is declined like the relative pronoun **quī, quae, quod** (§77) with **-dam** appended to the end of the word. Note that **-m** becomes **-n** before a **-d**: **eundem, eōrundem; quendam, quādam**, etc.

Like the other demonstrative you have learned, these pronouns can be used in place of nouns or, like adjectives, to modify nouns:

<b>Īdem in urbem vēnit.</b>	The same (man) came into the city.
<b>Īdem dux bene pugnāvit.</b>	The same leader fought well.
<b>Quaedam ab agrīs currit.</b>	A certain (woman) is running away from the fields.
<b>Quaedam dōna accēpimus.</b>	We received certain gifts.

Because of its meaning, **ipse, ipsa, ipsum** will need to be translated differently according to the word it modifies. Compare the following examples:

<b>Caesar ipse militēs dūcet.</b>	Caesar <b>himself</b> will lead the soldiers.
<b>Ipse militēs dūxī.</b>	I <b>myself</b> led the soldiers.
<b>Tē ipsum laudāmus.</b>	We praise you <b>yourself</b> .
<b>Militēs ipsōs laudāvimus.</b>	We praised the soldiers <b>themselves</b> .

EXERCISE 145. Translate the following.

- |   |                                     |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| 1. The world itself is large.                     | 6. Exercitus Caesaris ipsīus fūgit. |
| 2. We ourselves are women.                        | 7. Urbī ipsī magna moenia erant.    |
| 3. They themselves obey the same laws.            | 8. Vōs ipsōs pugnāre nōlō.          |
| 4. I will come to the citadel itself today.       | 9. Dūxistīne ipse illōs?            |
| 5. You (sg.) should fear nothing but fear itself. | 10. Mōs īdem nobīs ipsīs est.       |

## 92. Deponent Verbs

Deponent verbs have *passive forms* but *active meanings*. (They are called “deponent” because they literally “put down” [**dē** + **pōnere**] their passive meanings.) You will be able to identify a deponent verb from its dictionary listing, because the first form will end in **-or** instead of **-ō**, the second form will be a passive infinitive and the listing will have only three forms:

PRESENT INDICATIVE		PRESENT INFINITIVE	PERFECT INDICATIVE
moror	“I delay”	morārī	morātus sum
loquor	“I talk”	loquī	locūtus sum

Note:

- More than half of all deponent verbs are regular, first conjugation verbs.

Imperatives of deponent verbs are formed as follows:

*2nd sg:* Add **-re** to the verb stem (morā**re**, loqu**ere**) – these forms look like a present active infinitive for each conjugation

*2nd pl:* Add **-minī** to the verb stem (morā**minī**, loqui**minī**) – these forms look like the 2nd pl. indicative, but the context of the sentence should make the mood clear.

Deponents retain the following Active forms:

Future Infinitive (morātūrus esse, locūtūrus esse)

Present and Future Participles, Gerund and Supine (to be learned later)

See the Morphology Reference section (pp. 291-292) for imperative, infinitive and participle forms for all four conjugations.

A few verbs have regular active forms except in the perfect system where they have only passive forms. These are called **semi-deponent** verbs, and you have already learned three of the most common ones:

audeō, audēre, ausus sum	to dare
fidō, fidere, fīsus sum	to trust
gaudeō, gaudēre, gavīsus sum	to rejoice
soleō, solēre, solitus sum	to be accustomed

Remember that when you are identifying most *forms* of deponent verbs, they are *passive*, even though their meanings are *active*. Ask your instructor how to handle this on tests.

EXERCISE 146. From the dictionary entries below, identify which verbs are deponent.

- |  |                                       |
|--|---------------------------------------|
| 1. cōnfiteor, cōnfītērī, cōnfessus sum | 5. carpō, carpere, carpsī, carptus    |
| 2. rōdō, rōdere, rōsī, rōsus           | 6. moror, morārī, morātus sum         |
| 3. hortor, hortārī, hortātus sum       | 7. reor, rērī, ratus sum              |
| 4. fateor, fatērī, fassus sum          | 8. impleō, implēre, implēvī, implētus |

EXERCISE 147. Identify each of the following verbs by person, number, tense, voice, and mood, and then translate into English.

*Example:* cōnātus eris second sg., future perfect, deponent, indic.:  
“you will have tried”

- |                 |                  |
|-----------------|------------------|
| 1. frūctus esse | 7. cōnātī erātis |
| 2. ingredimur   | 8. ūtor          |
| 3. potītus eram | 9. fūctus est    |
| 4. ūsī eritis   | 10. vesceris     |
| 5. sequitur     | 11. ingressus es |
| 6. patimur      | 12. ausae sumus  |

### 93. Special Intransitive: Verbs used with an Ablative Object

In Chapter 3 (§19) you learned that some verbs take their object in the dative case instead of the accusative. The deponent verbs **ūtor**, **fruor**, **fungor**, **potior**, **vescor** (and some of their compounds) typically take their object in the ablative case, in a similar “special intransitive” sentence pattern.

EXERCISE 148. Translate each of the following sentences.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Dux ipse milītēs ingredi Rōmam sinit.   | 6. Vescī quōdam cibō tē aegrū faciet.                              |
| 2. Nōlīte sequī illōs!   | 7. Nūntiī cōsulēs advēnisse dixerunt.                              |
| 3. Vir multa vulnera patī solitus est.   | 8. Morārī quam hostem petere māvis?                                |
| 4. In hōc locō Cicerō vī verbōrum ūsus erat et cīvibus Rōmānīs persuādere cōnātus est. | 9. Cōgitāsne Caesarem ipsum Gallōs victūrum esse?                  |
| 5. Princeps ipse cibō pōtūque frūctus est dum Rōma ārdet. (§75 note)                   | 10. Puer frātrēsque parēs patrī erant et virtūte et vīribus. (§57) |

EXERCISE 149. Translate into Latin.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Certain women will acquire fame.  | 6. To use force was not their custom.                |
| 2. We ourselves will depart on the seventh day.                                    | 7. Do they prefer to come with me?                   |
| 3. Tradition forbids women to enter the temple.                                    | 8. The children enjoy the same books.                |
| 4. The slaves believed that many ships had come to the same shore.                 | 9. The soldiers were following the leader himself.   |
| 5. Those who follow that leader into the hostile province will not live many days. | 10. The senate did not want to make the crowd angry. |

## READING 25 (adapted)

*Tacitus tells a story of intrigue and murder in the Roman Empire. Agrippina, the second wife of Emperor Claudius, persuaded him to adopt her son by a previous marriage, Nero. Four years later, Claudius died — probably poisoned by Agrippina — and Nero, three or four years older than Claudius' son, Britannicus, became emperor. But Agrippina subsequently lost influence over Nero and began to support her stepson Britannicus as the rightful heir. This prompted Nero to plot the poisoning death of Britannicus at a banquet in A.D.55, as Tacitus describes.*

Nerō Agrippinae minīs **turbātus est**, sed quia nūllum crīmen neque iubēre caedem frātris palam audēbat, occulta mōlitur parārīque venēnum iubet. mōs habēbātur prīncipum liberōs cum cēterīs idem aetātis **nōbilibus** vescī in **aspectū** propinquōrum propriā et parciōre mēnsā. dum illīc epulātur Britannicus, quia cibōs pōtūsque eius ūnus ex ministrīs gustū explōrābat, hic dolus, quō nec **ōmittī** poterat īnstitūtum nec utrīusque morte prōdī scelus, repertus est. innoxia ac praecalida pōtiō, quae ā ministrō libāta est, traditur Britannicō; tum, postquam fervōre aspernābātur, frīgidā in aquā adfunditur venēnum, quod celeriter cunctōs eius artūs **pervāsīt** ac vox pariter et spīritus raptī sunt.

(continued)

## VOCABULARY:

turbō, -āre	to disturb, trouble	uterque, -traque, -trumque	both, each
mina, -ae <i>f.</i>	threat	ōmittō, -ere	to give up, let go
palam (adv.)	openly	īnstitūtum, -ī <i>n.</i>	tradition
occultus, -a, -um	secret	prōdō, -ere	to show, betray
mōlior, -īrī, -ītus sum	to devise; undertake	reperiō, -īre,	to invent
venēnum, -ī <i>n.</i>	poison	repperī, repertus	
idem aetātis	“of the same age”	innoxius, -a, -um	harmless
nōbilis, -e	noble	praecalidus, -a, -um	very hot
aspectus, -ūs <i>m.</i>	sight	pōtiō, -iōnis <i>f.</i>	drink
propriā et parciōre	at their own, less	libō, -are	to taste
mēnsā	luxurious table	fervor, -ōris <i>m.</i>	boiling heat
illic	there	aspernor, -ārī	to reject
epulor, -ārī, -ātus sum	to feast	adfundō, -ere	to pour in
minister, -trī <i>m.</i>	servant	pervādō, -ere,	to spread,
gustus, -ūs <i>m.</i>	tasting	-vāsī, -vāsus	pervade
explōrō, -are	to investigate, test	pariter	at the same time
modus, -ī <i>m.</i>	way, method	spīritus, -ūs <i>m.</i>	breath

READING 25 (*continued*)

Trepidant quī **circumsedent**, diffugiunt imprudentēs, at quibus altior intellectus resistunt dēfixī et Nerōnem intuentēs. ille ut erat **reclīnis** et nesciō similis, solitum esse ita ait per comitalem morbum quō primā ab **infantiā** adflictārētur Britannicus, et reditūrōs esse paulatim **vīsus sēnsūsque**. at Agrippīnae pavor, ea **cōnsternātiō** mentis, quamvīs vultū premerētur, ēmicuit. sibi suprēmum auxilium ēreptum esse intellegēbat. ita post breve **silentium** repetita convīvī laetitia est.

## VOCABULARY:

trepidō, -are	to be afraid, anxious	adflictārētur	“(he) had been afflicted”
circumsedeō, -ēre	to sit around	redeō, -īre, -iī, -ītus	to return, come back
diffugiō, -ere	to scatter	paulātim	gradually
at = sed		vīsus, -ūs <i>m.</i>	sight
quibus (+ est)	( <i>dative of possession</i> )	sēnsus, -ūs <i>m.</i>	sense; consciousness
altior (adj.)	better	pavor, -ōris, <i>m.</i>	trembling (from fear)
intellēctus, -ūs <i>m.</i>	understanding	cōnsternātiō, -iōnis <i>f.</i>	alarm, distress
resistō, -ere, -stitī	to remain	quamvīs	although
dēfixus, -a, -um	rooted (in their seats)	premerētur	“she tried to conceal”
intuentēs (nom. pl.)	looking at	ēmicō, -ere, -uī	was conspicuous
ut	as	suprēmus, -a, -um	last
reclīnis, -e	reclining	ēripiō, -ere, -rēpī	to take away
nescius, -a, -um	(someone) unaware not knowing	repetō, -ere, -īvī, -ītus	to renew, begin again
soleō, -ēre, solitus sum	to be customary	silentium, -ī <i>n.</i>	silence
comitiālis morbus	epilepsy	convīvī laetitia	joy of the banquet
īnfantia, -ae <i>f.</i>	infancy		

## PRACTICE SENTENCES

Identify the case and use of the underlined words, then translate.

1. Cato enim ipse iam servīre quam pugnāre  
māvult. (Caesar)
2. Ipsī ex silvīs pugnābant nostrōsque intrā  
mūnitiōnēs ingredi prohibēbant. (Caesar - adapted; *describing  
an enemy's battle strategy*)
3. Dum loquor, hōra fugit. (Ovid)
4. Nōn omnēs eadem mīrantur amantque. (Horace)
5. Somnus in ignōtōs oculōs sibi vēnit, et aurō  
**hērōs** Aesonius potitur. (Ovid; *describing how Jason  
overcame the dragon (sibi)  
which guarded the golden  
fleece*)

## VOCABULARY:

intrā (+ acc.)	inside, within	sibi	refers to the dragon
mūnitiō, -iōnis <i>f.</i>	fortification	hērōs, hērōis <i>m.</i>	hero
mīror, -ārī	admire, wonder at	Aesonius, -a, -um	son of Aeson, Jason
ignōtus, -a, -um	not knowing		

## Chapter 23 Vocabulary

## Nouns

cibus, cibī <i>m.</i>	food
crīmen, crīminis <i>n.</i>	crime, accusation, charge
pōtus, pōtūs <i>m.</i>	drink

## Verbs

arbitror, arbitrārī, arbitrātus sum	to think, judge
cōnor, cōnarī, conātus sum	to try
fīdō, fidere, fīsus sum (+ dat.)	to trust, confide in
fruor, fruī, frūctus sum (+ abl.)	to enjoy
fungor, fungi, fūctus sum (+ abl.)	to perform, do
ingredior, ingredi, ingressus sum	to enter; march, walk
loquor, loquī, locūtus sum	to speak
moror, morārī, morātus sum	to delay
patior, patī, passus sum	to suffer, allow
potior, potīrī, potītus sum (+ abl.)	to get hold of, acquire
proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus sum	to set out, depart
sequor, sequī, secūtus sum	to follow, accompany; pursue
ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum (+ abl.)	to use
vescor, vescī (+ abl.)	to eat, feed on

## Adjective

cūctus, cūcta, cūctum

the whole, all (collectively)

## Pronouns

īdem, eadem, idem

the same

ipse, ipsa, ipsum

\_\_\_self; himself, herself, itself, themselves

quīdam, quaedam, quoddam

a certain \_\_\_\_, a sort of \_\_\_\_

(21)



# CHAPTER 24

## Participles Participle Uses Ablative Absolute

So far you have learned one non-finite verb form, the infinitive (“to \_\_\_\_\_”). This chapter introduces another non-finite form, the participle. While the infinitive can be used as a noun (§41), the participle is used as an adjective, with or without a noun to modify.

### 94. Participles

A **participle** is a verbal adjective, so it has attributes of both an adjective and a verb:

The **barking** dog wagged its tail.      The dog **barking** at me wagged its tail.  
We visited the **destroyed** city.      We visited the city **destroyed** by the storm.

Like any other adjective in Latin a participle must agree with the word it modifies in case, number and gender. But it also has tense and voice, and may take a direct object:

The dog **eating dinner** wagged its tail.

Latin participles are formed as follows:

**present active participle:**    present stem (**amā**) + **-ns, -ntis**: **amāns**

It is declined as a one-ending third declension adjective (§51 and see below).

**perfect passive participle:**    participial stem\* (**amāt**) + **-us, -a, -um**: **amātus**  
\*the fourth principal part provides the participial stem

It is declined as an adjective of the first and second declension like **bonus, bona, bonum** (§25).

**future active participle:**    participial stem (**amāt**) + **-ūr + -us, -a, -um**: **amātūrus**

It is also declined as an adjective of the first and second declension like **bonus, bona, bonum** (§25).

Here are the participle forms for each conjugation:

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
<i>Present</i>	1 amāns, amantis (loving) 2 docēns, docentis 3 regēns, regentis; capiēns, capientis 4 audiēns, audientis	-----
<i>Perfect</i>	-----	1 amātus, -a, -um (having been loved) 2 doctus, -a, -um 3 rēctus, -a, -um 4 audītus, -a, -um
<i>Future</i>	1 amātūrus, -a, -um (about to love) 2 doctūrus, -a, -um 3 rēctūrus, -a, -um 4 audītūrus, -a, -um	[Gerundive]

Note:

- There is no present passive (“being \_\_\_\_\_ed”) form.
- There is no perfect active (“having \_\_\_\_\_ed”) form.
- The future passive (“about to be \_\_\_\_\_ed”) form is called the **gerundive** and will be introduced in Chapter 31.
- **Sum** has only one participle form, the future active: **futūrus, -a, -um**.

Declension of the present active participle:

SINGULAR	M. & F.	NEUTER
<i>Nominative</i>	regēns	regēns
<i>Genitive</i>	regentis	regentis
<i>Dative</i>	regentī	regentī
<i>Accusative</i>	regentem	regēns
<i>Ablative</i>	regente, regentī*	regente, regentī*
PLURAL		
<i>Nominative</i>	regentēs	regentia
<i>Genitive</i>	regentium	regentium
<i>Dative</i>	regentibus	regentibus
<i>Accusative</i>	regentēs	regentia
<i>Ablative</i>	regentibus	regentibus

## NOTE:

- When the present active participle is used as a simple adjective, it uses the **-i stem** ablative ending (**-ī**) common to third declension adjectives: **ab amanti uxōre**, by the loving wife
- When it is used as a noun or has an object, it uses the third declension ending common to nouns (**-e**): **ab amante**, by a lover; **ā fēminā aquam portante**, by a woman carrying water. The **-e** ending will also appear on a participle in an ablative absolute (see §97 below).

EXERCISE 150. Identify each of the following participles by tense, voice (present active, perfect passive, or future active), case, number and gender. Give all possibilities.

*Example:*     *audītārum*     perfect passive participle; genitive, pl., *f*.

- |                |                  |
|----------------|------------------|
| 1. victae      | 11. missus       |
| 2. rogantī     | 12. currēns      |
| 3. parātā      | 13. interfectus  |
| 4. dictum      | 14. incolentium  |
| 5. captūra     | 15. cōgitātūrō   |
| 6. festinantem | 16. ostentī      |
| 7. rēctūrīs    | 17. spērantibus  |
| 8. scrīpta     | 18. trāditōs     |
| 9. intransēs   | 19. respondentis |
| 10. monitae    | 20. negāns       |

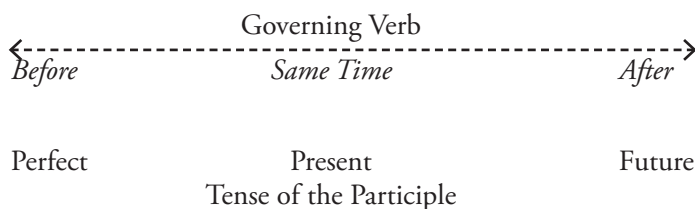
## 95. Tenses of the Participle

Like the infinitives you learned in Chapter 22, participles in Latin show **time relative to the verb** with which they occur. The present participle is used when the action of the participle occurs at the same time as that of the verb:

I see him running     I saw him running     I will see him running

The perfect participle is used when the action of the participle has already been completed:

Having been captured, the enemy dropped their weapons.



## 96. Participle Uses

1. You have already seen the perfect passive participle used with different tenses of the verb **sum** to make perfect passive indicative forms (§80-82). You have also seen the perfect passive participle with **esse** to form the perfect passive infinitive (§83) and the future active participle with **esse** to form the future active infinitive (§88). This is the most common use of the future participle.
2. The present active and perfect passive participles (and sometimes the future active, especially in poetry) are often used, like any adjective, to modify a noun:

fēmina nōs <b>audiēns</b>	The woman <b>hearing</b> us
hostēs <b>captī</b>	The enemy <b>having been captured</b>
puer <b>discessūrus</b>	The boy <b>about to depart</b>

Although Latin uses participles all the time, they are not as common in English. So a participle is often best translated with a dependent clause in English (§75, 78). Use the context of the sentence to help you decide what kind of clause to use (who, when, if, because, etc.). Look at the following examples:

### **Juppiter omnia regēns rēx deōrum erat.**

Jupiter ruling everything	} was king of the gods.
Jupiter, who ruled everything,	
While Jupiter ruled everything, he	
Because Jupiter ruled everything, he	
As long as Jupiter ruled everything, he	

### **Hostēs captī arma dēmīsērunt.**

Having been captured, the enemy	} dropped their weapons
After they were captured, the enemy	
When they had been captured, the enemy	
Because they had been captured, the enemy	
The enemy was captured and	

Notice in the last example that the participle has actually been turned into a main verb joined to the original main clause by the conjunction “and.” Check with your instructor about translating participles like this.

EXERCISE 151. In the following sentences, transform each participial clause into two different finite clauses in English. Do not translate into Latin.

*Example:* The barking dog looks at me.      The dog which is barking looks at me.  
The dog looks at me while it is barking.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. People jumped off the sinking ship.         | 5. Do you see the running child?          |
| 2. We visited the wounded soldier.             | 6. Reading this I learn many things.      |
| 3. Those teaching Latin are happy.             | 7. The men picked up the fallen boxes.    |
| 4. The letter never having been read was lost. | 8. The book written by that poet is good. |

EXERCISE 152. Draw an arrow from the participle to the noun it modifies (write in Latin any gapped nouns); then translate the whole sentence into English.

1. Cōsul exercitum timēns discēdere cōnātur.
2. Mīles ā Gallīs vulnerātus domum vēnit.
3. In casam pecūniam inventam portāvistī.
4. Huic fēminae prō templō stantī dōnum magnum dedī.
5. Audientēs cōsiliū Rōmānī Caesarem laudāvērunt.
6. Dux victus cum mīlitibus fugiet.
7. Dīmīsīt illōs virōs in agrīs dormientēs.
8. Puer epistulam legēns domī mānserat.
9. Mīles aquam portāns multa mīlia passuum ingressus est.
10. Acceptī in urbe ab multīs amīcīs Rōmae manēre cōstituīmus.

## 97. Ablative Absolute

One of the most common uses of the participle is in a construction called the **ablative absolute**. As the name implies, this construction uses a participle and a noun (or pronoun) in the ablative; the construction is called “absolute” because it is grammatically unattached to the rest of the sentence (**absolūtus** = “free, unconnected”). An ablative absolute is the equivalent of a subordinate clause and usually explains the *time*, *cause* or *condition* of an action that is expressed in the main clause. Consider the following examples:

### SUBORDINATE CLAUSE

**Cum dux mīlitēs vocat**, hostēs fugiunt.

When the leader calls the soldiers,  
the enemy flees.

**Postquam haec verba dicta sunt**, cōsul  
discessit.

After these words were said, the  
consul departed.

**Quod bellum finitur**, omnēs gaudent.  
Everyone rejoices because the war  
is finished.

**Sī deus vult**, bonam fortūnam habēbimus.  
If god is willing, we will have good  
fortune.

### ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

**Duce mīlitēs vocante**, hostēs fugiunt.

**Hīs verbīs dictīs**, cōsul discessit.

**Bellō finītō**, omnēs gaudent.

**Deō volente**, bonam fortūnam  
habēbimus.

A literal translation of the ablative absolute can be useful as an intermediate step, but should not, in most cases, be your final translation.

**Duce mīlitēs vocante**

“With the leader calling the soldiers, ...”

**Hīs verbīs dictīs**

“With these words having been spoken, ...”

**Bellō finītō**

“With the war (having been) finished, ...”

**Deō volente**

“With god (being) willing, ...”

**Note:** Since the verb **sum** has no present participle, an ablative absolute with a linking pattern will consist of only the noun and its subject complement, both in the ablative case:

**Caesare duce** “With Caesar being leader”, “When Caesar was leader”

EXERCISE 153. Translate the ablative absolutes below into English, giving the literal and then a more colloquial translation.

*Example:*    *puellā missā*    with the girl having been sent; after (since, when) the girl was sent

- |                                  |                          |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1.    omnibus parātīs            | 6.    Caesare interfectō |
| 2.    puerīs clāmantibus         | 7.    pāce factā         |
| 3.    hostibus victīs            | 8.    illīs iūssīs       |
| 4.    mātrem puerōs vocante      | 9.    annīs volventibus  |
| 5.    cōsulibus ā populō creatīs | 10.    hīs rēbus gestīs  |

EXERCISE 154. In the following sentences, transform each dependent clause into an ablative absolute and then translate the sentence.

1.    Dum Rōmam exercitus venit, omnēs fūgimus.
2.    Sī potēns civitās est omnēs laetī sunt.
3.    Fēminae puellaeque dum hominēs pignant in urbe manēbant.
4.    Cum clāmōrēs turbae audītī sunt, ad montēs cucurrīstis.
5.    Quod Gallia magna erat, mīlitēs multōs diēs ambulābant.
6.    Postquam urbs ab hostibus capitur, omnēs moriēmur.

EXERCISE 155. Translate each of the following sentences.

1.    Dominō occīsō servus ab urbe cucurrit.
2.    Nostrī mīlitēs in hostēs, signō datō, impetum fēcērunt.
3.    Audientēs carmen fēminae deōs laudāvērunt.
4.    Caesar Rōmam virōs captōs dūxit.
5.    Moeniīs patentibus, equus magnus in mediam urbem Trōiae trahēbātur.
6.    Illō duce, nihil timēbimus.
7.    Turbā spectante, princeps ipse illīs persuādere cōnātur.
8.    Caesare in Galliā pugnante ducem novum senātus lēgit.
9.    Nautae nāvigāre parantēs cibum accēpērunt.
10.    Propter crimina cognita, servus ā dominō interfectus est.

EXERCISE 156. Translate into Latin, using participles where possible.

1.    When their father entered the field, the boys began to work.
2.    The slave, since he loved his master, followed him into the city.
3.    About to tell a story, the old man sat among the children.
4.    Because he received an abundance from his fields, the farmer comes to the temple.
5.    The leader, seeing the river, told his men to pitch camp.
6.    After his father was killed, the boy grieved for many days.
7.    The doubting man sought the truth from the gods.
8.    His name, given to him by his soldiers, was known by all.
9.    Much money was given to the people of Rome when Caesar marched home from Gaul.
10.    After the letter from her son was received, the mother was happy.

READING 26 (*slightly edited*)

*Caesar tells how the Germans were defeated and his summer campaign in Gaul ended. Labienus was a prominent legion commander in Caesar's Gallic campaign.*

Ita proelium restitutum est, atque omnēs hostēs terga vertērunt neque prius fugere **dēstitērunt**, quam ad flūmen Rhēnum, mīlia passuum ex eō locō circiter quīndecim, pervēnērunt. ... hōc proeliō trāns Rhēnum nūntiātō Suēbī, quī ad rīpās Rhēnī vēnerant, domum **revertī** coepērunt. quōs ubi, quī proximī Rhenum incolunt, perterritōs sēnsērunt, īnsecutī magnum ex hīs numerum occīdērunt. Caesar ūnā aestāte duōbus maximīs bellīs cōfectīs, in hīberna in Sequanōs exercitum **dēdūxit**. hībernīs Labiēnum praeposuit, ipse in citeriōrem Galliam profectus est.

## VOCABULARY:

restituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus	to restore, renew	perterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itus	per = very
tergum, -ī <i>n.</i>	back	īnsequor, -ī,	to pursue
prius ... quam	before	īnsecūtus sum	
dēsistō, -ere, -stitī	to stop (+ inf.)	aestās, -tātis <i>f.</i>	summer
circiter (adv.)	around, about	cōficiō	to bring to an end
pervenio, -īre, -vēnī	to arrive	hīberna, -ōrum <i>n.</i> (pl.)	winter quarters
Rhēnus, -ī <i>m.</i>	the Rhine river	Sequanī, -ōrum <i>m.</i> (pl.)	the Sequani (a German tribe)
Suēbī, -ōrum <i>m.</i> (pl.)	the Suebi (a German tribe)	praepōnō, -ere (+ dat.)	to set as a commander (over)
rīpa, -ae <i>f.</i>	bank (of a river)	dēdūcō, -ere, -xī	to lead down
revertor, -ī	to turn back	citerior, -ius	to lead down on this side, nearer
coepērunt	(they) began		
quōs = hōs			

## PRACTICE SENTENCES

Identify the case and use of the underlined words, then translate.

1. Caesar, acceptīs litterīs, nūntium mittit. (Caesar)
2. Omnibus rēbus comparātīs diem dīcunt. (Caesar)
3. **Invādunt** urbem somnō vīnōque sepultam;  
caeduntur vigilēs, portīsque patentibus omnīs  
accipiunt sociōs. (Vergil; *describing the fall of Troy*)
4. [Hannibal] hāc **pugnā** pugnātā, Rōmam  
profectus est nūllō **resistente**. In propinquīs urbī  
montibus morātus est. (Cornelius Nepos; *describing Hannibal's march to Rome*)
5. Hoc dē homine enim dīcitur, cui necesse est  
morī. (Cicero - adapted)
6. Mē duce carpe viam. (Ovid; *Daedalus advises his son to follow him*)

### VOCABULARY:

comparō, āre,      to prepare  
-āvī, -ātus  
invādō, -ere      to invade  
sepeliō, -īre, īvī,      to bury  
sepultus

vigilēs, -um *m.* (pl.)      guards  
porta, -ae *f.*      gate, entrance  
omnīs = omnēs  
pugna, -ae *f.*      fight  
resistō, -ere      to resist



## Chapter 24 Vocabulary

### Nouns

exitium, exitiū <i>n.</i>	destruction, ruin
ingenium, ingenii <i>n.</i>	talent; character, nature
ōs, ōris <i>n.</i>	mouth, face
socius, socii <i>m.</i>	companion, comrade, ally

### Verbs

imperō, imperāre, imperāvī, imperātus (usually with <i>dat. of the person</i> )	to command
incolō, incolere, incolui	live (in), inhabit
interficiō, interficere, interfēcī, interfectus	to kill, destroy
moriōr, morī, mortuus sum	to die
occidō, occidere, occidī, occisus	to kill
pateō, patēre, patuī	to be open, stand open
rogō, rogāre, rogāvī, rogātus	to ask, ask for
vulnerō, vulnerāre, vulnerāvī, vulnerātus	to wound

### Adjectives

maximus, maxima, maximum	greatest, very great, very important
proximus, proxima, proximum	nearest, very near



# CHAPTER 25

## Irregular Verbs

**eō**  
**ferō**

So far you have learned the irregular verbs **sum**, **possum**, **volō**, **nōlō** and **mālō**. This chapter introduces two more common irregular verbs. It also gives you more practice with participles learned in the last chapter.

### 98. eō, ire, iī (ivī), itūrus (to go)

The verb **eō** (to go) is irregular in the present tense and must be memorized. Its other forms are regular, but are given here for convenience:

#### Indicative

	PRESENT	IMPERFECT	FUTURE	PERFECT	PLUPERFECT	FUTURE PERFECT
<i>1st sg.</i>	eō	ībam	ībō	iī, (ivī)	ieram	ierō
<i>2nd sg.</i>	īs	ībās	ībis	iistī	ierās	ieris
<i>3rd sg.</i>	it	ībat	ībit	iit	ierat	ierit
<i>1st pl.</i>	īmus	ībāmus	ībimus	iimus	ierāmus	ierimus
<i>2nd pl.</i>	ītis	ībātis	ībitis	iistis	ierātis	ieritis
<i>3rd pl.</i>	eunt	ībant	ībunt	iērunt	ierant	ierint

#### Imperatives

#### Infinitives

<i>2nd sg.</i>	ī	<i>Present</i>	īre
<i>2nd pl.</i>	īte	<i>Perfect</i>	īsse
		<i>Future</i>	itūrus esse

#### Participles

<i>Present</i>	iēns, euntis
<i>Future</i>	itūrus, -a, -um

## Compounds of **eō**

There are many common compounds of **eō**. These follow the pattern of forms given on the previous page.

EXERCISE 157. See if you can guess the principal parts and meanings of the following:

*Example:*    **abeō**                      **abire, abiī, abitūrus:** to go away, depart

- |                |                   |
|----------------|-------------------|
| 1. <b>adeō</b> | 4. <b>redeō</b>   |
| 2. <b>exeō</b> | 5. <b>subeō</b>   |
| 3. <b>ineō</b> | 6. <b>trānseō</b> |

EXERCISE 158. Translate the following into Latin using **eō** or its compounds, and identify the tense of each form:

*Example:*    I depart                      **abeō**; present tense

- |                            |  |
|----------------------------|--|
| 1.    They entered         | 6.    He wants ( <i>use volō</i> ) to go |
| 2.    We will go           | 7.    They will cross                    |
| 3.    He was returning     | 8.    We had undergone                   |
| 4.    You (sg.) approached | 9.    Are you (pl.) going out?           |
| 5.    Go away! (pl.)       | 10.    They will have gone away          |

## 99. **ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus** (to carry, bear)

The verb **ferō** is also irregular in the present tense and must be memorized. The imperfect and future active and the future passive are also given here for convenient reference, but the perfect (**tulī, tulistī, tulit**, etc.) and other tenses can be found in the morphology reference section at back of the book:

### Indicative

	ACTIVE			PASSIVE	
	<i>Present</i>	<i>Imperfect</i>	<i>Future</i>	<i>Present</i>	<i>Future</i>
<i>1st sg.</i>	ferō	ferēbam	feram	feror	ferar
<i>2nd sg.</i>	fers	ferēbās	ferēs	ferris	ferēris
<i>3rd sg.</i>	fert	ferēbat	feret	fertur	ferētur
<i>1st pl.</i>	ferimus	ferēbāmus	ferēmus	ferimur	ferēmur
<i>2nd pl.</i>	fertis	ferēbātis	ferētis	feriminī	ferēminī
<i>3rd pl.</i>	ferunt	ferēbant	ferent	feruntur	ferentur

### Imperatives

<i>2nd sg.</i>	fer (n.b. §42)
<i>2nd pl.</i>	ferite

**Infinitives**

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
<i>Present</i>	ferre	ferrī
<i>Perfect</i>	tulisse	lātus esse
<i>Future</i>	lātūrus esse	

**Participles**

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
<i>Present</i>	ferēns, ferentis	
<i>Perfect</i>		lātus, -a, -um
<i>Future</i>	lātūrus, -a, -um	

**Compounds of ferō**

There are many common compounds of **ferō**. These follow the pattern of forms given above. Note especially the following and their principal parts:

auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātus	to carry away
cōnferō, cōnferre, contulī, collātus	to bring together, compare; contribute
īnferō, īnferre, intulī, illātus	to bring to, introduce
offerō, offerre, obtulī, oblātus	to offer
referō, referre, rettulī, relātus	to carry back, bring back, report

EXERCISE 159. Translate the following into Latin using **ferō** or its compounds, and identify the tense of each form:

- |                                    |                                     |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. They will offer                 | 6. To be introduced                 |
| 2. It is reported                  | 7. They will contribute             |
| 3. She was carried                 | 8. Having been offered (neuter sg.) |
| 4. You (pl.) had been carried away | 9. They will have been compared     |
| 5. I will bear                     | 10. He was reporting                |

EXERCISE 160. Translate each verb form and be ready to identify it by person, number, tense and voice.

- |                 |                  |
|-----------------|------------------|
| 1. adeunt       | 6. auferēs       |
| 2. lātae erātis | 7. abībāmus      |
| 3. inībit       | 8. sustulērunt   |
| 4. fers         | 9. fertur        |
| 5. tuleris      | 10. collāta sunt |

EXERCISE 161 Translate each of the following sentences.

1. Clāmōre sublātō hostēs petīvīmus prīmā lūce.
2. Eōdemque tempore fortēs virī proelium ineunt et multī perīre incipiunt.
3. Flūmen trānsīre cōnābantur, sed amīcīs auxiliū ferre nōn poterant.
4. Scītisne Caesarem Germānīs bellum intulisse?
5. Infēlicēs milītēs domum trāns Graeciam sē cōferunt.
6. Multōs arma ferentēs videō.
7. Lēge carēns cīvītās celeriter perībit, nam bonī cīvēs abibunt.
8. Auxiliō lātō, fēminae liberīque gaudēbant.
9. Ā nūntiō territō malum commūne relātum erat.
10. Omnēs abiimus, turbā clāmōrem tollente.

EXERCISE 162. Translate into Latin.

1. Scared by the shouts, the boys ran into the forest.
2. The soldiers collected all their own weapons after the battle.
3. The unlucky band (of men) was killed when the hostile army arrived.
4. In a few days I will go to Rome.
5. The sailor's wife will return home when the ship departs.
6. Because of the heat, we threw ourselves into that river.
7. The king's servants are carrying fire for their master.
8. About to cross the road, she fell (down).

## READING 27 (*adapted*)

*Ovid, in his Fasti, tells the story of how Ceres' daughter, Persephone, is abducted by Pluto to become his wife and queen of the underworld.*

Terram pulchra Cerēs et multās <b>possidet</b> urbēs,	1
in quibus est cultō <b>fertilis</b> Henna solō.	2
Fīlia Persephonē Cereris, comitāta puellīs,	3
errābat <b>nūdō</b> per sua prāta pede.	4
<b>Valle</b> sub umbrōsā locus est plēnus melilōtō	5
et aliīs flōribus quībus nitēbat humus.	6
Quam simul aspexit, “comitēs, accēdite” dixit	7
“et mēcum plēnōs flōre referte sinūs.”	8
Hanc videt et vīsam patruus <b>vēlōciter</b> aufert,	9
rēgnaque caeruleīs in sua portat equīs.	10
Illa quidem clāmābat, “iō, cārissima māter,	11
auferor!” ipsa suōs abscideratque sinūs.	12
Panditur intereā Dītī via, dum deus ibat	13
in celerī cūrrū virgine perterritā.	14
Attonita est plangōre Cerēs quae vēnerat Hennam.	15
nec mora, “Mē miseram! Fīlia, “ dixit, “ubi es?”	16

## VOCABULARY:

Cerēs, Cereris <i>f.</i>	Ceres, goddess of agriculture	sinus, -ūs <i>m.</i>	fold (of clothing), lap
possideō, -ēre	to hold, possess	patruus, -ī <i>m.</i>	uncle
colō, -ere, coluī, cultus	to till, cultivate	vēlōciter	quickly
fertilis, -e	fertile, productive	caeruleus, -a, -um	dark blue, dark
Henna, -ae <i>f.</i>	Henna - town in Sicily	quidem (adv.)	indeed
solum, -ī <i>n.</i>	ground, soil	cārissimus, -a, -um	dearest
comitātus, -a, -um	accompanied (by)	abscindō, -ere, abscidī, -scīssus	to tear
nūdus, -a, -um	bare	pandō, -ere	to open
prātum, -ī <i>n.</i>	meadow	Dīs, Dītis <i>m.</i>	Pluto, god of the underworld
vallis, -is <i>f.</i>	valley	currus, -ūs <i>m.</i>	chariot
umbrōsus, -a, -um	shaded	perterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itus	to terrify thoroughly
melilōtos, -ī <i>m.</i>	clover	attonitus, -a, -um	stunned
flōs, flōris <i>m.</i>	flower	plangor, -ōris <i>m.</i>	wailing
niteō, -ēre	to be bright	nec mora	supply <i>erat</i>
quam simul	as soon as	mē miseram	accusative is used for an exclamation
aspiciō, -ere, -spexī	to see		
comes, -itis <i>m. or f.</i>	companion		
accēdō, -ere	to come near		

**PRACTICE SENTENCES**

Identify the case and use of the underlined words, then translate.

1. Ūnum hoc sciō, quod fors feret ferēmus aequō animō. (Terence)
2. Ō nāvis, rēferent in mare tē novī flūctūs.  
Ō quid agis? (Horace; *the poet uses a ship metaphor to refer to the troubles besetting the state.*)
3. Quidquid id est, timeō Danāōs et dōna ferentēs. (Vergil; *the priest, Laocoon, tries to warn the Trojans not to accept the Greek horse.*)
4. Ūnus erit quem tū tollēs in caerula caelī templa. (Ennius; *Jupiter foretells to Mars that only one of his sons will be deified*)
5. Hennā tū simulācrum Cereris tollere audēbās,  
Hennā tū dē manū Cereris Victoriam ēripere et  
deam deae detrahere conātus es? (Cicero; *this is part of a speech against Verres, who is accused of stealing sacred statues from the shrine at Henna*)

**VOCABULARY:**

fors, fortis <i>f.</i>	chance, fortune	simulācrum, -ī <i>n.</i>	image, statue
quisquis, quidquid	whoever, whatever	ēripiō, -ere	to snatch
Danaī, -ōrum <i>m.</i>	the Greeks	dētrahō, -ere,	to take away
caerulus, -a, -um	dark blue, dark	-xī, -ctus	



## Chapter 25 Vocabulary

### Verbs

eō, ire, iī <i>or</i> ivī, itūrus	to go
abeō, abīre, abiī, abitūrus	to go away, depart
adeō, adīre, adiī, aditūrus	to go towards, approach
exeō, exīre, exiī, exitūrus	to go out, exit
ineō, inīre, iniī, initūrus	to enter; begin
pereō, perīre, periī, peritūrus	to perish, die
redeō, redīre, rediī <i>or</i> -ivī, reditūrus	to go back, return
subeō, subīre, subiī <i>or</i> -ivī, subitūrus	to go up; to undergo; to approach
trānseō, trānsīre, trānsiī, trānsitūrus	to go across, cross
ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus	to carry, bear, endure; report, say
adferō, adferre, attulī, adlātus	to bring to; cause
auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātus	to carry away, take away
cōnferō, cōnferre, contulī, collātus	to bring together, collect; compare;
sē cōnferre	to proceed, go
īnferō, īnferre, intulī, illātus	to bring in, introduce; inflict
offerō, offerre, obtulī, oblātus	to offer, bring forward
referō, referre, rettulī, relātus	to carry back, bring back, report
tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātus	to lift up, raise; remove, carry off, steal

### Adjectives

aequus, aequa, aequum	even, calm, equal
commūnis, commūne	common, shared; public
īnfēlix, īnfēlicis	unhappy, unlucky



# READING CHAPTER V

## Narrative Reading: Conspirators Betrayed and Arrested Dictionary Practice / Form Identification

### Narrative Reading V

(Adapted from Sallust)

*In 63 B.C. Catiline, a political rival of Cicero, was defeated in the election for consul and planned a conspiracy against the state. He and his conspirators planned revolts in Italy and even attempted to assassinate Cicero in November of that year. Here Sallust tells how Lentulus, a praetor and friend of Catiline, tries to recruit the Allobroges, a Gallic tribe, to the cause. But they betray Catiline to Cicero, leading to the events of the night of December 2 at the Mulvian bridge (about three miles north of the Forum) and their aftermath on the next day.*

Allobrogēs, sicutī Cicerō praecēpit, per Gabinium cēterōs conveniunt.  
ab Lentulō,<sup>1</sup> Cethegō, Statiliō et Cassiō postulant iūs iurandum,<sup>2</sup> quod  
ad cīvēs perferant.<sup>3</sup> cēterī nihil **suspīcantēs** iurant. Lentulus cum eīs T.  
Vulturcium mittit et Vulturciō litterās ad Catilinam dat.

Hīs rēbus ita āctīs, cōstitutā nocte Cicerō per lēgātōs cuncta<sup>4</sup>  
ēdoctus L. Valeriō Flaccō et C. Pomptinō praetōribus imperat, ut in  
ponte Mulviō per insidiās Allobrogum comitātūs dēprehendant.<sup>5</sup>

(continued)

VOCABULARY: words in **bold** are repeated in this narrative

Allobrogēs, -um <i>m.</i> (pl.)	Allobroges	ēdoceō, -ēre, -uī, ēdoctus	to inform thoroughly
sicutī	just as	praetor, -ōris <i>m.</i>	praetor, commander
<b>praecipio, -ere,</b> <b>-cēpī, -ceptus</b>	<b>to order;</b> <b>recommend</b>	pons, pontis <i>m.</i>	bridge
conveniō, -īre, -vēnī	to meet	insidiae, -ārum <i>f.</i> (pl.)	an ambush (sg.)
suspīcor, -ārī, -ātus sum	to suspect	comitātus, -ūs <i>m.</i>	company, associates

Notes: *these phrases use constructions which appear in the chapters indicated*

1. the conspirators included: Lentulus, Gabinius, Cethegus, Statilius, Cassius and Vulturcius
2. iūs iurandum: "that an oath be sworn" (*i.e. written out and signed*)  
Ch. 31 iūrō, -āre = "to swear"
3. quod ... perferant: "which they would take" Ch. 32
4. cuncta: (informed) "of everything"
5. ut ... dēprehendant: "to seize" Ch. 29

### Narrative Reading V (*continued*)

rem omnem aperit, cūius grātiā mittēbantur. illī, hominēs **militārēs**, sine **tumultū** praesidiīs conlocātīs, sicutī praeceptum erat, occultē pontem obsidunt. postquam ad locum lēgātī cum Volturciō vērunt et simul utrimque clāmor exortus est, Gallī cito cognitō cōnsiliō sine morā praetōribus sē trādunt, Volturcius prīmō cohortātus cēterōs gladiō sē ā multitudīne dēfendit, deinde, ubi ā lēgātīs dēsertus est, prius dē salūte suā Pomptinum obtestātus, postrēmō timidus ac vītae diffidēs sēsē praetōribus dedit.

Quibus rēbus cōfectis omnia cito per nūntiōs cōnsulī **dēclārantur**. at illum ingēns cūra atque laetitia simul **occupāvēre**. nam laetābatur intellegēs coniūratiōne patefactā civitatem periculīs ēreptam esse; autem **anxius** erat, in maximō scelere tantīs civibus **dēprehēnsīs**. igitur cōfirmātō animō vocārī ad sēsē iubet Lentulum, Cethegum, Statilium et Gabinium; hī sine morā veniunt. cōnsul Lentulum, quod praetor erat, ipse manū tenēs in senātum perdūcit, reliquōs cum custōdibus in templum Concordiae venīre iubet.

VOCABULARY: *words in bold are repeated in this narrative*

militāris, -e	military	postrēmō (adv.)	finally, last of all
tumultus, -ūs <i>m.</i>	commotion, fuss	timidus, -a, -um	afraid, fearful
praesidium, -ī <i>n.</i>	guard	diffidō, -ere (+ dat.)	to despair (for)
conlocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus	to station, place in position	dēclārō, -āre, -āvī	to declare
occultē (adv.)	secretly	laetitia, -ae <i>f.</i>	joy
obsideō, -ēre, -sēdī	to take up position by	occupō, -āre, -āvī	to occupy
<b>simul (adv.)</b>	<b>at the same time</b>	laetor, -ārī, -ātus sum	to rejoice, be glad
utrimque (adv.)	on both sides	coniūratiō, -iōnis <i>f.</i>	conspiracy
exorior, -īrī, exortus	to rise up	patefaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factus	to bring to light, reveal
<b>cito (adv.)</b>	<b>quickly</b>	ēripiō, -ere, -uī, ēreptus	to rescue, free (from)
prīmō (adv.)	at first, to begin with	anxius, -a, -um	anxious, troubled
cohortor, -ārī, -ātus	to encourage, urge on	dēprehendō, -ere, -dī, -sus	to seize
gladius, -iī <i>m.</i>	sword	cōfirmō, -āre, -āvī	to strengthen
dēfendō, -ere, -dī	to defend	-ātus	
deinde	then	custōs, -ōdis <i>m.</i>	guard
dēsērō, -ere, -uī, -tus	to leave, abandon	Concordia, -ae <i>f.</i>	Concord, Harmony
prius (adv.)	first		where the senate was meeting
sālūs, -ūtis <i>f.</i>	safety		then
obtestor, -ārī, -ātus	to beg (+ acc. of the person appealed to)		

*Postscript:* Sallust continues his account to describe how, in the Senate meeting, Volturcius is promised a pardon in return for informing on the other conspirators. The Gauls corroborate his account, and Lentulus is forced to resign his office of praetor. The Senate then votes that each of the conspirators be released in the custody of a citizen who will guarantee his appearance at trial (the Roman equivalent of being released on bail). At their trial before the Senate, Caesar argues for confiscating the conspirators' property and imprisoning them outside of Rome. Cato, however, argues that for their plot against the state they be put to death. His view wins the day and the conspirators are executed. Catiline, meanwhile, gathers his forces to attack; he is ultimately defeated and dies in battle.

### Dictionary Practice / Form Identification

Identify the words below based on the dictionary entries given. Be sure to indicate the **entry from which each is taken**, and the **part of speech** and to *give all possibilities for ambiguous forms*.

For **nouns** and **adjectives**: give case, number, and gender

For **verbs**: give person, number, tense, voice and mood

if infinitive, give tense and voice

if participle, give case, number, gender, tense and voice

- A. volātus, volātūs, m: flight
- B. volō, volāre, volāvī: to fly
- C. volō, velle, voluī: to wish
- D. volo, volōnis, m.: volunteer

	Entry	Part of Speech	Form ID
1. volantī			
2. voluerās			
3. volātis			
4. volātibus			
5. volēns			
6. volēbat			
7. volat			
8. volāvēre			
9. volātūs			
10. volēbam			
11. volōnēs			
12. volam			
13. volāveram			
14. volōnum			
15. voluisse			

**Word Building - Families (again)**

Guess the meaning of each word below along with the gender of the nouns, and list at least one word you have already learned that is related to it:

*Example:* iūdex, iūdicis *m.*

“judge”: iūs, iūris *n.* (justice);  
iūdicō, iūdicāre (to judge)

- |                                   |                                 |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. spectāculum, spectāculī, _____ | 5. naufragium, naufragiī, _____ |
| 2. inimīcitia, inimīcitiae, _____ | 6. iūssum, iūssī, _____         |
| 3. aptō, aptāre                   | 7. ūtilitās, ūtilitātis, _____  |
| 4. nāvālis, nāvāle                | 8. vīsus, vīsus, _____          |

# CHAPTER 26

## Comparison of Adjectives Comparison of Adverbs

So far most of the adjectives you have learned have been in the positive degree (“big”). This chapter introduces forms of the comparative (“bigger”) and superlative (“biggest”) degrees. It also introduces the comparative and superlative forms of adverbs.

### 100. Comparison of Adjectives

#### Positive:

This is the form you learned in Chapters 5 (first and second declension adjectives) and 12 (third declension adjectives). The stem of a Latin adjective can be found by dropping the genitive singular ending.

#### Comparative:

In English, we usually form the comparative of an adjective by adding **-er** to its positive stem, or by using *more* (or *rather*) with the positive form: *dearer*, *more dear*, *rather dear*

In Latin, most adjectives form the comparative by adding **-ior**, **-ius** to their stem. The comparative *always* uses third declension endings (see §101 below).

#### Superlative:

In English, we usually form the superlative of an adjective by adding **-est** to its stem, or by using *most* (or *very*) with the positive form: *dearest*, *most dear*, *very dear*

In Latin, most adjectives form the superlative by adding **-issim-** to the stem, followed by first and second declension endings. Superlatives decline like **bonus**, **bona**, **bonum** (§25).

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
cārus, cāra, cārum (dear)	cārior, cārius (dearer)	cāriissimus, cāriissima, cāriissimum (dearest)
dignus, digna, dignum (worthy)	dignior, dignius (more worthy)	dignissimus, dignissima, dignissimum (most worthy)

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
laetus, laeta, laetum (happy)	laetior, laetius (happier)	laetissimus, -a, -um (happiest)
tristis, triste (sad)	tristior, tristius (sadder)	tristissimus, -a, -um (saddest)
sapiēns, sapientis (wise)	sapientior, sapientius (wiser)	sapientissimus, -a, -um (wisest)

EXERCISE 163. Using the models above, form the comparative and superlative of the following adjectives.

- |                          |                       |
|--------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. ferus, fera, ferum    | 5. potēns, potentis   |
| 2. fortis, forte         | 6. novus, nova, novum |
| 3. plēnus, plēna, plēnum | 7. dulcis, dulce      |
| 4. ūtilis, ūtile         | 8. ingēns, ingentis   |

### Regular Exceptions:

- Adjectives in **-er** form the **superlative** by adding **-rimus (-a, -um)** to the nom. sg., m. of the positive.
- Four common adjectives in **-lis** form the **superlative** by adding **-limus (-a, -um)** to the stem of the positive.

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
miser, misera, miserum	miserior, miserius	miserrimus, -a, -um
pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum	pulchrior, pulchrius	pulcherrimus, -a, -um
ācer, ācris, ācre	ācrior, ācrius	ācerrimus, -a, -um
facilis, facile	facilior, facilius	facillimus, -a, -um
difficilis, difficile	difficilior, difficilius	difficillimus, -a, -um
similis, simile	similior, similius	simillimus, -a, -um
dissimilis, dissimile	dissimilior, -ius	dissimillimus, -a, -um

## 101. Declension of Comparatives

Comparatives follow the declension of consonant-stem nouns which you learned in Chapter 7 (§35). This means that, unlike third declension adjectives in the positive, they have **-e** (not **-ī**) in the ablative singular, and lack the **-ī** in genitive plural and nom./acc. pl. neuter.

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	<i>m. &amp; f.</i>	<i>neuter</i>	<i>m. &amp; f.</i>	<i>neuter</i>
<i>Nominative</i>	cārior	cārius	cāriōrēs	cāriōra
<i>Genitive</i>	cāriōris	cāriōris	cāriōrum	cāriōrum
<i>Dative</i>	cāriōrī	cāriōrī	cāriōribus	cāriōribus
<i>Accusative</i>	cāriōrem	cārius	cāriōrēs	cāriōra
<i>Ablative</i>	cāriōre	cāriōre	cāriōribus	cāriōribus



## 102. Irregular Comparison

As in English, some Latin adjectives have irregular comparative and superlative forms. Because these forms are not predictable, they must be memorized carefully.

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
bonus, -a, -um (good)	melior, melius (better)	optimus, -a, -um (best)
magnus, -a, -um (big)	māior, māius (bigger)	maximus, -a, -um (biggest)
malus, -a, -um (bad)	pēior, pēius (worse)	pessimus, -a, -um (worst)
multus, -a, -um (much; many)	plūs, plūris* (more)	plūrimus, -a, -um (most)
parvus, -a, -um (small)	minor, minus (smaller, less)	minimus, -a, -um (smallest, least)
superus, -a, -um (upper)	superior, superius (higher)	summus, -a, -um (highest, furthest; top of) suprēmus, -a, -um (highest, last)

**\*Note:** **plūs, plūris** in the singular is a neuter noun and is often followed by a partitive genitive:

**plūs pecūniae** more money (*literally*: “more of money”)

In the plural **plūrēs, plūra** is an adjective:

**plūrēs milītes** more soldiers

EXERCISE 164. Identify the following adjectives by degree, case, number and gender. Include all possibilities for ambiguous forms. Then translate each form.

*Example:*    **sapientissimum**    superlative, acc. sg. m. or nom./acc. sg. n.,  
“wisest, very wise”

- |                |                |
|----------------|----------------|
| 1. dulcissimā  | 8. plūrimīs    |
| 2. māius       | 9. meliōre     |
| 3. clārissimōs | 10. sacerrima  |
| 4. longior     | 11. fortēs     |
| 5. summī       | 12. potentiōra |
| 6. celerrimus  | 13. pēiōrum    |
| 7. fēliciōrem  | 14. simillimō  |

### 103. Comparison with *quam* and Ablative of Comparison

When you see a comparative form, you should be ready to expect a comparison between two items. Latin can express this comparison in two different ways:

- **quam — quam** (*than*) can be used as a connector linking the two items being compared. The connected items are in the same case.  
Pater sapientior est **quam** filius.                      The father is wiser **than** (his) **son**.  
Is filius est hominis clāriōris **quam** tibi.              He is the son of a man more famous **than** you.
- **ablative of comparison** — the ablative (*than*) can be used instead of **quam** when the first item is in the nominative or accusative case.  
Pater sapientior est **filio**.                      The father is wiser **than** (his) **son**.  
Haec via brevior erit **illā**.                      This path will be shorter than **that** (one).

EXERCISE 165. Translate each of the following using both comparative constructions where applicable.

1. He is stronger than she.
2. These things were more serious than those.
3. He thinks bigger ships are better than smaller ones.
4. Most of the angry citizens opposed the very shameful leader.
5. Some kings are stronger than others.
6. They carried away the most beautiful gold.

### 104. Comparison of Adverbs

The comparison of adverbs follows the same pattern as that of the adjectives to which they are related.

#### Positive:

Many adverbs are formed from adjectives as follows:

1st and 2nd declension adjectives add **–ē** to their stem (**cārus** > **cārē**)

3rd declension adjectives add **–(i)ter** to their stem (**celeris** > **celeriter**;  
**sapiēns** > **sapienter**)

The positive form of other adverbs must simply be memorized.

**Comparative** adverbs end in **–ius**. They are the same as the accusative singular neuter form of the comparative adjective.

**Superlative** adverbs are formed by replacing the superlative adjective endings with **–ē**.

The following chart illustrates sample adverb forms, including some common irregular ones.

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
celeriter (quickly)	celerius (more quickly)	celerrimē (most quickly)
fortiter (bravely)	fortius (more bravely)	fortissimē (most bravely)
longē (far)	longius (farther)	longissimē (farthest)
bene (well)	melius (better)	optimē (best)
male (badly)	pēius (worse)	pessimē (worst)
multum (much)	plūs (more - quantity)	plūrimum (most, very much)
magnopere (greatly)	magis (more - quality)	maximē (most, especially)
parum (little)	minus (less)	minimē (least)

**Quam** + the **superlative** of either an adjective or an adverb indicates the greatest possible degree:

**quam laetissimus** = *as happy as possible*

**quam celerrimē** = *as quickly as possible*.

EXERCISE 166. Translate each of the following sentences.

1. Erantne lēgēs Rōmānae iūstiōrēs lēgibus Graecīs?
2. Sapiēns ōlim dīxit nihil esse vērītātis lūce dulcius.
3. Numquam rēs pūblica nec māior nec sanctior fuit.
4. Hoc loquī difficillimum mihi est.
5. Contrā commūne perīculum dux noster fortissimus omnium erat.
6. Bellō inceptō, Caesar cōpiās ex Ītaliā in Galliam celerrimē dūxit.
7. Saepe canēs melius vidēre videntur quam hominēs.
8. Rēgīna amōris causā infēlicissima mortua est.
9. Rōmānī numquam pulchrius templum viderant.
10. Unō diē fessissimus agricola cum coniuge longius quam suus frāter ingressus est.

## EXERCISE 167. Translate into Latin.

1. The longest journey begins with one step.
2. My love is deeper than the deepest sea.
3. Are two heads better than one in a trial?
4. That poet was the ugliest of all men, but he used to sing with the sweetest words.
5. That is easier to say than to do.
6. The soldiers ought to wage war as fiercely as possible.
7. When the battle was made, the enemy were fighting more with deceit than force.
8. For the first time the fault is mine and I am very sad.
9. We saw the dogs running very quickly.
10. Strength is useful, but wisdom is more profitable.

## READING 28

*Cicero writes a remorseful letter from exile to his beloved wife, Terentia.*

Accēpī ab Aristocritō trēs epistulās, quās ego lacrimīs prope dēlēvī. cōnficior enim maerōre, mea Terentia, nec meae mē miseriae magis excruciant quam tuae vestraeque. Ego autem hōc miserior sum quam tū, quae es miserrima, quod ipsa **calamitās commūnis** est utrīusque nostrum, sed culpa mea propria est. Meum fuit officium vel lēgatiōne vitāre perīculum vel **diligentiā** et cōpiīs resistere vel cādere fortiter. Hōc miserius, turpius, indīgnius nōbīs nihil fuit. ... Tū modo ad mē omnia dīligentissimē scribe; etsī magis iam rem quam litterās debeō spectāre. Curā et tibi persuadē, mihi tē cārius nihil esse nec umquam fuisse. Valē, mea Terentia, quam egō vidēre videor itaque dēbilitor lacrimīs. Valē.

## VOCABULARY:

Aristocritus, -ī <i>m.</i>	Aristocritus, a friend of Cicero	diligentia, -ae <i>f.</i>	careful management
prope (adv.)	nearly	cōpiās	here =
maeror, maerōris <i>m.</i>	grief, sorrow		“resources”
miseria, -ae <i>f.</i>	misery, distress	expectō, -āre	to hope for
excruciō, -āre	to torture	diligenter (adv.)	carefully, in detail
calamitās, -tātis <i>f.</i>	disaster, damage		
commūnis, -e	shared, common	etsī (conj.)	although
proprius, -ia, -ium	one’s own	itaque	and so
officium, -iī <i>n.</i>	duty	dēbilitō, -āre	to disable, weaken
vel ... vel ... vel	either ... or ... or		
lēgatiō, -iōnis <i>f.</i>	post of ambassador		

## PRACTICE SENTENCES

Identify the case and use of the underlined words, then translate.

1. Patria mihi vītā meā est cārior. (Cicero - adapted)
2. Quaedam **remedia** graviōra ipsīs periculīs sunt. (Seneca)
3. Eum populus Rōmānus meliōrem virum quam histriōnem esse arbitrātur (Cicero - adapted; *speaking of the famous actor, Quintus Roscius*)
4. Homō meā sententiā prūdentissimus Caecina, tamen in hāc rē plūs mihi animī quam cōsiliū vidētur habuisse. (Cicero; *Caecina tried to confront an armed band of men to recover his property*)
5. Rēx erat Aenēās nōbīs, quō iūstior alter nec pietāte fuit, nec bellō māior et armīs. (Vergil; *a Trojan speaks about his leader, whom he fears is dead*)
6. “Quae mea culpa tuam,” dīxit “cārissime, mentem vertit?” (Ovid; *a wife is upset when her husband plans a long journey*)
7. Tibi graviōrem dolōrem patruī tuī mors attulit quam C. Gracchō frātris, et tibi acerbior eius patruī mors est quem numquam vīdistī quam illī eius frātris quīcum concordissimē vīxerat. (Cicero; *ridiculing an opponent in court by comparing him to a famous Roman leader from the past*)
8. In bonā uxōre...maior laus,...in malā plūs culpae est. (Tacitus; *giving his opinion about wives*)

## VOCABULARY:

remedium, -iī *n.*

histriō, -iōnis *m.*

sententia, -ae *f.*

Caecina, -ae *m.*

pietās, -tātis *f.*

remedy, cure

actor

opinion

Caecina (a man involved in a lawsuit over land)

piety — *abl. of specification/ respect (§57)*

patruus, -ī *m.*

acerbus, -a, -um

C. Gracchus

quīcum (abl. + cum)

concorditer

uncle

painful, bitter

Gaius Gracchus

“with whom”

amicably, harmoniously

## Chapter 26 Vocabulary

### Nouns

amor, amōris <i>m.</i>	love
canis, canis <i>m. or f.</i>	dog
culpa, culpae <i>f.</i>	fault, blame

### Verbs

dēleō, dēlēre, dēlēvī, dēlētus	to destroy; blot out
resistō, resistere, restitī ( <i>often</i> + dat.)	to resist, oppose, make a stand

### Adjectives

gravis, grave	heavy; serious, important; difficult
iūstus, iūsta, iūstum	just, fair
sanctus, sancta, sanctum	sacred; virtuous, blameless
turpis, turpe	shameful, base; ugly, foul
uterque, utraque, utrumque	both; each (of two)
ūtilis, ūtile	useful, profitable
*chart on page 207	

### Adverbs

longē	far, by far
modo	only; at all
numquam	never
prīmō	at first
primum	first, for the first time

### Conjunction

quam	than (**cf. Ch. 21)
------	---------------------

# CHAPTER 27

## Present and Perfect Active Subjunctive (all Conjugations)

### Subjunctive of *sum*

### Independent Uses of the Subjunctive

#### Exhortation / Command

#### Wish

#### Doubt

So far all the finite verbs you have learned have been in the indicative or imperative mood. This chapter introduces two tenses of the third mood, the **subjunctive**, in the active voice of all conjugations, including the irregular verb **sum**. It also introduces some common uses of the subjunctive as a main verb. Unlike the indicative, which indicates real or factual information, the subjunctive often suggests doubt, possibility or anticipated action.

**A note on the subjunctive in English:** Use of the subjunctive in English has gradually decreased over the years so that it now appears only in a few expressions. Among these are:

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| • impossible wishes                                      | I wish he <b>were</b> here (but he is not).<br>I wish I <b>were</b> in Italy.                |
| • contrary to fact statements                            | If I <b>were</b> rich, I would feed the hungry.<br>She acts as if she <b>were</b> my mother! |
| • clauses after certain verbs<br>of asking, recommending | I suggest that <b>he come</b> back soon.<br>He demanded that she <b>leave</b> .              |

Even in some of the above examples the indicative replaces the subjunctive in common speech. Latin uses the subjunctive in several different kinds of expressions, but note that the English translation of these does not necessarily use an English subjunctive.

## 105. Present Active Subjunctive

The **present subjunctive** uses the same personal endings as the indicative (**-m** for **-ō** in first sg.), but can be recognized by a change in the stem vowel: the signal for the subjunctive is **-ā-** in all conjugations except the first, where (because the indicative already has an **-a-**) it is an **-ē-**. Note that the long vowel is shortened (as always) before the first sg. and both third person endings.

	1ST CONJ. (e)	2ND CONJ. (ea)	3RD CONJ. (a)	3RD CONJ. -iō (ia)	4TH CONJ. (ia)
<i>1st sg.</i>	amem	doceam	regam	capiam	audiam
<i>2nd sg.</i>	amēs	doceās	regās	capiās	audiās
<i>3rd sg.</i>	amet	doceat	regat	capiat	audiat
<i>1st pl.</i>	amēmus	doceāmus	regāmus	capiāmus	audiāmus
<i>2nd pl.</i>	amētis	doceātis	regātis	capiātis	audiātis
<i>3rd pl.</i>	ament	doceant	regant	capiant	audiant

There are many mnemonic devices for remembering the vowels for each conjugation. A common one is the following sentence:

first      second      third      third -iō & fourth  
 Clem    steams    clams in    Siam.

EXERCISE 168. Following the model verbs just given, conjugate **laudō**, **moneō** and **cernō** in the present active subjunctive, singular and plural.

EXERCISE 169. Identify the conjugation and then transform each of the following verbs from indicative to subjunctive.

- |               |              |
|---------------|--------------|
| 1. rogant     | 8. spectās   |
| 2. patēs      | 9. dormīmus  |
| 3. resistunt  | 10. tacent   |
| 4. vulnerāmus | 11. cadit    |
| 5. audit      | 12. vetō     |
| 6. ārdētis    | 13. trahitis |
| 7. rapiō      | 14. cernis   |

## 106. Perfect Active Subjunctive

The **perfect active subjunctive** adds **-eri-** to the perfect stem of the third principal part and uses the same personal endings as the present subjunctive. Note that these forms look like the future perfect indicative except in the first sg.. Context will usually clarify which mood is intended.

	1ST CONJ.	2ND CONJ.	3RD CONJ.	4TH CONJ.
<i>1st sg.</i>	amā <u>ver</u> im	docu <u>er</u> im	rē <u>xer</u> im	audī <u>ver</u> im
<i>2nd sg.</i>	amā <u>ver</u> is	docu <u>er</u> is	rē <u>xer</u> is	audī <u>ver</u> is
<i>3rd sg.</i>	amā <u>ver</u> it	docu <u>er</u> it	rē <u>xer</u> it	audī <u>ver</u> it
<i>1st pl.</i>	amā <u>ver</u> imus	docu <u>er</u> imus	rē <u>xer</u> imus	audī <u>ver</u> imus
<i>2nd pl.</i>	amā <u>ver</u> itis	docu <u>er</u> itis	rē <u>xer</u> itis	audī <u>ver</u> itis
<i>3rd pl.</i>	amā <u>ver</u> int	docu <u>er</u> int	rē <u>xer</u> int	audī <u>ver</u> int

EXERCISE 170. Following the model verbs above, conjugate **spērō**, **moneō** and **dormiō** in the perfect active subjunctive, singular and plural.



EXERCISE 171. Transform each of the following verbs from indicative to subjunctive.

- |                  |             |
|------------------|-------------|
| 1. vulnerāvistis | 5. sēnsimus |
| 2. impedivērunt  | 6. nocuistī |
| 3. rēxistī       | 7. ōrāvit   |
| 4. advēnit       | 8. mānsī    |

EXERCISE 172. Identify each of the following verbs by person, number, tense and mood. Include all possibilities for any ambiguous forms.

- |              |                |
|--------------|----------------|
| 1. errat     | 10. clāment    |
| 2. iactēs    | 11. laudāveris |
| 3. audeāmus  | 12. scrībit    |
| 4. adveniunt | 13. resistant  |
| 5. agam      | 14. studētis   |
| 6. docuerō   | 15. peream     |
| 7. sciat     | 16. advēnērunt |
| 8. ēgeram    | 17. imperētis  |
| 9. dēlent    | 18. vīcerint   |

### 107. Subjunctive of **sum**

The subjunctive of **sum** is signalled by **-ī-** in the present, and is regular in the perfect:

	PRESENT		PERFECT	
	<i>sg.</i>	<i>pl.</i>	<i>sg.</i>	<i>pl.</i>
<i>1st</i>	<b>sīm</b>	<b>sīmus</b>	<b>fuerim</b>	<b>fuerīmus</b>
<i>2nd</i>	<b>sīs</b>	<b>sītis</b>	<b>fuerīs</b>	<b>fuerītis</b>
<i>3rd</i>	<b>sit</b>	<b>sint</b>	<b>fuerit</b>	<b>fuerint</b>

See the Morphology Reference Section for subjunctive forms of **volō**, **eō** and other irregular verbs (pp. 294-295).

EXERCISE 173. Identify each of the following verb forms by person, number, tense and mood and translate the indicative forms.

- |              |              |
|--------------|--------------|
| 1. adest     | 5. absint    |
| 2. adeunt    | 6. adfuērunt |
| 3. redīverim | 7. pereās    |
| 4. eātis     | 8. velit     |

## 108. Independent Uses of the Subjunctive

While the indicative mood is used to give or get factual information, the subjunctive is used to convey the opinion or feeling of the speaker (writer). It has a variety of different uses as an independent (main) verb in Latin, but three common uses are:

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1) to urge or demand an action                   | Let's get pizza! Let them eat cake!                     |
| 2) to wish for something                         | I wish he would come! (or)<br>Would that he might come! |
| 3) to ask advice or<br>express surprise or doubt | What should I do?<br>Who would have thought it?         |

These uses of the subjunctive are referred to by different terms in different grammars:

- |  |                                    |
|--|------------------------------------|
| 1) <b>hortatory</b> - always first person (usually plural); negative is <b>nē</b> = <b>exhortation</b> |                                    |
| In urbem <b>eāmus</b> .  | Let us (Let's) go into the city.   |
| <b>Nē dēspērēmus</b> .   | Let us not despair.                |
| 2) <b>jussive</b> - usually third person (sg. or pl.); negative is <b>nē</b> = <b>command</b>          |                                    |
| Omnēs cīvēs <b>veniant</b> .   | Let all the citizens come.         |
| <b>Nē domum redeat</b> .   | Let him not return home.           |
| 3) <b>optative</b> - often accompanied by <b>utinam</b> ; negative is <b>nē</b> = <b>wish</b>          |                                    |
| Utinam <b>fugiat</b> hostēs!   | I hope he will escape the enemy!   |
| <b>Nē ille pereat</b> !  | May he not die!                    |
| Omnēs laetī <b>sint</b> !  | If only all people would be happy! |

A present tense signals that the wish is possible; an imperfect or pluperfect (§112) that it is/was not accomplished. The perfect occurs for wishes only in archaic texts.

- |   |                               |
|---|-------------------------------|
| 4) <b>deliberative</b> - expressed as a question; negative is <b>nōn</b> = <b>doubt / indignation</b> |                               |
| Quid <b>scrībam</b> ?   | What should I write?          |
| Quis <b>temperet</b> ā lacrimīs?  | Who could refrain from tears? |

Often a so-called “deliberative question” isn't so much a question which expects an answer as it is a rhetorical expression or an exclamation expressing doubt or disbelief.

EXERCISE 174. Identify the following English examples as **exhortation**, **command**, **wish** or **deliberative question**. (Do *not* translate these into Latin.)

- |                          |                                   |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. Let's meet at noon.   | 4. Let him try to deny his guilt. |
| 2. What am I to do?      | 5. Would that he is innocent.     |
| 3. May they return soon! | 6. Who would believe it?          |

EXERCISE 175. Translate each of the following and identify the use of the subjunctive. Be ready to say how you decided on the use you identify.

- |                            |                              |
|----------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. His celerius serviāmus. | 6. Nē morī timeant.          |
| 2. Diū vivās flōreāsque.   | 7. Dicāmus an taceāmus?      |
| 3. Quid nunc agam?         | 8. Omnēs gaudeāmus.          |
| 4. Utinam ea redeat.       | 9. Illud nē fēceris.         |
| 5. Sit.                    | 10. Utinam exercitus veniat. |

EXERCISE 176. Translate each of the following sentences.

- Haec dōna ad templa deōrum portēmus.
- Ille rēx suōs populōs iūstissimē semper regat.
- Utinam quī bonus rēctusque est flōreat.
- Nē putent tē reliquīs aegriōrem esse.
- Quis eum cognōscat post decem annōs?
- Rōmam nostrīs cum amīcīs eāmus.
- Utinam beātam vītā agās et omnia mala fugiās.
- Nē illa faciat; nam plūrimī cīvium nōn vōlunt.

EXERCISE 177. Translate into Latin.

- Let us always fight very fiercely on behalf of our country.
- I wish the citizens would hear many good things about the new consuls.
- Let him live; for he was captured trying to save the children.
- What should I do?
- I wish our soldiers would conquer the enemy more quickly!
- After the war is finished, let us thank Caesar.
- Should we sail in a few days or begin to march today?
- May fortune help the brave!

## READING 29

*Cicero exhorts his fellow citizens to live a noble life and defend the state against evil.*

Amēmus patriam, pāreāmus senātuī, cōsulāmus bonīs; **praesentis** fructūs neglegāmus, **posteritātis** glōriae serviāmus; id esse optimum putēmus quod erit rēctissimum; spērēmus quae volumus, sed quod acciderit ferāmus; cōgitēmus dēnique corpus virōrum fortium, magnōrum hominum esse mortāle, animī vērō mōtūs et virtūtis glōriam sempiternam.

### VOCABULARY:

cōsulō,	to look after,	praesēns, -entis	present, immediate
-ere (+ dat.)	consult the	posteritās, -tātis f.	posterity
	interests of	sempiternam	everlasting

## READING 30

*Ovid tells the end of the story of Daedalus and Icarus (cf. Ch. 24, Practice Sentence 6). Daedalus invented wings, constructed with wax and feathers, so that he and his young son, Icarus, could escape the island of Crete by flying away. Despite his father's warnings, Icarus flew too close to the sun, whose heat had a predictable effect on the wax holding the wings together....*

tābuerant cērae: **nudōs** quatit ille lacertōs,  
 rēmigiōque carēns nōn ūllās percipit aurās,  
 ōraque caeruleā patrium clāmantia nōmen  
 excipiuntur aquā, quae nōmen trāxit ab illō.  
 at pater infēlīx, nec iam pater, “Icare,” dīxit,  
 “Icare,” dīxit, “ubi es? quā tē **regiōne** requīram?”  
 “Icare,” dīcēbat: pennās aspexit in undīs  
 dēvōvitque suās artēs corpusque sepulcrō  
 condidit, et tellūs ā nōmine dicta sepultī.

## VOCABULARY:

(note the Latin uses plural for singular (and vice versa) in several places here)

tābescō, -ere, -uī	to melt	regiō, -iōnis <i>f.</i>	direction, region
cēra, -ae <i>f.</i>	wax	requīrō, -ere	to look for,
nūdus, -a, -um	bare		search for
quatiō, -ere	to shake; “flap” (as with wings)	penna, -ae <i>f.</i>	feather
lacertus, -ī <i>m.</i>	arm	aspiciō, -ere, -exī	to catch sight of
rēmigium, -ī <i>n.</i>	“wings”	dēvoveō, -ēre, -ōvī	to curse
percipiō, -ere, -cēpī	to get hold of	sepulcrum, -ī <i>n.</i>	grave, tomb
caeruleus, -a, -um	dark blue	condō, -ere, -didī	to bury
patrius, -a, -um	of a father, father’s	dicta (est)	third sg. perfect pass.
excipiō, -ere, -cēpī	to catch, receive	sepeliō, -īre, -iī, -ultus	to bury

## PRACTICE SENTENCES

Identify the form and use of each subjunctive verb and translate.

1. Vivāmus, mea Lesbia, atque amēmus,  
**rūmōrēs**que senum **sevērīōrum**  
omnēs ūnūs aestimēmus assis. (Catullus; *these lines are addressed to his adulterous lover*)
2. Quid ego faciam? Maneam an abeam? (Plautus)
3. Valeant cīvēs meī! sint incolumēs, sint flōrentes,  
sint beātī! stet haec urbs praeclāra! (Cicero; *quoting Milo while defending him*)
4. Commūnis libertātis causā arma capiant. (Caesar - adapted)
5. Sit tibi terra levis. (Traditional epitaph)
6. Quis genus Aeneadum, quis Trōiae nesciat  
urbem? (Vergil; *Dido is speaking*)
7. Quī beneficium dedit, taceat; narret quī accēpit. (Seneca)
8. Commūnem hunc **ergō** populum paribusque  
regāmus **auspiciīs**. (Vergil; *Juno proposes to Venus that they unite the Carthaginians and Trojans*)
9. Caveat ēmptor. (Justinian)

## VOCABULARY:

rūmor, -ōris <i>m.</i>	rumor, public opinion	Aeneadae, -ārum <i>m.</i> (pl.)	followers of Aeneas
sevērus, -a, -um	severe, stern	beneficium, -iī <i>n.</i>	favor, kindness
aestimō, -āre, -āvi	to value, count as worth (+ gen.)	ergō	therefore
as, assis <i>m.</i>	as; a copper coin roughly = "penny"	auspiciū, -iī <i>n.</i>	auspices, power
incolumis, -e	safe, unharmed	caveō, -ēre	to beware
praeclārus, -a, -um	glorious, distinguished	ēmptor, -ōris <i>m.</i>	buyer

## Chapter 27 Vocabulary

### Nouns

aura, aurae <i>f.</i>	breeze; air
fructus, fructūs <i>m.</i>	fruit, enjoyment; profit
glōria, glōriae <i>f.</i>	glory, fame; ambition, boasting
mōtus, mōtūs <i>m.</i>	emotion, impulse; movement
tellūs, tellūris <i>f.</i>	the earth; land

### Verbs

accidō, accidere, accidī	to fall at <i>or</i> near; happen
adsum, adesse, adfuī	to be present, be near
dēspērō, dēspērāre, dēspērāvī, dēspērātus	to despair
flōreō, flōrēre, flōruī	to bloom; prosper, flourish
hortor, hortārī, hortātus sum	to urge, encourage
neglegō, neglegere, neglēxī, neglēctus	to ignore, neglect
temperō, temperāre, temperāvī, temperātus	to blend; govern; refrain, be moderate

### Adjectives

beātus, beāta, beātum	happy, blessed; prosperous
rēctus, rēcta, rēctum	straight, upright; right; virtuous, honest

### Conjunctions

an	or
at	but; at least; then

### Adverbs

dēnique	finally, at last; in short; in fact
nē	not (used with subjunctive and sometimes with imperative)
quidem	indeed, certainly, in fact
nē ... quidem	not ... even
utinam	<i>signals a wish</i> ; if only, would that
vērō	in fact, indeed

# CHAPTER 28

## Imperfect and Pluperfect Active Subjunctive (all Conjugations)

### Use of Tenses in the Subjunctive

### Dependent Uses of the Subjunctive (Adverbial Clauses)

#### Purpose

#### Result

#### Circumstance, Cause, Concession

This chapter introduces the last two tenses of the subjunctive, in the active voice of all conjugations, including the irregular verb **sum**. There is no future or future perfect subjunctive. It also introduces several uses of the subjunctive in dependent clauses, and discusses how the four tenses of the subjunctive (present, imperfect, perfect, pluperfect) are used.

## 109. Imperfect Active Subjunctive

The **imperfect subjunctive** looks like the present active infinitive (second principal part, **-re**) with the regular personal endings added. Note that the **-e-** is short (as always) before the first sg. and both third person endings, but otherwise long.

	1ST CONJ.	2ND CONJ.	3RD CONJ.	3RD CONJ. -iō	4TH CONJ.
<i>1st sg.</i>	amārem	docērem	regerem	caperem	audīrem
<i>2nd sg.</i>	amārēs	docērēs	regerēs	caperēs	audirēs
<i>3rd sg.</i>	amāret	docēret	regeret	caperet	audiret
<i>1st pl.</i>	amārēmus	docērēmus	regerēmus	caperēmus	audirēmus
<i>2nd pl.</i>	amārētis	docērētis	regerētis	caperētis	audirētis
<i>3rd pl.</i>	amārent	docērent	regerent	caperent	audirent

EXERCISE 178. Following the model verbs above, conjugate **vetō**, **taceō** and **dīscō** in the imperfect active subjunctive, singular and plural.

## 110. Pluperfect Active Subjunctive

The pluperfect active subjunctive adds **-isse-** to the perfect stem of the third principal part and uses the same endings as the present subjunctive. Note that the **-e-** is short (as always) before the first sg. and both third person endings, but otherwise long.

	1ST CONJ.	2ND CONJ.	3RD CONJ.	4TH CONJ.
<i>1st sg.</i>	amāv <b>issem</b>	docu <b>issem</b>	rēx <b>issem</b>	audīv <b>issem</b>
<i>2nd sg.</i>	amāv <b>issēs</b>	docu <b>issēs</b>	rēx <b>issēs</b>	audīv <b>issēs</b>
<i>3rd sg.</i>	amāv <b>isset</b>	docu <b>isset</b>	rēx <b>isset</b>	audīv <b>isset</b>
<i>1st pl.</i>	amāv <b>issēm</b> us	docu <b>issēm</b> us	rēx <b>issēm</b> us	audīv <b>issēm</b> us
<i>2nd pl.</i>	amāv <b>issēt</b> is	docu <b>issēt</b> is	rēx <b>issēt</b> is	audīv <b>issēt</b> is
<i>3rd pl.</i>	amāv <b>issent</b>	docu <b>issent</b>	rēx <b>issent</b>	audīv <b>issent</b>

EXERCISE 179. Following the model verbs above, conjugate **nuntiō**, **iubeō** and **aperiō** in the pluperfect active subjunctive, singular and plural.

## 111. Subjunctive of sum

The subjunctive of **sum** is regular in the imperfect and the pluperfect:

	IMPERFECT		PLUPERFECT	
	<i>sg.</i>	<i>pl.</i>	<i>sg.</i>	<i>pl.</i>
<i>First</i>	<b>essem</b>	<b>essēm</b> us	<b>fuissem</b>	<b>fuissem</b> us
<i>Second</i>	<b>essēs</b>	<b>essēt</b> is	<b>fuissets</b>	<b>fuisset</b> is
<i>Third</i>	<b>esset</b>	<b>essent</b>	<b>fuisset</b>	<b>fuisset</b> is

EXERCISE 180. Identify each of the following verbs by person, number, tense and mood. Include all possibilities for any ambiguous forms.

- |             |                |               |
|-------------|----------------|---------------|
| 1. vēnissēs | 6. sītis       | 11. trāderis  |
| 2. dent     | 7. portārēmus  | 12. ēgit      |
| 3. steterat | 8. posuerō     | 13. accīdant  |
| 4. mīserint | 9. ferrēmus    | 14. adfuistis |
| 5. moneātis | 10. trādideris | 15. adesset   |



## 112. Tenses in Independent Uses of the Subjunctive

As you saw in the last chapter, the present tense is much more common than the perfect in the independent uses of the subjunctive. Similarly, the imperfect is more common than the pluperfect in these uses. The following chart is provided as a summary of the most common tense uses; if no example is given, the tense is not commonly used for that independent use. *This chart is for reference only and need not be memorized!*

Sample verb: **eō, īre, īi, itūrus** to go

	Present	Imperfect	Perfect	Pluperfect
HORTATORY	<b>eāmus.</b> Let's go.			
JUSSIVE  Prohibition	<b>eat.</b> Let him go.	<b>īret.</b> He should have gone.	<b>nē īerīs.</b> Don't go.	
OPTATIVE	<b>(utinam) eant.</b> I wish they would go (in the future).	<b>(utinam) īrent.</b> I wish they were going (now).		<b>(utinam) īssent.</b> I wish they had gone (in the past).
DELIBERATIVE	<b>eam?</b> Should I go?	<b>īrem?</b> Should I have gone?		

EXERCISE 181. Translate each of the following and identify the subjunctive use.

1. Utinam plūs aquae portāvissēmus.
2. Rogāret nōs.
3. Domum quam celerrimē currāmus.
4. Bona sit fortūna cīvibus.
5. Nē malō ducī pāreant.
6. Should I try (**temptō**) to speak?
7. I wish our leaders had listened!
8. May the best man win (**vincō**).
9. Now let us drink wine!
10. He should have come.

113. Tenses in Dependent Uses of the Subjunctive: Sequence of Tenses

The tense of the subjunctive in a dependent clause shows action relative to that of the main clause, e.g. happening at the same time as that of the main clause, at some time in the future, or before the action of the main verb. Happily, there is a clear pattern of usage for what tense to expect in each clause.

Tenses of a Latin verb are grouped in two categories, primary and secondary (or “historical”).

A **primary** tense is anything that is not a past tense:  
present, future, present perfect (§38, e.g., *he has come*) or future perfect.

A **secondary** tense is a past tense:  
imperfect, historical perfect (§38, e.g., *he came*) pluperfect.

A primary tense in the main clause is accompanied by a primary tense (either present or perfect subjunctive) in the dependent clause. If the main clause has a secondary tense, the verb of the dependent clause will be secondary (either imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive). This pattern is often called the “sequence of tenses.” The following chart shows how the typical pattern works:

Tense of Main Verb (usually an indicative)	}	Primary tense: Present, Future, Present Perfect, Future Perfect (rare)	Secondary tense: Imperfect, Historical Perfect, Pluperfect
Same Time As or After Main Verb		Present	Imperfect
Completed Before Main Verb		Perfect	Pluperfect

EXERCISE 182. Which tense of the subjunctive would you use for each of the underlined dependent verbs, and why? (Do *not* translate into Latin.)

1. I wonder whether he is going?

2. I wondered whether he would go?

3. I wonder whether he has gone?

4. We were going in order to buy food.

5. We will go in order to buy food.

6. He was so strong that he was able to win.
7. He is so strong that he is able to win.

8. He is so strong that he will be able to win.

9. I prayed that he was coming quickly.

10. I pray that he will come soon.

## 114. Dependent Uses of the Subjunctive

The subjunctive is used in a variety of dependent clauses. Three common uses are to show:

### 1) **purpose** - introduced by **ut (utī)**; negative is **nē** (never **ut + nōn**)

While English can often express purpose with an infinitive, Latin uses a dependent clause with a subjunctive verb. In the examples below, the first translation is the most idiomatic in English. Because a purpose clause always refers to an action happening either at the same time or after the main verb, only present and imperfect tenses of the subjunctive are commonly used.

<b>Ut tē videāmus</b> venimus.	We come	{ to see you. (in order that <b>we may see</b> you.)
<b>Ut tē vidērēmus</b> vēnimus.	We came	{ to see you. (in order that <b>we might see</b> you.)
Currunt <b>nē hostēs eōs capiant.</b>	They run	{ so the enemy <b>will not capture</b> them. (in order that the enemy <b>not capture</b> them.)
Cucurrit <b>nē hostēs eum caperent.</b>	He ran	{ so the enemy <b>would not capture</b> him. (in order that the enemy <b>not capture</b> him.)

A purpose clause answers the question “*why?*” / “*for what purpose?*”

### 2) **result** - introduced by **ut (utī)**; negative is **ut nōn** (or another negative word)

Latin uses a dependent clause with a subjunctive verb to express the result of an action or condition in the main clause. Result clauses do not always follow the sequence of tenses discussed above, e.g., the perfect subjunctive can be used after a secondary tense to emphasize the result (see the second example below). When there is a result clause in a sentence, the main clause often has a “signpost word” (an adjective or adverb) such as:

<b>ita</b>	thus, so	<b>tam</b>	so, to such a degree
<b>sīc</b>	thus, so	<b>tot</b>	so many
<b>tālis, tāle</b>	such, of such a kind	<b>totiēns</b>	so often
<b>tantus, -a, -um</b>	so much, so great		

Even in the absence of a signpost word in the main clause, a result clause can be identified by asking the question “*so that what?*” / “*with what result?*” Sometimes this is the only way to decide if a clause in Latin (or English!) is expressing purpose or result.

Ita facimus <b>ut omnēs nōbīs pāreant.</b>	We act thus <b>so (that) everyone will obey us.</b>
Vulnus tantum erat <b>ut perīerit.</b>	The wound was so great <b>that he died.</b>
Totiēns dicit <b>ut nōn audīre cupiāmus.</b>	He speaks so often <b>that we do not want to listen.</b>
Tam sapienter rēxit <b>ut nēmō rēgnum relinquare cuperet.</b>	He ruled so wisely <b>that no one wanted to leave the kingdom.</b>

EXERCISE 183. Bracket and identify each of the dependent clauses as **purpose** or **result**, and then translate the underlined verb into Latin.

Daedalus was such a clever architect that King Minos brought (**ferō**) him to Crete to build (**aedificō**) the labyrinth. The king kept him imprisoned on the island for so many years that Daedalus wanted (**volō**) to leave very badly. He invented wings to escape (**fugiō**), and he arranged the feathers in such a way that they were (**sum**) similar to birds' wings. Icarus was so bold that he did not listen (**audiō**) to his father. To look for (**petō**) his son, Daedalus flew near the sea. He is so sad that he doesn't know (**sciō**) what to do, so he journeys to Sicily to find (**inveniō**) peace. There the king's admiration was so great that he received (**accipio**) him kindly and gave (**dō**) Daedalus refuge.

3) **circumstance, cause, concession** - introduced by **cum**; negative is **nōn**

As you learned in Chapter 18 (§75), a **cum** clause with an indicative verb indicates a specific time. When the dependent verb is subjunctive, the clause indicates the situation or circumstances under which an action occurred. The context of the sentence may suggest the best way to understand or translate the clause, but it is not always possible to distinguish among these three uses. **Cum** circumstantial typically uses only the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive.

<b>Cum hoc scīret</b> , bellum gessit. He waged war	{	<b>when he knew this.</b>
		<b>because he knew this.</b>
		<b>although he knew this.</b>

circumstance (when):

**Cum litterās mīsisset**, discessit.

**When he had sent the letter,**  
he departed.

cause (because, since):

**Cum nāvigāre timeat**, in litore manet.

He stays on the shore, **because**  
**he is afraid to sail.**

concession (although):

Cēnam parat **cum aegra sit**.

She prepares dinner, **although**  
**she is sick.**

EXERCISE 184. Translate each of the following sentences.

1. Vēnērunt ut nōs vidērent, sed nēmō domī erat.
2. Bellum gerere Rōmānīs difficile nōn est cum Rōmae multī et fortēs cīvēs sint.
3. Tantum vīnī biberam ut ē casā amīcī discēderem et domum īrem.
4. Mīlītēs pugnābant cum multī dēspērāvissent.
5. Utinam ā nōbīs iūs cīvile didicissent.
6. Cum mīlēs ab hostibus captus ducem appropinquantem vidēret, timōre tremēbat.
7. Tot cīvēs illum cōsulem creāvērunt ut nēmō eī resistere audēret
8. Scrībēsne ad nōs cum Rōmam vēneris?
9. Quī scelus facit poenam dare dēbet nē plūrēs scelera faciant.
10. Cum sōlem in caelō videāmus, omnēs noctem appropinquāre scīmus.

EXERCISE 185. Translate into Latin.

1. Rome was so great that other nations were afraid to attack.
2. Since night is approaching, let them go home with their friends.
3. Although she was very tired, she kept on walking in order to find water.
4. Let them have civil laws in order that they may live more freely.
5. They went to town since there was no food at home.
6. The boys ran so quickly that no one saw them.
7. I wish she had come!
8. Let us rejoice because we will be free in a few days.
9. They had fought fiercely with their weapons in order to defeat the enemy.
10. When he had heard your (sg.) message, he was silent.

READING 31<sup>1</sup>

*Caesar describes how he fought the phalanx of the Gauls. A phalanx was an array of soldiers standing shoulder to shoulder so their shields overlapped, with those of the front ranks forming a wall in front, and those of the soldiers in back held overhead to form a kind of roof. As long as the soldiers stayed together, they might ward off an attack, but when dispersed they became easy prey for the Romans. The shield was held in the left hand so the fighters could strike with their right. In the second paragraph he describes how the battle moves backwards and forwards against the Gauls (= Helvetii) and some of their allies.*

Caesar, primum<sup>2</sup> suō, deinde omnium ex **cōspectū** remōtīs equīs, ut **aequātō** omnium periculō spem **fugae** tolleret, cohortātus suōs proelium commisit. militēs ē locō superiōre pīlīs missīs facile hostium phalangem perfrēgērunt. eā disiectā, gladiīs dēstrictīs in eōs impetum fēcērunt. Gallīs magnō ad **pugnam** erat impedimentō, quod plūribus eōrum scūtīs ūnō ictū pīlōrum **trānsfixīs** et colligātīs, cum ferrum sē inflexisset, neque ēvellere neque sinistrā impeditā satis commodē pugnāre poterant, multī ut, diū iactātō bracchiō, praeoptārent scūta ē manū **ēmittere** et **nūdō** corpore pugnāre.

tandem vulneribus dēfessī et pedem referre et, quod mōns suberat circiter mille passuum, eō sē recipere coepērunt. captō monte et succēdentibus nostrīs, Bōiī et Tulingī, quī hominum milibus circiter xv agmen hostium claudēbant ..., ex itinere nostrōs [ab] latere apertō adgressī **circumvenīre** et id cōspicātī Helvētiī, quī in montem sēsē recēperant, rūsus instāre et proelium redintegrāre coepērunt. Rōmānī conversa signa bipertītō intulērunt: prīma et secunda aciēs, ut victīs ac summōtīs resisteret, tertia, ut venientēs sustinēret.

Notes:

1. Before translating this passage, read through it trying to “chunk” the words and phrases that seem to go together
2. When you see **primum**, you should expect **deinde** (or a similar word); these two adverbs set up parallel phrases, allowing us to understand **suō equō remōtō** in the first phrase (parallel to **omnium remōtīs equīs** in the second phrase).
  - There are a lot of ablative absolutes in this passage, so review Chapter 24 and participles if you have trouble identifying them.
  - What kind of **ut** clauses (underlined above) are used in this first paragraph?

## VOCABULARY:

removeō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus	to remove, move away	commodē (adv.)	easily
cōspectus, -ūs <i>m.</i>	sight, view	bracchium, -iī <i>n.</i>	forearm, arm
aequō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus	to make equal	praeoptō, -āre	= <i>mālō, mälle</i>
fuga, -ae <i>f.</i>	flight	ēmittō, -ere	to let go, throw away
cohortor, -ārī, -ātus sum	to encourage	nūdus, -a, -um	unprotected, naked
suōs	supply <i>mīlitēs</i>	dēfessus, -a, -um	= <i>fessus, -a, -um</i>
committō, -ere, -mīsī	to join (battle)	pedem referre	to withdraw
pīlum, -ī <i>n.</i>	javelin	subsum, -esse	to be near
phalanx, phalangis <i>f.</i>	phalanx	circiter (adv.)	about
perfringō, -ere, -frēgī	to break through	sē recipere	to retreat
disiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iētus	to scatter, rout	succēdō, -ere	to approach
dēstringō, -ere, -strīnxī, -strictus	to draw, unsheathe	Bōiī, -ōrum <i>m. (pl.)</i>	the Boii and
magnō ad pugnam erat impedimentō	“it was a great disadvantage in fighting”	Tulingī, -ōrum <i>m. (pl.)</i>	Tulingi, allies of the Gauls
quod	“the fact that” - the <i>quod</i> clause is the subject of <i>erat</i>	agmen claudere	to bring up the rear
scūtum, -ī <i>n.</i>	shield	latus, -eris <i>n.</i>	flank (of the army)
ictus, -ūs <i>m.</i>	stroke, blow	adgredior, -gredī, -gressus	to attack
trānsfigō, -ere, -fixī, -fixus	to pierce, transfix	circumveniō, -īre	to surround
colligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus	to bind together	cōspicor, -ārī, -ātus sum	to see, catch sight of
īnflectō, -ere, -flexī, -flexus	to bend, bend down	rūrsus (adv.)	again
ēvellō, -ere	to pull out	īnstō, -āre	to press on, threaten
sinistra, -ae <i>f.</i>	left hand	redintegrō, -āre	to renew
impediō, -īre, -ivī, -ītus	to hinder, obstruct	convertō, -ere, -vertī, -versus	to turn (around)
		bipertītō (adv.)	in two divisions
		summoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus	to repulse, push back
		sustineō, -ēre	to stop, withstand

## PRACTICE SENTENCES

Identify the form and use of each underlined word and translate.

1. Quis in hanc rem fuit **arbitr**er? Utinam is quidem Rōmae esset! Rōmae est. Utinam adesset in iūdicīo! Adest. Utinam sedēret in cōsiliō C. Pisōnis! Ipse C. Pisō est. Eundemne tū arbitrum et iūdicem sūmēbās? (Cicero; *the amount of a legal claim has already been set by an arbiter and now comes before a iūdex who will decide if the claim should be paid, but the plaintiff wants to argue again about the amount of the claim*)
2. Ita ferī ut sē morī sentiat. (Suetonius; *with these words Caligula ordered men put to death by multiple small wounds.*)
3. Nōn ut edam vīvō, sed ut vīvam edō. (Quintilian; *illustrating antithesis*)
4. Is pāgus appellābātur Tigurīnus; nam omnis cīvītās Helvētia in quattuor pāgōs dīvīsa est. Hic pāgus ūnus cum domō exisset (patrum nostrōrum memoriā) cōsulem interfēcerat et eius exercitum sub iugum mīserat. (Caesar; *telling how a group of the Helvetians had killed one of his ancestors*)
5. Tantus in cūrīā clāmor factus est ut populus concurreret. (Cicero)
6. Utinam populus Rōmānus ūnam **cervīcem** habēret! (Suetonius; *Caligula lashed out in anger at a crowd which opposed him*)
7. Dīxerat “Ō mōrēs! Ō tempora!” Tullius ōlim Sacrilegum strueret cum Catilīna nefās, Cum gener atque socer dīrīs concurreret armīs Maestaque cīvīlī caede madēret humus. (Martial)
8. Quis tam **dēmēns** [est], ut suā **voluntāte** maereat? (Cicero)

## VOCABULARY:

arbitr, -trī <i>m.</i>	arbitrator	struō, -ere, struxī	to to devise, arrange
sedēre in cōsiliō	to sit in judgment		
sūmō, -ere	to take, accept	gener, -erī <i>m.</i>	son-in-law
feriō, -īre	to strike, kill	socer, -erī <i>m.</i>	father-in-law
edō, -ere, ēdī	to eat	maestus, -a, -um	sad, mournful
pāgus, -ī <i>m.</i>	district, community	madeō, madēre,	to be wet
iugum, -ī <i>n.</i>	yoke	maduī	
cūrīa, -īae <i>f.</i>	Curia, senate building	dēmēns, -ntis	crazy
		voluntās, -tātis <i>f.</i>	will, choice
cervīx, -īcis <i>f.</i>	neck	maereō, -ēre	to be sad, mourn
sacrilegus, -a, -um	profane, impious		



## Chapter 28 Vocabulary

### Nouns

gladius, -iī <i>m.</i>	sword
iūdex, iūdicis <i>m.</i>	judge
nefās <i>n. (indeclinable)</i>	sin, crime (against divine law), wrong
oppidum, oppidi <i>n.</i>	town
poena, poenae <i>f.</i>	penalty
poenam dare	to pay the penalty
sōl, sōlis <i>m.</i>	sun
tēlum, tēli <i>n.</i>	weapon; spear, sword
vīnum, vīni <i>n.</i>	wine

### Verbs

appropinquō, appropinquāre, appropinquāvī	to approach, draw near
bibō, bibere, bibī, bibitus	to drink
tremō, tremere, tremuī	to tremble

### Adjectives

civilis, civile	civil, public, political
dīrus, dīra, dīrum	awful, horrible
tālis, tāle	such, of such a kind

### Conjunction

ut	in order that; so that
----	------------------------

### Adverbs

deinde	then, next
liberē	freely
tot	so many
totiēns	so often



# CHAPTER 29

Passive Subjunctive (All Tenses)  
 Dependent Uses of the Subjunctive (Noun Clauses)  
     Indirect Question  
     Indirect Command  
     Noun Result Clauses  
 Fiō

So far you have learned only active forms of the subjunctive. This chapter introduces the subjunctive passive of all conjugations in all tenses. The dependent clauses you learned in the last chapter function like adverbs, answering questions like “why?”, “when?” and “with what result?” This chapter introduces dependent noun clauses which use the subjunctive. It also gives the irregular forms of **fiō**, a verb often accompanied by a noun result clause.

## 115. Present and Imperfect Passive Subjunctive

These tenses are formed just like their active counterparts, except that the passive personal endings replace the active ones. The present tense uses the same stem vowels as the active (§105), and the imperfect again looks like the present active infinitive with personal endings attached (§109). Deponent verbs (§92) follow the same patterns.

### Present

	1ST CONJ. (e)	2ND CONJ. (ea)	3RD CONJ. (a)	3RD CONJ. -IŌ (ia)	4TH CONJ. (ia)	PASSIVE ENDINGS
<i>1st sg.</i>	amer	docear	regar	capiar	audiar	<b>-r</b>
<i>2nd sg.</i>	amēris (-re)	doceāris (-re)	regāris (-re)	capiāris (-re)	audiāris (-re)	<b>-ris (-re)</b>
<i>3rd sg.</i>	amētur	doceātur	regātur	capiātur	audiātur	<b>-tur</b>
<i>1st pl.</i>	amēmur	doceāmur	regāmur	capiāmur	audiāmur	<b>-mur</b>
<i>2nd pl.</i>	amēminī	doceāminī	regāminī	capiāminī	audiāminī	<b>-minī</b>
<i>3rd pl.</i>	amentur	doceantur	regantur	capiantur	audiantur	<b>-ntur</b>

**Imperfect**

	1ST CONJ.	2ND CONJ.	3RD CONJ.	3RD CONJ. -IŌ	4TH CONJ.
<i>1st sg.</i>	amārer	docērer	regerer	caperer	audīrer
<i>2nd sg.</i>	amārēris	docērēris	regerēris	caperēris	audīrēris
<i>3rd sg.</i>	amārētur	docērētur	regerētur	caperētur	audīrētur
<i>1st pl.</i>	amārēmur	docērēmur	regerēmur	caperēmur	audīrēmur
<i>2nd pl.</i>	amārēminī	docērēminī	regerēminī	caperēminī	audīrēminī
<i>3rd pl.</i>	amārentur	docērentur	regerentur	caperentur	audīrentur

EXERCISE 186. Following the model verbs above, conjugate **hortor**, **dēleō**, **neglegō** and **impediō** in the present and imperfect passive subjunctive, singular and plural.

**116. Perfect and Pluperfect Passive Subjunctive**

These tenses are formed like the perfect (**amātus sum**) and pluperfect (**amātus eram**) passive indicative, except that the form of the verb **sum** is in the subjunctive instead of the indicative.

**Perfect**

	1ST CONJ.	2ND CONJ.	3RD CONJ.	4TH CONJ.
<i>1st sg.</i>	amātus <b>sim</b>	doctus <b>sim</b>	rēctus <b>sim</b>	audītus <b>sim</b>
<i>2nd sg.</i>	amātus <b>sīs</b>	doctus <b>sīs</b>	rēctus <b>sīs</b>	audītus <b>sīs</b>
<i>3rd sg.</i>	amātus <b>sit</b>	doctus <b>sit</b>	rēctus <b>sit</b>	audītus <b>sit</b>
<i>1st pl.</i>	amātī <b>sīmus</b>	doctī <b>sīmus</b>	rēctī <b>sīmus</b>	audītī <b>sīmus</b>
<i>2nd pl.</i>	amātī <b>sītis</b>	doctī <b>sītis</b>	rēctī <b>sītis</b>	audītī <b>sītis</b>
<i>3rd pl.</i>	amātī <b>sint</b>	doctī <b>sint</b>	rēctī <b>sint</b>	audītī <b>sint</b>

**Pluperfect**

	1ST CONJ.	2ND CONJ.	3RD CONJ.	4TH CONJ.
<i>1st sg.</i>	amātus <b>essem</b>	doctus <b>essem</b>	rēctus <b>essem</b>	audītus <b>essem</b>
<i>2nd sg.</i>	amātus <b>essēs</b>	doctus <b>essēs</b>	rēctus <b>essēs</b>	audītus <b>essēs</b>
<i>3rd sg.</i>	amātus <b>esset</b>	doctus <b>esset</b>	rēctus <b>esset</b>	audītus <b>esset</b>
<i>1st pl.</i>	amātī <b>essēmus</b>	doctī <b>essēmus</b>	rēctī <b>essēmus</b>	audītī <b>essēmus</b>
<i>2nd pl.</i>	amātī <b>essētis</b>	doctī <b>essētis</b>	rēctī <b>essētis</b>	audītī <b>essētis</b>
<i>3rd pl.</i>	amātī <b>essent</b>	doctī <b>essent</b>	rēctī <b>essent</b>	audītī <b>essent</b>

EXERCISE 187. Following the model verbs above, conjugate **moneō**, **legō** and **inveniō** in the perfect and pluperfect passive subjunctive, singular and plural.

EXERCISE 188. Identify each of the following verbs by person, number, tense, voice and mood.

- |                    |                 |
|--------------------|-----------------|
| 1. dūcerer         | 11. trādar      |
| 2. cōnātī sumus    | 12. dīxissent   |
| 3. habītae essētis | 13. rogāta sint |
| 4. eāmus           | 14. scīrētur    |
| 5. moveātur        | 15. ēripiāmus   |
| 6. laudēminī       | 16. coācta sim  |
| 7. vēneris         | 17. iungerentur |
| 8. missus sit      | 18. lātus esset |
| 9. invenīrentur    | 19. pōnam       |
| 10. vocātī erāmus  | 20. agāre       |

EXERCISE 189. Transform each of the following from indicative to subjunctive.

- |                   |                    |
|-------------------|--------------------|
| 1. ductus est     | 6. inventa es      |
| 2. accipiēbāmur   | 7. clāmātur        |
| 3. mitteris       | 8. cōnābantur      |
| 4. rogātī erātis  | 9. interfectī sunt |
| 5. proficīscuntur | 10. movēmur        |

## 117. Dependent Uses of the Subjunctive - Noun Clauses

Remember that the direct object, or sometimes the subject, of a main verb may be a dependent clause (§79, 87, 89). The dependent clauses in this chapter all have a clause marker and a verb in the subjunctive. The key to identifying how each clause is used is to know the meaning of the main verb.

### 1) **indirect question** - introduced by a question word (e.g., **quis?**, **ubi?**, **cūr?**)

Verbs of *asking*, *telling*, *seeing*, *hearing*, *knowing* and the like (§89), are often accompanied by an indirect question. This construction follows the regular sequence of tenses (§113), except that it *indicates a future action by using the future participle + either the present or imperfect subjunctive of sum*. Study the following examples:

Primary Sequence		{	<b>faciat.</b>	he is doing.	same time
<b>Rogō quid</b>	I ask what		<b>fēcerit.</b>	he did (was doing).	time before
			<b>factūrus sit.</b>	he will do.	time after
Secondary Sequence		{	<b>faceret.</b>	he was doing.	same time
<b>Rogāvī quid</b>	I asked what		<b>fēcisset.</b>	he had done.	time before
			<b>factūrus esset.</b>	he would do.	time after

EXERCISE 190. Translate each of the underlined dependent clauses into Latin.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. I know <u>who you (sg.) are</u> .               | 6. He doesn't know <u>where they live</u> .               |
| 2. I wonder <u>how often they will come</u> ?      | 7. She asked us <u>what we had done</u> .                 |
| 3. Will you know <u>how to find us</u> ?           | 8. We know <u>who is coming</u> .                         |
| 4. We didn't know <u>where they were staying</u> . | 9. We knew <u>why he had come</u> .                       |
| 5. She wondered <u>what he would say</u> .         | 10. They asked <u>how many people were giving gifts</u> . |

2) **indirect command** - introduced by **ut (utī)**; negative is **nē**

Verbs of *asking, telling, advising, persuading, commanding* and the like, are often accompanied by an indirect command. This construction follows the regular sequence of tenses (§113). Some common verbs which should lead you to expect an indirect command are:

<b>hortor</b>	to urge	<b>petō</b>	to ask
<b>imperō</b>	to command	<b>postulō</b>	to demand
<b>moneō</b>	to advise, warn	<b>precor</b>	to pray
<b>ōrō</b>	to beg, pray	<b>quaerō</b>	to ask
<b>persuadeō</b>	to persuade	<b>rogō</b>	to ask

Note:

- there are *three verbs* which do *not* use this construction. They are followed instead by an objective infinitive (§87): **iubeō** (*I order*), **vetō** (*I forbid*) and **cupiō** (*I want*)

Moneō vōs **ut illī ducī crēdātis**. I advise you to trust that leader.

Rogābant nōs **ut abirēmus statim**. They were asking us to depart immediately.

Cīvibus persuāsit **ut in urbe manērent**. He persuaded the citizens to stay in the city.

Ōrat **nē sē relinquās**. He begs you not to leave him.

EXERCISE 191. Translate each of the underlined dependent verbs into Latin.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. They were begging us <u>to rescue</u> them.     | 5. He will try to persuade us <u>to fight</u> . |
| 2. She asks that <u>we help</u> her.               | 6. I urge you (pl.) not <u>to drink</u> that.   |
| 3. Did the enemy demand that <u>he give</u> gifts? | 7. They wanted us <u>to elect</u> him leader.   |
| 4. He forbade them <u>to burn</u> the temple.      | 8. We prayed to the gods <u>to save</u> us.     |

### 3) **noun result** - introduced by **ut** (**utī**); negative is **ut nōn**

The result clauses you learned in the previous chapter functioned adverbially and were (usually) signaled by a signpost word in the main clause (§114.2). A *noun* result clause functions as the direct object or subject / subject complement of certain main verbs and impersonal expressions. Here are some of the common verbs which should lead you to expect a noun result clause:

MAIN VERB	MEANING	NOUN CLAUSE FUNCTIONS AS
<b>faciō</b> ( <i>and its compounds</i> )	to make	direct object
<b>efficiō</b>	to bring about	direct object
<b>cōnficiō</b>	to accomplish	direct object
<b>efficitur</b> ( <i>pass. of above vbs</i> )	be brought about	subject
<b>accidit</b>	happen	subject
<b>fit</b> ( <i>see §118 for forms</i> )	come about	subject
<b>mōs est</b>	it is the custom	subject complement
<b>necesse est*</b>	it is necessary	subject complement
*usually without <b>ut</b>		

Efficiam **ut omnēs intellegant.**

I will make **them all understand.**

Enim saepe accidit **ut nēmō longum iter sōlus facere velit.**

For it often happens **that no one wants to make a long journey alone.**

Sic fit **ut rēs pūblica valeat.**

So it happens **that the state is strong.**

Erat mōs Rōmānōrum **ut deōs colerent.**

It was the custom of the Romans **to worship the gods.**

## 118. Forms of **fiō**, **fierī**, **factus**

The verb **fiō** has forms of the fourth conjugation except for the infinitive (**fierī**) and the imperfect subjunctive (**fierem**, etc.) which look like third conjugation forms. It is used as the passive of **faciō** and has the same passive forms as **faciō** in the perfect system.

	Indicative			Subjunctive	
	PRESENT	IMPERFECT	FUTURE	PRESENT	IMPERFECT
1st sg.	fiō	fiēbam	fiām	fiām	fierem
2nd sg.	fis	fiēbās	fiēs	fiās	fierēs
3rd sg.	fit	fiēbat	fiet	fiat	fieret
1st pl.	firmus	fiēbāmus	fiēmus	fiāmus	fierēmus
2nd pl.	fitis	fiēbātis	fiētis	fiātis	fierētis
3rd pl.	fiunt	fiēbant	fient	fiant	fierent

EXERCISE 192. Translate each of the following sentences and be ready to identify the type of each dependent clause.

1. Rogāvit vōs ad quem dōna missa essent.
2. Currāmus celerrimē nē videāmur.
3. Cucurrimus tam celeriter ut nōn vidērēmur.
4. Pater meus mihi persuāsit nē sōla Rōmae maneam.
5. Cōsul in senātum vēnit ut audīrētur.
6. Fit ut rēs pūblica valeat illīs bonīs regentibus.
7. Rēx nōbīs imperāvit ut prō patriā pugnārēmus.
8. Cognōscīmus quōmodō tēlīs nostrīs ūtāmur.
9. Venī mēcum ut mare et multās celerēs nāvēs videās.
10. Ā nostrō duce petimus nē dīmittāmur.

EXERCISE 193. Translate into Latin.

1. They kept asking who the new king was and whether he was wise.
2. They will come to see us immediately.
3. The captives (*use a participle*) begged to be allowed to live.
4. We were surprised how many men were being forced to destroy their homes.
5. They threw their spears with such great force that they killed many men.
6. He had warned the citizens not to try to free your (pl.) slaves.
7. Do you know why the boy was left with his father?
8. The waves on all sides were so huge that the ship was wrecked at sea.
9. It happened that no one was killed when the enemy attacked the city.
10. The general asked that his soldiers be given more money.

## READING 32

*Caesar tells about the Helvetians (one of the tribes in Gaul) and their leader, Orgetorix, who urges his people to push beyond the natural boundaries of their territory.*

Apud Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus fuit et dītissimus Orgetorīx. Is, M. Messālā, M. Pīsōne cōsulibus, rēgnī cupiditāte **inductus** conīūrātiōnem **nōbilitātis** fēcit, et cīvitatī persuāsit, ut dē finibus suis cum omnibus cōpiīs exīrent .... Id hōc facilius eīs persuāsit, quod undique locī nātūrā Helvētīi **continentur**: ūnā ex parte flūmine Rhēnō, lātissimō et altissimō, quī agrum Helvētium ā Germānīs **dīvidit**; alterā ex parte monte Iūrā altissimō, quī est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs; tertiā, lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō, quī prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiīs **dīvidit**. Hīs rēbus fiēbat, ut et minus lātē vagārentur et minus facile finitimīs bellum īferre possent.



## VOCABULARY:

dīs, dītis	rich	lūra, -ae f.	Lura (a mountain)
indūcō, -ere,	to lead on,	dīvidō, -ere	to divide
-dūxī, -ductus	induce	Sēquanī,	Sequani (a tribe)
coniūrātiō, -iōnis f.	conspiracy	-ōrum m. (pl.)	
nōbilitās, -tātis f.	nobility	Lemannus, -ī m.	Lake Geneva
contineō, -ēre	to contain,	Rhodanus, -ī m.	Rhone river
	hem in	vagor, -ārī	to wander
Rhēnus, -ī m.	Rhine river		

## PRACTICE SENTENCES

Identify the form and use of each underlined word and translate.

1. Eādem nocte accidit ut esset lūna plēna. (Caesar)
2. Sed est mōs hominum ut nōlint eundem plūribus rēbus **excellere**. (Cicero)
3. Ea tanta est urbs ut ex quattuor urbibus maximīs cōnstāre dicātur. (Cicero; *describing the Sicilian city, Syracuse*)
4. Caesarī cum id nūntiātum esset eōs per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnārī, mātūrat ab urbe proficīscī. (Caesar; *Caesar hears that the Helvetii are preparing to march*)
5. Quaeris quot mihi bāsiātiōnēs tuae, Lesbia, sint satis superque. (Catullus; *these lines are addressed to his adulterous lover*)
6. Et tamen faciam ut intellegās quid hī dē tē sentiant. Ēgrederē ex urbe, Catilīna, liberā rem pūblicam metū. (Cicero; *arguing in the senate against Catiline, leader of a conspiracy against the state*)
7. Potest fierī ut fallar. (Cicero; *admitting that he is not always right*)
8. Rērum **obscuritās** nōn verbōrum facit ut nōn intellegātur ōrātiō. (Cicero; *on whether the subject matter or the style makes Epicurus' philosophy hard to understand*)
9. Dīxit vērō Deus, "congregentur aquae quae sub caelō sunt in locum unum et **appāreat** ārida," factumque est ita et vocāvit Deus āridam 'terram' congregātiōnēsq̄ aquārum appellāvit 'maria'. (Vulgate; *describing the origin of the world*)

## VOCABULARY:

excellō, -ere	to excel	ōrātiō, -iōnis f.	language (in this case, Epicurus' Greek)
cōnstō, -āre	to consist (of)	congregō, -āre	to gather
mātūrō, -āre	to hurry	appāreō, -ēre	to appear
bāsiātiō, -iōnis f.	kiss	āridus, -a, -um	dry
ēgredior, -ī	to go out, leave	congregātiō,	collections
fallō, -ere	to deceive; (pass.) to be mistaken	-iōnis f.	
obscuritās, -tātis f.	obscurity	forsitan	perhaps

## Chapter 29 Vocabulary

### Verbs

appellō, appellāre, appellāvī, appellātus	to name, call upon, address
colō, colere, coluī, cultus	to cultivate, tend; inhabit; worship
ēripiō, ēripere, ēripuī, ēreptus	to snatch away; rescue, free
fiō, fierī, factus sum	to happen, occur; be done, be made
habitō, habitāre, habitāvī, habitātus	to inhabit; live, dwell
iungō, iungere, iūnxī, iūctus	to join (together), unite; yoke
liberō, liberāre, liberāvī, liberātus	to free, release; acquit
mīror, mīrārī, mīrātus sum	to wonder, be surprised at; admire, wonder at
precor, precārī, precātus sum	to pray, intreat, beg; curse
quaerō, quaerere, quaesīvī (-īī), quaesītus	to look for, seek; ask
requīrō, requīrere, requīsīvī (-īī), requīsītus	to search for; ask, inquire after; demand

### Adjectives

lātus, lāta, lātum	wide, broad
quot (indecl.)	how many?

### Adverbs

cūr	why?
num	<i>signals a question; whether (in ind. question)</i>
quōmodo	how
quotiēns	how often?
statim	immediately, at once
undique	on all sides

### Preposition

apud (+ acc.)	among, with, near, at (the house of)
---------------	--------------------------------------

# CHAPTER 30

## Subjunctive of Possum Dependent Uses of the Subjunctive Clauses of Fearing Conditions

This chapter provides the subjunctive forms of **possum** and introduces additional uses of the subjunctive in dependent clauses. Clauses of fearing are noun clauses introduced by a verb or phrase of fearing, and conditions are adverbial clauses, some of which use the subjunctive.

### 119. Subjunctive of possum

The subjunctive forms of **possum** follow the same rules as regular verbs except in the present, which adds the present subjunctive of **sum** to the stem **pos-** throughout.

	PRESENT	IMPERFECT	PERFECT	PLUPERFECT
<i>1st sg.</i>	possim	possem	potuerim	potuissem
<i>2nd sg.</i>	possis	possēs	potueris	potuissēs
<i>3rd sg.</i>	possit	posset	potuerit	potuisset
<i>1st pl.</i>	possimus	possēmus	potuerimus	potuissēmus
<i>2nd pl.</i>	possitis	possētis	potueritis	potuissētis
<i>3rd pl.</i>	possint	possent	potuerint	potuissent

EXERCISE 194. Translate each of the underlined verbs into Latin.

- If only I were able to leave now.
- He asked whether we had been able to stay.
- It happened that she was able to go.
- I wish they had been able to come.
- They arrived so late that you could not see them.
- Show us how we can live better.
- They work hard so they can live well.
- He is so strong that he is able to win.
- I wonder whether he was able to win?
- You (sg.) will go in order to be able to see him.

## 120. Clauses of Fearing

In the previous chapter, you learned that a noun clause with a subjunctive verb can be expected after certain main verbs. The same is true after verbs of fearing (e.g. **timeō**, **metuō**, **vereor**). Fear clauses follow the usual pattern for sequence of tenses (§113) and are introduced by **nē** and **ut**. However, special care needs to be given to the meanings of the clause markers here, since their meanings are the reverse of what they mean elsewhere:

	INDICATES A FEAR THAT	TRANSLATE AS
<b>nē</b>	something will happen	that, lest
<b>ut</b>	something will <i>not</i> happen	that not

Note:

- **nē nōn** sometimes replaces **ut**, and always does when the main clause has a negative.

Metuō <b>nē</b> veniant.	I fear <b>that</b> they will come. <i>or</i> I fear <b>lest</b> they (may) come.
Metuō <b>ut</b> veniant.	I fear <b>that</b> they will <b>not</b> come.
Timuit <b>nē</b> abissēmus.	He feared <b>that</b> we had gone away.
Timuit <b>ut</b> venīrēmus.	He feared <b>that</b> we would <b>not</b> come.
<u>Nōn</u> timuit <b>nē nōn</b> venīrēmus	He did <i>not</i> fear <b>that</b> we would <b>not</b> come.

EXERCISE 195. Translate.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Principēs verentur nē interficiantur. | 5. Caesar fears that the army will be attacked.       |
| 2. Metuit ut nūntius audītus esset.      | 6. Were you (sg.) afraid that he wouldn't stay?       |
| 3. Omnēs timēmus nē hostēs adsint.       | 7. I kept fearing that the dog would eat my food.     |
| 4. Timeō ut tantum iter ingredi possim.  | 8. They are afraid that you (pl.) won't believe them. |

## 121. Conditions

A conditional sentence has a main clause and a dependent adverbial clause usually introduced by **sī** (*if*). You have already seen some conditions in this book, all of which so far have used the indicative. Conditions in Latin may be divided into two types according to whether they use the indicative or subjunctive:

- 1) **simple conditions** - introduced by **sī**, **nisi**, etc.; verbs in the **indicative**

This type of condition implies nothing about whether or not the situation is real. The same tense of the indicative is generally used in both the main and dependent clauses.

TIME	TENSE OF INDICATIVE	IF CLAUSE (PROTASIS)	MAIN CLAUSE (APODOSIS)
past	any past tense	<b>Sī ēgistī id,</b> If you did that,	<b>prūdēns fuisti.</b> you were wise.
present	present	<b>Sī agis id,</b> If you do that,	<b>prūdēns es.</b> you are wise.
future	future	<b>Sī agēs id,</b> If you (will) do that,	<b>prūdēns eris.</b> you will be wise.

2) **subjunctive conditions** - introduced by **sī, nisi**, etc.; verbs in the **subjunctive**

These conditions *do* imply something about the situation, either that it is not true, or that there is some doubt about the condition. The same tense of the subjunctive is generally used in both the main and dependent clause. The following chart shows the usual pattern, along with the names commonly given to each of these conditions:

NAME OF CONDITION	TIME	SUBJ. TENSE	EXAMPLE
contrary-to-fact ( <i>not true</i> )	past	pluperfect	<b>Sī id ēgissēs, prūdēns fuissēs.</b> If you had done that, you would have been wise.
contrary-to-fact ( <i>not true</i> )	present	imperfect	<b>Sī id agerēs, prūdēns essēs.</b> If you were doing that, you would be wise.
less vivid ( <i>doubtful</i> )	future	present ( <i>or</i> perfect in the <b>sī</b> clause)	<b>Sī id agās/ēgeris, prūdēns sīs.</b> If you should do (were to do) that, you would be wise.

*Special Note:* The pronoun **aliquis, aliquid** (someone, something) appears in the vocabulary for this chapter. After certain words, the prefix **ali-** drops off, making this pronoun look like **quis, quid** (who?, what?). Use the context to help you decide which word is intended and use the following jingle to help remember when the prefix drops off:

After **sī, nisi, num** and **nē**, all the **ali-**'s fade away.

EXERCISE 196. Identify the type of condition and say what person, number, tense, voice, and mood would be needed in Latin for each verb. Do not translate.

1. If the storm had come then, they would have been lost at sea.
2. If it should rain today, we would not go on a picnic.
3. If you were all rich, you would not be stealing money from others.
4. If we go to the store later today, we will buy you some wine.
5. Would she stay with us if her parents allowed it?

EXERCISE 197. Identify the tense and mood of each underlined verb and name the condition represented in each sentence. Then translate.

1. Sī iūdex tibi crēdet, nūllam poenam dare cōgēris.
2. Sī essēs rēx, magnā opem cōpiamque habērēs.
3. Sī rēx fuisset, magnā cum sapientiā populum rēxissem.
4. Sī quis nōs videat, ab hostibus celeriter capiāmur.
5. Sī imperātor venīret, cīvēs gaudērent.

EXERCISE 198. Translate each of the following sentences.

1. Lēgātus metuēbat ut militēs flūmen altum trānsīre possent.
2. Sī sociī Rōmānī auxilia mittant, nōs omnēs cōservēmur.
3. Nōlī mē rogāre cūr illae arborēs caesae sint.
4. Vereor nē labōrēs aetātis gaudia vītae vincant.
5. Sī sapientēs essētis, filiōs philosophiam docērētis.
6. Nauta nōs monuit ut quam celerrimē ante tempestātem nāvigārēmus.
7. Sī lūna plēna fuisset, Caesar litus Galliae cōspicere potuisset.
8. Uxōrēs semper timēbunt nē coniugēs aliās fēminās ament.
9. Sī amīcitiā sacram habēmus, multī amīcī nōbīs erunt.
10. Sī amīcitiā sacram habeāmus, multī amīcī nōbīs sint.

EXERCISE 199. Translate into Latin.

1. The city would have fallen if the enemy had burned all the houses and temples.
2. Did you fear that the senate would not make peace with the enemy?
3. If the women had brought food, we could have eaten dinner quickly.
4. We did not know when that temple had been built.
5. The general commanded the Greek cities to surrender immediately.
6. They feared that the enemy would burn their camp and carry off their weapons.
7. If I were your ally, then I would be able to help you.
8. If the consuls had announced the victory, the people would have shouted with joy.
9. If we were strong in courage, we would be able to overcome all hardships.
10. Do not be afraid lest your journey be long and difficult.

READING 33 (*slightly adapted*)

*Livy tells how, after Tullus, the Roman king, conquered the Albans, he went on to defeat the Sabines, another Italian tribe. This victory, however, was followed by strange physical omens which led the Romans to institute new religious observances.*

Dēvictīs Sabīnīs cum in magnā glōriā magnisque opibus rēgnum Tullī ac tōta rēs Rōmāna esset, nūntiātum rēgī patribusque est in monte Albānō lapidibus plūvisse. Quod<sup>1</sup> cum crēdī vix posset, missīs ut id prōdigium vidērent quibusdam, in cōspectū hōrum crēbrī cecidēre<sup>2</sup> caelō lapidēs. Vīsī<sup>3</sup> etiam audire vocem ingentem ex summī cacūminis lūcō ut<sup>4</sup> patriō **rītū** sacra Albānī facerent, quae, dīs quoque simul cum patriā relictīs, **obliviōnī** dederant, et aut Rōmāna sacra suscēperant aut fortūnae, ut fit, obīrātī cultum reliquerant deum.<sup>5</sup> Rōmānīs<sup>6</sup> quoque ab eōdem prodigiō novendiāle sacrum pūblicē susceptum est, seu vōce **caelestī** ex Albānō monte missā — nam id quoque trāditur — seu haruspicum monitū; mānsit certē sollemne ut quandōque idem prodigium nūntiāretur fēriae per novem diēs agerentur.

Notes:

1. *quod* = *hoc*: the relative pronoun is often used at the beginning of a sentence to connect it with something in the previous sentence. This “connecting relative” is usually best translated as a form of *hic*, *haec*, *hoc*
2. *cecidēre* = *cecidērunt*
3. *vīsī* - supply *sunt*
4. *ut* here introduces an indirect command after the verbal idea of telling contained in *vocem*
5. *deum* = *deōrum*
6. *Rōmānīs* here is a dative of agent

VOCABULARY:

dēvincō, -ere, -vīcī, -victus	to defeat utterly	obīrātus, -a, -um (+ dat.)	angered / angry at
lapis, -idis <i>m.</i>	stone	cultus, -ūs <i>m.</i>	worship; care
pluō, -ere, plūvī (+ abl.)	to rain	novendiāle	lasting nine days
vix (adv.)	scarcely	publicē (adv.)	at public expense
prōdigium, -iī <i>n.</i>	portent	seu ... seu	whether ... or
cōspectus, -ūs <i>m.</i>	sight, view	caelestis, -e	heavenly, divine
crēber, -bra, -brum	numerous	monitus, -ūs <i>m.</i>	advice, warning
ingēns, -entis	very loud	haruspex, -icis <i>m.</i>	soothsayer
cacūmen, -inis <i>n.</i>	summit, peak	certē (adv.)	at least
lūcus, -ī <i>m.</i>	sacred grove	sollemne, -is <i>n.</i>	custom
patrius, -a, -um	ancestral, hereditary	quandōque = cum	whenever
rītus, -ūs <i>m.</i>	religious custom	fēriae, -ārum <i>f.</i>	festivals
obliviō, -iōnis <i>f.</i>	oblivion	agō, -ere	to hold, ( <i>here</i> ) celebrate

## READING 34

*Cicero here talks about the nature of the soul (animus), which the Stoics believed was made of fire (sometimes a kind of fiery breath), and about why it rises quickly into the heavens above the denser and more compact air near the earth.*

Accēdit ut facilius animus **ēvādat** ex hōc āere ... eumque perrumpat, quod nihil est animō **vēlōcius**, nūlla est **celeritās** quae possit cum animī celeritāte contendere. quī sī **permanet incorruptus** suīque similis, necesse est ita ferātur, ut **penetret** et **dīvidat** omne caelum hoc, in quō nūbēs imbrēs ventīque cōguntur, quod et ūmidum et cāliginōsum est propter exhālātiōnēs terrae.

## VOCABULARY:

accēdit ut	“it is also true that”	incorruptus, -a,	uncorrupted,
ēvādō, -ere	to escape	-um	genuine
āēr, āeris <i>m.</i>	air	penetrō, -āre	to penetrate, pierce
perrumpō, -ere	to break through	dīvidō, -ere	to break open,
vēlōx, vēlōcis	swift		divide
celeritās, -tātis <i>f.</i>	speed	imber, -bris <i>m.</i>	rain
contendō, -ere	to compare	ūmidus, -a, -um	moist, damp
permaneō, -ēre	to last, remain	cāliginōsus,	misty, foggy
quī = hic (see Reading 33, note 1)		-a, -um	
		exhālātiō, -iōnis <i>f.</i>	evaporation

## READING 35

*In Ovid’s account of the great flood sent by Jupiter (cf. Ch. 6, Reading 4), he describes what the husband (Deucalion) says to his wife (Pyrrha) about their situation as the flood’s only survivors.*

“namque egō (crēde mihi), sī tē quoque pontus habēret,  
tē sequerer, coniunx, et mē quoque pontus habēret.  
ō utinam possim populōs reparāre **paternīs**  
artibus atque animās **fōrmātae** infundere terrae!  
nunc genus in nōbīs restat mortāle duōbus.  
sic vīsum superīs: hominumque exempla manēmus.”

## VOCABULARY:

namque	certainly; for; now	īfundō,	to pour into
reparō, -āre	to restore, recover	-ere (+ dat.)	
paternus, -a, -um	father’s, paternal	restō, -āre	to remain, be left
anima, -ae <i>f.</i>	breath (of life)	vīsum est	to seem best
fōrmō, -āre, -āvī,	to form, fashion		
-ātus			



## PRACTICE SENTENCES

Identify the form and use of each underlined form and translate.

1. Sī vīveret, verba eius audīrētis. (Cicero; *explaining why he can't call a witness*)
2. Egō sī Scipiōnis dēsīderiō mē movērī negem certē mentiar. ... Vīta tālis quidem fuit vel fortūnā vel glōriā, ut nihil posset accēdere. (Cicero; *talking here about the life and recent death of his friend Scipio*)
3. Timeō nē male facta antiqua mea sint inventa omnia. (Plautus; *a young man who has fathered a child worries the truth will come out*)
4. Nisi tū āmissēs, numquam recēpissēm. (Cicero; *quoting Fabius, who won back the town of Tarentum after the addressee had lost that town to the enemy*)
5. Lēgum omnēs servī sumus ut liberī esse possīmus. (Cicero)
6. Metuōque ut timeō, nē hoc tandem prōpalam fiat nimis. (Plautus; *a man watches two lovers*)

## VOCABULARY:

Scipiō, -iōnis <i>m.</i>	Scipio (a Roman leader)	recipiō, -ere, recēpī	to get back, regain
dēsīderium, -iī <i>n.</i>	sense of loss	vel ... vel	either ... or
mentior, -īrī	to lie	accēdō, -ere	to be added
male	unfortunately	prōpalam	openly
		nimis	too (much)

## Chapter 30 Vocabulary

### Nouns

amīcītia, amīcītiaē <i>f.</i>	friendship
imperātor, imperātōris <i>m.</i>	general; emperor
ops, opis <i>f.</i>	power, might; (pl.) wealth, resources
philosophia, philosophiaē <i>f.</i>	philosophy
victōria, victōriaē <i>f.</i>	victory

### Verbs

cōspiciō, cōspicere, cōspexī, cōspectus	to observe, catch sight of, look at
metuō, metuere, metuī, metūtus	to fear
suscipiō, suscipere, suscepī, susceptus	to take up, accept; begin
vereor, verērī, veritus sum	to fear, be afraid; respect

### Pronoun

aliquis, aliquid	someone, something, anyone, anything
------------------	--------------------------------------

### Adverbs

certē	surely, of course; at least
mox	soon; next
quoque	also, too ( <i>placed after the word it emphasizes</i> )
simul	at the same time, together

### Conjunctions

nisi	unless, if not
sīn	but if, if however

# READING CHAPTER VI

## Narrative Reading: The Death of Orgetorix and the Helvetii Dictionary Practice / Form Identification

### Narrative Reading VI

*Caesar continues the story of how Orgetorix plotted to take control of the Helvetii, form an alliance with insurgents in two other Gallic tribes and take control of all Gaul (cf. Ch. 29, Reading 32). This passage describes what happens when the Helvetii discover his plot.*

Ea rēs est Helvētīis per indicium **ēnūntiāta**. mōribus suīs Orgetorīgem ex vinculis causam dīcere coēgērunt; **damnātum** poenam sequī oportēbat ut ignī **cremārētur**. diē cōstitutā causae dictiōnis Orgetorīx ad iūdicium omnem suam familiam, ad hominum mīlia decem, undique coēgit et omnēs **clientēs** obaerātōsque suōs, quōrum magnum numerum habēbat, eōdem condūxit; per eōs, nē causam dīceret, sē ēripuit. cum cīvītās ob eam rem **incitāta** armīs iūs suum exsequī cōnārētur multitudinemque hominum ex agrīs **magistrātūs** cōgerent, Orgetorīx mortuus est; neque abest **suspīciō**, ut Helvetiī arbitrantur, quīn ipse sibi mortem cōnscīverit.

Post eius mortem nihilō minus Helvetiī id quod cōstituerant facere cōnantur, ut ē finibus suīs **excant**. ubi iam sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, oppida sua omnia incendunt ...

(continued)

#### VOCABULARY:

per indicium, -iī <i>n.</i>	“by informants”	incitō, -āre	to rouse, infuriate
ēnūntiō, -āre	to announce, report	iūs exsequī	to secure rights
vinculum, -ī <i>n.</i>	chain, bond	magistrātus, -ūs <i>m.</i>	magistrate, official
causam dīcere	to plead one’s case	quīn	“that”
damnō, -āre	to condemn	cōnscīscō, -īre,	to resolve upon
cremō, -āre	to burn	-īvī	
dictiō, dictiōnis <i>f.</i>	pleading	with sibi mortem	“to commit suicide”
cliēns, -tis <i>m.</i>	client, follower	nihilō minus	none the less
obaerātus, -ī <i>m.</i>	debtor, one in debt	ut	(namely) that
condūcō, -ere	to collect	exeō, -īre	to go out
sē ēripere	to escape		

**Narrative Reading VI** (*continued*)

... ut domum reditiōnis spē sublātā parātiōrēs ad omnia perīcula subeunda essent; trium mēnsū molita cibāria sibi quemque domō **efferre** iubent. Persuādent Rauracīs et Tulingīs et Latobrigīs finitimīs utī eōdem ūsī cōnsiliō oppidīs suīs vicīsque exūstīs ūnā cum iīs proficīscantur, Bōiōsque, quī trāns Rhēnum incoluerant et in agrum Nōricum trānsierant Nōrēiamque oppugnābant, receptōs ad sē sociōs sibi adscīscunt.

## VOCABULARY:

reditiō, reditiōnis <i>f.</i>	returning	utī = ut	
sublātā (from tollō)		exūrō, -ere, -uī,	to burn up
ad ... subeunda	“to undergo,” i.e. “to face”	-ūstus	
molita cibāria	“ground provisions”	vīcus, -ī <i>m.</i>	village
quemque (acc.)	“each one”	ūnā cum	together with
efferō, -ferre	to bring out	Bōiī, -ōrum <i>m.</i>	Boii (Celtic tribe)
Rauracī, -ōrum <i>m.</i>	Rauraci (tribe living near the Rhine)	Nōricus, -a, -um	Noric, of Noricum
		Nōrēia, -ae <i>f.</i>	Noreia (city in the eastern Alps, capital of Noricum)
Tulingī, -ōrum, <i>m.</i>	Tulingi (German tribe)	oppugnō, -āre	to attack
Latobrigī, -ōrum <i>m.</i>	Latobrigi (tribe living near the Helvetii)	ad sē	“into their own number”
		adscīscō, -ere	to receive, admit

## Dictionary Practice / Form Identification

Identify the words below based on the dictionary entries given. Be sure to indicate the **entry from which each is taken**, and the **part of speech** and to *give all possibilities for ambiguous forms*.

For **nouns** and **adjectives**: give case, number, and gender.

For **verbs**: give person, number, tense, voice and mood,

if infinitive, give tense and voice.

if participle, give case, number, gender, tense and voice.

- A. dicāx, dicācis: witty, sarcastic
- B. diciō, diciōnis *f*: power
- C. dicō, dicāre, dicāvī, dicātus: to dedicate, devote
- D. dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictus: to say, speak

	<i>Entry</i>	<i>Part of Speech</i>	<i>Form ID</i>
1.	dicārentur		
2.	diciōnum		
3.	dicācēs		
4.	dicta sint		
5.	dicāvissem		
6.	dicācissimae		
7.	diciōnī		
8.	dīxērunt		
9.	dicāta eram		
10.	dicantis		
11.	dīcerēs		
12.	dicācius		
13.	dīcī		
14.	dicās		
15.	dīcās		



# CHAPTER 31

## The Gerund The Gerundive Passive Periphrastic

You have already learned that certain verb forms can be used as nouns (infinitives §41) and others as adjectives (participles §94). This chapter introduces a second type of verbal noun called the **gerund**, and a new verbal adjective form, the **gerundive**, along with several common uses of these forms.

### 122. Gerund

A **gerund** is a verbal noun which is always singular and neuter. In English, it is sometimes hard to distinguish between a gerund (noun) and some participles (adjective) because both end in **-ing**. In examples such as the third one below, this can lead to real ambiguity and, sometimes, humor:

GERUND (= NOUN)

I like **hunting** rabbits.

**hunting** is the direct object of “like”

They succeeded by **working** hard.

**working** is the object of the preposition “by”

**Visiting** relatives can be difficult.  
i.e., it can be difficult **to visit**  
relatives

PARTICIPLE (= ADJECTIVE)

The **hunting** dogs are very quick.

**hunting** describes the dogs

The man **working** in the field ate lunch.

**working** describes the man

**Visiting** relatives can be difficult.  
i.e., relatives **who visit** can be  
difficult

EXERCISE 200. Identify each **-ing** word below as either a gerund or a participle. If it is a participle, draw an arrow to the noun it modifies.

1. She learned to speak Italian by practicing all the time.
2. Did you see him leaving early?
3. Being young, we enjoyed sneaking out at night.
4. While swimming in the lake, the boys saw a huge fish eating insects.
5. He was afraid of answering the questions incorrectly.
6. My dog loves the woman training her.
7. Already running late, he took a cab for the sake of arriving on time.
8. The Romans appointed many days for worshipping the gods.

Happily, in Latin the gerund does *not* look like a participle. The Latin gerund is formed by adding **-nd-** to the present stem of the verb, followed by the neuter singular endings of the second declension. Notice that there is no nominative form.

	1ST CONJ.	2ND CONJ.	3RD CONJ.	3RD CONJ. -iō	4TH CONJ.
<i>Gen.</i>	amandī	docendī	regendī	capiendī	audiendī
<i>Dat.</i>	amandō	docendō	regendō	capiendō	audiendō
<i>Acc.</i>	amandum	docendum	regendum	capiendum	audiendum
<i>Abl.</i>	amandō	docendō	regendō	capiendō	audiendō

Unlike other nouns in Latin, the gerund is never used as the subject or direct object of a verb, since the infinitive plays those roles. The dative case is relatively rare and the accusative is used only as the object of a few prepositions. Here are the most common uses for each case of the gerund:

### Genitive

- 1) with nouns  
**ars bene vivendī** the art of living well
- 2) with adjectives  
**cupidus discendī** desirous of learning; eager to learn
- 3) with **causā** or **grātiā** to show purpose  
**pugnandī causā** for the sake of fighting; in order to fight

### Dative

- 1) with adjectives denoting fitness or suitability  
**bonus dicendō** good at speaking  
**nāvis apta nāvigandō** a ship fit for sailing

### Accusative

- 1) with **ad** to show purpose  
**ad pugnandum** for fighting; in order to fight  
**ad audiendum convēnērunt** they gathered to listen



**Ablative**

- 1) as an ablative of means

**dīcendō dīcere dīscimus** we learn to speak by speaking

- 2) with certain prepositions (
- ā/ab, dē, ex**
- or
- in**
- )

**dē bene vīvendō dīxērunt** they spoke about living well

Notice that the gerund can be used to indicate purpose either with **causā / grātiā** + genitive or **ad** + accusative.

EXERCISE 201. Translate the underlined phrases into Latin using a gerund.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. They came <u>in order to listen</u> .       | 5. <u>Because of fearing</u> defeat, we       |
| 2. <u>By fighting well</u> they won the war.   | seek peace.                                   |
| 3. He fights <u>for the sake of saving</u> us. | 6. He was <u>good at writing</u> poetry.      |
| 4. Are the fields <u>fit for cultivating</u> ? | 7. She called us <u>to speak</u> about Rome.  |
|  | 8. Good shoes are useful <u>for walking</u> . |

**123. Gerundive**

The **gerundive**, or future passive participle (§94, Chapter 24), looks like the gerund but, like other adjectives, can occur in the singular or plural of any case and gender. It uses first and second declension endings like **bonus, bona, bonum**:

SINGULAR	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
<i>Nominative</i>	amandus	amanda	amandum
<i>Genitive</i>	amandī	amandae	amandī
<i>Dative</i>	amandō	amandae	amandō
<i>Accusative</i>	amandum	amandam	amandum
<i>Ablative</i>	amandō	amandā	amandō
PLURAL			
<i>Nominative</i>	amandī	amandae	amanda
<i>Genitive</i>	amandōrum	amandārum	amandōrum
<i>Dative</i>	amandīs	amandīs	amandīs
<i>Accusative</i>	amandōs	amandās	amanda
<i>Ablative</i>	amandīs	amandīs	amandīs

EXERCISE 202. Identify each of the following as a gerund, gerundive or present active participle, and give its case, number and gender. If a form is ambiguous, identify all possibilities.

- |                 |                 |
|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1. liberandās   | 6. flōrentis    |
| 2. metuentum    | 7. ostendendus  |
| 3. metuendum    | 8. cōnspiciendō |
| 4. incendentī   | 9. iungentem    |
| 5. conveniendīs | 10. eundī       |

The gerundive has two main uses in Latin:

- 1) to show obligation, necessity or propriety (see especially §124 below)

crimina nōn <b>ferenda</b>	crimes not <b>to be tolerated</b>
vir <b>laudandus</b>	a man <b>to be praised</b>
librōs <b>legendōs</b>	books <b>worth reading</b>

- 2) to replace the gerund when the gerund would have a direct object

A gerund in the genitive or ablative (without a preposition) can have a direct object, but most Latin authors prefer to use a gerundive construction instead. This gerundive construction always replaces a gerund in the dative or a gerund dependent on a preposition if that gerund would have had a direct object. Notice that the gerundive agrees in case, number and gender with the word that would have been the object of the gerund.

#### GENITIVE

Preferred:	<b>urbis capiendae</b> causā	} for the sake <b>of capturing</b> <b>the city</b>
Possible:	<b>urbem capiendī</b> causā	

#### ABLATIVE

Preferred:	<b>pāce petendā</b>	} <b>by seeking peace</b>
Possible:	<b>pācem petendō</b>	

#### DATIVE

Gerundive <i>only</i>	bonus <b>temperandīs animīs</b>	good <b>at governing passions</b>
-----------------------	---------------------------------	-----------------------------------

#### ACCUSATIVE / WITH A PREPOSITION

Gerundive <i>only</i>	<b>ad pācem petendam</b>	<b>to seek peace</b>
-----------------------	--------------------------	----------------------

EXERCISE 203. Translate each of the following phrases.

- |                               |                           |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. scribendō                  | 6. pontem faciendum cūrat |
| 2. ad virtūtem laudandam      | 7. studium bellī gerendī  |
| 3. victoriae nūntiandae causā | 8. ad voluptātem petendam |
| 4. aptus legendō              | 9. in agendō              |
| 5. spēs vincendī              | 10. metus periendī        |

## 124. Passive Periphrastic

The most common use of the gerundive is in a construction called the **passive periphrastic**, in which the gerundive is used with a form of **sum, esse, fuī** to indicate obligation or necessity. If expressed, the person to whom the obligation attaches (the person who will do the action) is indicated by a **dative of agent**. Notice that even though the Latin expression is passive, colloquial English often prefers an active translation:

<b>Carthāgō dēlenda est.</b>	Carthage must be destroyed.
<b>Hoc mihi faciendum est.</b>	This must be done by me. I must do this.
<b>Dī omnibus colendī sunt.</b>	The gods must be worshipped by everyone. Everyone must worship the gods.
<b>Putō proelium commitendum esse.</b>	I think the battle must be joined (begun).

EXERCISE 204. Translate each of the following. Use the passive periphrastic where possible.

- |                                   |  |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| 1. Equus mittendus est.           | 5. Caesar must do these things.        |
| 2. Omnia finienda sunt.           | 6. The city must be founded.           |
| 3. Dīcit Caesarem laudandum esse. | 7. The army had to destroy the bridge. |
| 4. Fēminae eī conservandae sunt.  | 8. You (sg.) ought to drink the wine.  |

EXERCISE 205. Translate each of the following sentences.

1. Ex dīscendō capiunt voluptātem.
2. Multī Athēnās ad vīvendum ierant.
3. Exībant ad condendam urbem.
4. Lēgātī dīxērunt sē Rōmam cōsulis inveniendī causā vēnisse.
5. Vēnērunt oppidī capiendī causā.
6. Grātiaē dēīs vōbīs agendae sunt.
7. Arbitrātī sunt cibum pōtumque statim mittendum esse.
8. Spectandō sē in aquā, Narcissus sē amāre incēpit.
9. Signum datum est ut mīlitēs proelium committerent.
10. Nesciō quid mihi agendum sit.

EXERCISE 206. Translate into Latin, using a gerund or gerundive where possible.

1. This water is not useful for drinking.
2. Caesar had to fight many battles in Gaul.
3. Working at night is difficult.
4. They accomplished many things by working with great care.
5. Did he say we must carry all those weapons?
6. The leader called the soldiers to prepare the great ships.
7. He thought by killing the king he would free the state.
8. Iron is useful for making swords.
9. Do you know why the women had to sing those songs?
10. I will use the whole time for speaking.

## READING 36

*Cicero writes for his Roman countrymen about the different Greek schools of philosophy. Here he is talking about the philosopher Epicurus' belief that the Greatest Good in life (Id in line 1) is pleasure (voluptās), which is defined in his philosophy as the avoidance of pain (dolor).*

Id quī in ūnā virtūte pōnunt et **splendōre** nōminis captī quid nātūra postulet nōn intellegunt, **errōre** maximō, sī Epicūrum audīre voluerint, liberābuntur. istae enim vestrae eximiae pulchraeque virtūtēs nisi voluptātem efficerent, quis eās aut **laudābilēs** aut expetendās<sup>1</sup> arbitrārētur? Ut<sup>2</sup> enim medicōrum **scientiam** nōn ipsīus artis, sed bonae valetūdinis causā probāmus, et gubernātōris ars, quia bene nāvigandī ratiōnem habet, **ūtilitāte**, nōn arte laudātur, sīc sapientia, quae ars vīvendī putanda est, nōn expeterētur, sī nihil efficeret; nunc expetitur, quod est tamquam artifex conquīrendae et comparandae voluptātis. nam cum **ignōrātiōne** rērum bonārum et malārum māximē hominū vīta **vexētur**, ob eumque errōrem et voluptātibus māximīs saepe prīventur et dūrissimīs animī dolōribus torqueantur, sapientia est adhibenda, quae et **terrōribus cupiditātibusque** dētractīs et omnium **falsarum opiniōnum** temeritāte dērepta certissimam sē nōbīs ducem praebeat ad voluptātem.

## Notes:

1. Here, as often, the form of **sum** is omitted. Sc. **esse**
2. **Ut** here = “as,” “just as”

## VOCABULARY

splendor, -ōris <i>m.</i>	splendor	ignōrātiō, iōnis <i>f.</i>	ignorance
error, -ōris <i>m.</i>	error	vexō, -āre	to trouble, upset
Epicūrus, -ī <i>m.</i>	Epicurus	prīvō, -āre	to deprive (of)
iste, ista, istud	that	torqueō, -ēre	to twist; torment
eximius, -a, -um	fine, excellent	adhibeō, -ēre	to use
laudābilis, -e	worthy of praise	terror, -ōris <i>m.</i>	fear
expetō, -ere	to seek out, desire	cupiditās, -tātis <i>f.</i>	desire
medicus, -ī <i>m.</i>	doctor	dētrahō, -ere	to remove
scientia, -ae <i>f.</i>	knowledge, skill	falsus, -a, -um	false
valetūdō, -inis <i>f.</i>	health	opiniō, -iōnis <i>f.</i>	opinion, belief
gubernātor, -ōris <i>m.</i>	pilot, navigator	temeritās, -tātis <i>f.</i>	recklessness
ūtilitās, -tātis <i>f.</i>	utility, usefulness	dēripiō, -ere, -uī,	to remove
artifex, -icis <i>m.</i>	maker, author	-reptus	
conquīrō, -ere	to search for	certus, -a, -um	reliable, sure
comparō, -āre	to acquire	praebeō, -ēre	to offer

## PRACTICE SENTENCES

1. Magna sunt ea quae dīcō, mihi crēde; nolī haec **contemnere**. Dīcenda, dēmōnstranda, explicanda sunt omnia, causa nōn solum exponenda, sed etiam graviter **cōpiōsē**que agenda est; perficiendum est, sī quid agere aut proficere vīs, ut hominēs tē nōn solum audiant, vērū etiam libenter studiōsēque audiant. (Cicero; *arguing that he, not a rival, should take charge of a case*)
2. Nihil hōrum sine timōre mīrāmur. Et cum timendī sit causa nescīre, nōn est tantī scīre, nē timeās? (Seneca; *explaining that earthquakes are not caused by the gods*)
3. Ūnus homō nōbīs cūnctandō restituit rem. Nōn enim rūmōrēs pōnēbat ante salūtem. Ergō postque magisque virī nunc glōria clāret. (Ennius; *speaking of Quintus Fabius Maximus, who saved Rome in the second Punic War by refusing to engage in a full battle with Hannibal*)
4. Nihil enim sine ratiōne faciendum est. (Seneca)
5. Quis tālia fandō Myrmidonum Dolopumve aut dūri milēs Ulixī temperet ā lacrimīs? (Vergil; *Aeneas agrees to describe the fall of Troy, but warns the story is painful*)
6. Nihil agendō hominēs male agere dīscunt. (Cato)
7. Quod erat **dēmōnstrandum**. (Euclid; *this is the meaning of the standard abbreviation, Q.E.D., at the end of a proof*)
8. Extemplō Libyae magnās it Fāma per urbēs, **mōbilitāte** viget vīrēsque **adquīrit** eundō. (Vergil - adapted; *describing a personified Rumor*)

## VOCABULARY:

contemnō, -ere	to disparage, condemn	rēs = rēs pūblica	
dēmōnstrō, -āre	to explain; prove	post (adv.)	afterwards
explicō, -āre	to explain, set forth	clāreō, -ēre	to shine
expōnō, -ere	to explain, set forth	for, fārī	to speak, tell
graviter	seriously	Myrmidonēs, -um	Myrmidons
cōpiōsē	fully, in detail	m. (pl.)	(Greeks from Thessaly)
perficiō, -ere	to accomplish	Dolopēs, -um	Dolopes (more
prōficiō, -ere	to be successful	m. (pl.)	Greeks from Thessaly)
libenter	with pleasure	-ve	or
studiōsē	eagerly, enthusiastically	Ulixēs, -is m.	Ulysses (=Odysseus)
tanti esse	to be important	extemplō (adv.)	immediately
cūnctor, -ārī	to delay	Libya, -ae f.	Libya
restituō, -ere, -stitui	to restore	mōbilitās, -tātis f.	speed
rūmor, -ōris m.	reputation, popular opinion	vigeō, -ēre	to flourish, thrive
salūs, -ūtis f.	safety	adquīrō, -ere	to gain, acquire
		eundō	(here) as it goes

**PRACTICE SENTENCES (cont'd)**

9. Sī quis in hōc artem populō nōn nōvit amandī, (Ovid; *offering his services as*  
hoc legat et lēctō carmine doctus amet. *an instructor in the ways of*  
Arte citae vėlōque ratēs rēmōque reguntur, *love*)  
arte levēs currūs: arte regendus Amor.
10. Semper metuendō sapiēns ēvitat malum. (Publilius Syrus)
11. Hominis autem mēns discendō alitur et (Cicero)  
cōgitandō, semper aliquid aut anquirit aut agit  
videndīque et audiendī dēlectatiōne ducitur.

**VOCABULARY:**

nōscō, -ere, nōvī	to know	ēvito, -āre	to avoid
citūs, -a, -um	swift, quick	alō, -ere	to nourish
vėlum, -ī <i>n.</i>	sail	anquirō, -ere	to investigate,
ratis, -is <i>f.</i>	boat, ship; raft		inquire into
rēmūs, -ī <i>m.</i>	oar	dēlectātiō,	pleasure, delight
currus, -ūs <i>m.</i>	chariot	-iōnis <i>f.</i>	

**Chapter 31 Vocabulary****Nouns**

pons, pontis <i>m.</i>	bridge
studium, -iī <i>n.</i>	eagerness, zeal; study
voluptās, voluptātis <i>f.</i>	pleasure, delight

**Verbs**

committō, committere, commīsī, commissus	to join, unite, engage in
conveniō, convenire, convēnī	to assemble, gather; meet; agree
probō, probāre, probāvī, probātus	to approve (of); prove, show

**Adverbs**

male	badly
tamquam	as, just as, just like

# CHAPTER 32

## Points for Further Study

### Supine

### Ut + Indicative

### More on Relative Pronouns

#### Connecting Relative

#### Clauses of Characteristic

#### Clauses of Purpose

### Additional Uses of the Subjunctive

#### Potential

#### Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Speech

### Impersonal Constructions

No first year text can adequately cover every point of grammar, nor should it try. This chapter provides a brief collection of additional constructions you are likely to encounter in reading Latin authors. These constructions can be mastered as you move to the next level of study.

## 125. Supine

The **supine** is a verbal noun which adds endings of the fourth declension to the participial stem (§94) and is found only in the accusative and the ablative singular.

	1ST CONJ.	2ND CONJ.	3RD CONJ.	3RD CONJ. -iō	4TH CONJ.
<i>Acc.</i>	amāt <b>um</b>	doct <b>um</b>	rēct <b>um</b>	capt <b>um</b>	audīt <b>um</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	amāt <b>ū</b>	doct <b>ū</b>	rēct <b>ū</b>	capt <b>ū</b>	audīt <b>ū</b>

The accusative is used after **verbs of motion** to indicate **purpose**, and may take its own object:

**vēnit iuvātum**

he came to help

**lēgātōs mīsit rogātum pācem**

he sent envoys to ask for peace

The ablative is used as an ablative of specification (§57) after adjectives and a few nouns (**fās, nefās, opus**), and never has an object. There are only five common supines in **-ū**:

nefās <b>audītū</b>	a crime <b>to hear</b>	optimum <b>factū</b>	best <b>to do</b>
difficile <b>cognītū</b>	hard <b>to understand</b>	facile <b>vīsū</b>	easy <b>to see</b>
mirābile <b>dictū</b>	strange <b>to say</b>		

EXERCISE 207. Translate each of the following.

- |                            |                                   |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. Illud facile factū est. | 4. Carmina illius poëtae dulcia   |
| 2. Urbem captum ībant.     | audītū sunt.                      |
| 3. Hoc fās est vīsū.       | 5. Nihil dīgnum dictū āctum erat. |
|                            | 6. Dictum ad senātum vēnit.       |

## 126. Ut + the Indicative

In Chapter 28 (§114) you learned that **ut** could be used to introduce dependent clauses with a subjunctive verb. **Ut** has a number of other uses (and meanings), among the most common of which is to introduce dependent clauses with an indicative verb. The following can be added to the clause-markers you learned in Chapter 18 (§75):

ADVERBIAL CLAUSE MARKER	ENGLISH MEANING	CATEGORY
ut	when	time
ut	as	comparison

EXERCISE 208. Translate each of the following and identify the type of **ut** clause.

1. Ut summō cōspexit ab monte terrās infēlix, timōre tremuit.
2. Ille tantum pecūniae habuerat, ut beātus semper vidērētur.
3. Puellae tacent nec, ut ante solēbant, clāmantēs ambulānt.
4. Haec omnia fēcērunt ut pācem celerius habērent.

## 127. More on Relative Pronouns

So far you have learned that relative pronouns are used to introduce dependent clauses with an indicative verb (Ch. 19). These pronouns have additional uses, among which the most common are the following:

- 1) **connecting relative** - a relative pronoun at the beginning of a sentence is often used to connect it with the preceding sentence. In this use, the relative pronoun refers either to the whole preceding sentence or to one item in it and can be translated as a demonstrative or personal pronoun, often preceded by “and”:

**Quī** = **et is** / **hic**

“And he”

**Quae** = **et ea** / **haec**

“And she,”

**Quod** = **et id** / **hoc**

“And this”

Caesar exercitum suum in urbem  
dūxit. **Quod** cum vidissent hostēs,  
fūgērunt.

Caesar led his army into the city.  
**And** when the enemy saw/had  
seen **this**, they fled.



Eōrum finēs Nervii attingēbant.  
**Quōrum** dē nātūrā mōribusque  
 Caesar cum quaereret, sīc reperiēbat.

The Nervii bordered on their territory. **And** when Caesar asked about **their** nature and customs, he found the following.

Look at Readings 33 and 34 in Chapter 30 for two more examples.

- 2) **clauses of characteristic** - a relative clause with a subjunctive verb often describes a characteristic quality of an indefinite antecedent.

Sunt **quī dīcant** ....

There are those **who say** ....

Is **quī multa sciāt**.

He is the sort of man **who knows many things**.

Multa sunt **quae mentem moveant**.

There are many things **which influence the mind**.

- 3) **clauses of purpose** - a relative pronoun often replaces **ut** to introduce a purpose clause.

Militēs mīsīt **quī urbem caperent**.

He sent soldiers **to capture the city**.

Scribēbat ōrātiōnēs **quās aliī dīcerent**.

He used to write speeches **for others to deliver**.

## 128. Additional Uses of the Subjunctive

In addition to the subjunctive uses you have already learned (Ch. 27, 28, 29, 30 and §127 above), the following additional uses are common:

### Independent Use

**Potential** - indicates that something is possible; negative is **nōn**

You have already seen this use in the main clause of a future less vivid (“should-would”) condition (§121). Apart from this condition, the potential subjunctive is likely to appear in forms such as **velim** (*I would like*), **mālim** (*I would prefer*), **possim** (*I could*) and in the second person singular of verbs of perception:

**Nōlim** pūtēs illud.

**I wouldn’t want** you to think that.

**Vidērēs** pontum.

**You could see** the ocean.

Aliquis **dīcat** hoc.

Someone **may say** this.

## Dependent Use

**Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Speech** - dependent clauses which occur within an indirect statement, indirect command or indirect question have their verb in the subjunctive:

Pūtāmus virōs **quī pugnent** fortēs  
esse.

We think the men **who are fighting** are brave.

Rogāvit sī lēgēs scrīptās essent **quod multa crīmīna essent**.

He asked if laws were written **because there were many crimes**.

Imperat ut milītēs urbem **quam hostēs incendant** relinquunt.

He orders the soldiers to leave the city **which the enemy is burning**.

## 129. Impersonal Constructions

There are many impersonal expressions in Latin. Some verbs are impersonal, taking as their subject an infinitive + accusative (e.g. **oportet**), dative (e.g. **licet**) or genitive. Other verbs can be used impersonally in the passive voice.

Multās diēs **pugnātum est**.

**They fought (there was fighting)** for many days.

**Ventum est**.

**They came**.

Illud **videndum est**.

We (one) **must see** that.

**Oportet** mē ire.

**It is right** for me to go. (*or I should go*.)

**Licet** mihi ire.

**It is permitted** for me to go.  
(*or I am allowed to go*.)

EXERCISE 209. Translate each of the following sentences.

1. Ut Rōma ārdēbat imperātor cecinisse dīcitur.
2. Oportet hominēs ut vīvant pugnāre.
3. Dīxit sē irātum esse ubi eōs vīdisset.
4. Ille dux quī novam gentem conderet ad Ītaliā missus est.
5. Sunt quī crēdant Caesarem maximum imperātōrem Rōmae esse.
6. Ut dīu pugnātum est, fortiōrēs vīcērunt.
7. Facile crēderēs rēgem mortuum esse.
8. Puellīs in urbem ire licēbit.

EXERCISE 210. Translate into Latin.

1. He was the sort of man whom everyone praised. (*rel. clause of characteristic*)
2. The soldiers marched into our country to capture our cities and towns.  
(*use supine*)
3. There were two routes by which they could go out. (*rel. clause of characteristic*)
4. He says that he will go to Rome because he fears the senate.
5. It is always necessary for us to pray before we enter the temple. (*use oportet*)
6. Do you know any soldier who is not willing to die for his country?
7. When the consul was speaking in the senate, another man began to shout. (*use ut*)
8. We may send envoys to seek freedom for the slaves. (*rel. clause of purpose*)

## READING 37

*Cicero has been discussing dreams and has gotten off the subject. He returns to the subject here to tell how Hannibal avoided the anger of Juno by heeding the warning she gave him in a dream.*

Redeāmus ad **somnia**. Hannibalem Coelius<sup>1</sup> scribit,\* cum **columnam** auream, quae esset in fānō Iunōnis Lacīniae, auferre vellet dubitāretque utrum ea **solida** esset an extrīnsecus inaurata, perterebrāvisse, cumque **solidam** invēnisset, statuisset tollere; eī secundum quiētem vīsam esse Iunōnem praedīcere nē id faceret, minārīque, sī fēcisset, sē cūrātūrā [esse], ut eum quoque oculum<sup>2</sup>, quō bene vidēret, āmitteret, idque ab homine acūtō nōn esse neglēctum; itaque ex eō aurō, quod exterebrātum esset, būculam cūrāsse faciendam et eam in summā **columnā** conlocāvisse.

Notes:

- \* Notice that *scribit* in the first line introduces an indirect statement that lasts for the rest of the passage.
- 1. Coelius wrote a history of Rome, c. 120 B.C.
- 2. Hannibal had previously lost the sight in one eye to disease.

## VOCABULARY:

somnium, -ī <i>n.</i>	dream	secundum quiētem	“after sleep (came)”
columna, -ae <i>f.</i>	column	praedīcō, -ere	to warn
fānum, -ī <i>n.</i>	= templum	(+ dat.)	
Lacīnius, -a, -um	Lacinian, of Lacinium	minor, -ārī	to threaten
utrum (adv.)	whether	acūtus, -a, -um	intelligent, sharp
solidus, -a, -um	solid	itaque	and so, therefore
extrīnsecus (adv.)	on the outside	exterebrō, -āre, -āvī	to bore out
inaurō, -āre, -āvī,	to gild	-ātus	
-ātus		būcula, -ae <i>f.</i>	heifer
perterebrō, -āre	to bore through	cūrāsse	= cūrāvisse
statuō, -ere, -uī	to decide	conlocō, -āre, -āvī	to place

## READING 38

*Sallust in the first paragraph talks about the good old days when Rome was new but, in the second paragraph, describes how and why Rome began to decline.*

Igitur domī militiaeque bonī mōrēs colēbantur, **concordia maxuma, minuma avāritia** erat, iūs bonumque apud eōs nōn lēgibus magis quam nātūrā valēbat. Iūrgia, **discordiās**, simultātēs cum hostibus **exercēbant**, cīvēs cum cīvibus dē virtūte certābant. In suppliciīs deōrum **magnificī**, domī parcī, in amicōs fidēlēs erant. Duābus hīs artibus, **audāciā** in bellō, ubi pāx ēvēnerat aequitāte sēque remque pūblicam cūrābant. Quārum rērum egō maxuma **documenta** haec habeō, quod in bellō saepius vindicātum est in eōs quī contrā imperium in hostem pugnāverant quīque **tardius rēvocātī** proeliō **excesserant**, quam quī signa relinquere aut pulsī locō cēdere ausī erant; in pāce vēro, quod **beneficiīs** magis quam metū imperium agitābant, et acceptā iniūriā ignōscere quam persequī mālēbant.

Sed ubi labōre atque **iūstitiā** rēs pūblica crēvit, rēgēs magnī bellō domitī, **natiōnēs** ferae et populī ingentēs vī subāctī, ..., cūncta maria terraeque patēbant, **saevīre** fortūna ac mīscēre omnia coepit. Quī labōrēs, perīcula, dubiās atque asperās rēs facile **tolerāverant**, iīs ōtium dīvitiaeque, optanda aliās, onerī miseriaeque fuēre. Igitur prīmō pecūniae, deinde imperī cupīdō crēvit: ea quasi māteriēs omnium malōrum fuēre. Namque avāritia fidem probitātem ceterāsque artēs bonās subvortit; prō hīs superbiam, **crūdēlitātem**, deōs neglegere, omnia vēnālia habēre ēdocuit.

## VOCABULARY:

militiae	in service, "abroad"	persequor, -ī	to take revenge
concordia, -ae <i>f.</i>	harmony,	iūstitia, -ae <i>f.</i>	justice
	friendship	crēscō, -ere, crēvī	to grow
maxuma, minuma	= maxima, minima	domō, -āre,	to tame, conquer
avāritia, -ae <i>f.</i>	greed, selfishness	-uī, -itus	
iūrgium, -iī <i>n.</i>	quarrel	natiō, -iōnis <i>f.</i>	nation
discordia, -ae <i>f.</i>	disagreement	subigō, -ere, -ēgī,	to subdue
simultās, -tātis <i>f.</i>	feud, strife	-āctus	
exerceō, -ēre	to carry on, practice	saeviō, -īre	to rage, be cruel
certō, -āre	to compete,	misceō, -ēre	to mix, confuse
	contend	coepiō, -ere, coepī	to begin
supplicium, -iī <i>n.</i>	sacrifice, offering	dubius, -a, -um	uncertain,
magnificus, -a, -um	splendid		dangerous
parcus, -a, -um	thrifty, sparing	asper, -a, -um	rough, harsh
audācia, -ae <i>f.</i>	boldness	tolerō, -āre, -āvī	to tolerate
eveniō, -īre, -vēnī	to happen,	ōtium, -iī <i>n.</i>	leisure
	come about	dīvitiae, -ārum <i>f.</i>	riches, wealth
aequitās, -tātis <i>f.</i>	fairness,	aliās (adv.)	in other
	impartiality		circumstances
documentum, -ī <i>n.</i>	proof	onus, -eris <i>n.</i>	burden
vindicō, -āre	to punish	miseria, -ae <i>f.</i>	misery
tardē (adv.)	late	cupīdō, -inis <i>f.</i>	desire
rēvocō, -āre	to recall, call back	quasi (adv.)	so to speak
excēdō, -ere, -cessī	to withdraw	māteriēs, -eī <i>f.</i>	cause, root
pellō, -ere, pepulī,	to beat	probitās, -tātis <i>f.</i>	honesty
pulsus		subvortō, -ere	to destroy
beneficium, -iī <i>n.</i>	kindness	superbia, -ae <i>f.</i>	insolence
agitō, -āre	to exercise, manage	crūdēlitās,	cruelty,
iniūria, -ae <i>f.</i>	injury	-tātis <i>f.</i>	inhumanity
ignōscō, -ere (+ dat.)	to forgive	vēnālis, -e	venal, for sale
		ēdoceō, -ēre, -uī	to teach

## PRACTICE SENTENCES

1. **Horrendum** et dictū videō mīrābile mōnstrum. (Vergil; *Aeneas tells of his travels*)
2. Bellō **Helvetiōrum** cōfectō ... Galliae lēgātī ad Caesarem grātulātum convēnērunt. (Caesar)
3. Id dictū quam rē, ut plēraque, facilius erat. (Livy; *commenting on those who second-guessed a military strategy*)
4. Forsitan et Priamī fuerint quae Fāta requīrās. (Vergil; *Aeneas tells of the fall of Troy*)
5. Pompēius ut equitātum suum pulsum vīdit, aciē excessit. (Caesar; *Caesar defeats Pompey in 48 B.C.*)
6. “Neque is sum,” inquit, “quī gravissimē ex vōbīs mortis periculō terrear.” (Caesar; *Sabinus, a Roman general, boasts to his men of his courage, which ensuing events prove an idle boast*)
7. Haec habuī, dē **senectūte** quae dīcerem. (Cicero)
8. Itur in antiqūam silvam. (Vergil; *Aeneas and a comrade gather wood for a funeral pyre*)
9. Dē gustibus nōn disputandum est. (traditional)
10. Forsitan hoc quod dictūrus sum mīrābile auditū esse videātur, sed certē id dīcam quod sentiō. (Cicero; *addressing the senate after his return from exile*)
11. Cētera, quamquam ferenda nōn sunt, ferāmus. (Cicero; *in a letter to his wife from exile*)
12. Nunc est bībendum, nunc pede liberō pulsanda tellūs. (Horace; *the beginning of a famous drinking song*)

## VOCABULARY:

horrendus, -a, -um	horrible, terrible	equitātus, -ūs	cavalry
monstrum, -ī <i>n.</i>	portent, omen	<i>m.</i> (pl.)	
Helvetiī, -ōrum <i>m.</i>	the Helvetians	pellō, -ere, pepulī,	to beat
grātulō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus	to congratulate	pulsus	
plēraque (adv.)	“in most cases”	excēdō, -ere, -cessī	to leave, withdraw
Priamus, -ī <i>m.</i>	Priam, king of Troy	senectūs, -tūtis <i>f.</i>	old age
		gustus, -ūs <i>m.</i>	taste
Pompēius, -ī <i>m.</i>	Pompey	disputō, -āre	to argue
		quamquam (adv.)	although
		pulsō, -āre	to strike, tap

## Chapter 32 Vocabulary

### Nouns

fās *n. (indeclinable)*

fās est

nefās est

divine law, right

it is right

it is wrong

### Verbs

licet, licēre, licuit (*impersonal* + dat.)

oportet, oportēre, oportuit

(*impersonal* + acc.)

it is allowed, it is lawful

it is right, one should; it is necessary

### Adjective

mīrābilis, mīrābile

wonderful, extraordinary

### Adverbs

ante

forsitan

before (*time*); in front (*place*)

perhaps

(7)





# LIST OF LATIN SOURCES

## Readings

READING #	CHAPTER #	AUTHOR	SOURCE
1	4	Ennius	<i>Varia</i> 107-108
2	5	Ennius	<i>Varia</i> 9-10
3	5	Florus	<i>Epitome</i> 1.1
4	6	Ovid	<i>Metamorphoses</i> 1.366ff.
5	7	Ennius	<i>Varia</i> 113-115
6	8	Livy	<i>Ab Urbe Condita</i> 1.16
7	8	Cicero	<i>Pro Cluentio</i> 146.5ff.
8	9	Pliny	<i>Epistulae</i> 1.11
9	9	Cicero	<i>Epistulae</i> 14.5
10	10	Pliny	<i>Epistulae</i> 1.16
11	10	Pliny	<i>Epistulae</i> 1.10
12	11	Tacitus	<i>Germania</i> 7
13	11	Cicero	<i>De Natura Deorum</i> 1.34
14	12	Ovid	<i>Amores</i> 1.14
15	13	Caesar	<i>Bellum Gallicum</i> 1.1
16	14	Livy	<i>Ab Urbe Condita</i> 1.9
17	16	Livy	<i>Ab Urbe Condita</i> 1.39
18	16	Tacitus	<i>Annals</i> 4.59
19	17	Livy	<i>Ab Urbe Condita</i> 1.24-25
20	18	Livy	<i>Ab Urbe Condita</i> 1.25ff.
21	19	Caesar	<i>Bellum Gallicum</i> 4.29
22	20	Livy	<i>Ab Urbe Condita</i> 26.46-47
23	21	Caesar	<i>Bellum Gallicum</i> 5.45-46
24	22	Cornelius Nepos	<i>Themistocles</i> 9
25	23	Tacitus	<i>Annals</i> 13.16
26	24	Caesar	<i>Bellum Gallicum</i> 1.53
27	25	Ovid	<i>Fasti</i> 4.426-450
28	26	Cicero	<i>Epistulae ad Familiares</i> 14.3
29	27	Cicero	<i>Pro Sestio</i> 143
30	27	Ovid	<i>Metamorphoses</i> 8.227-235
31	28	Caesar	<i>Bellum Gallicum</i> 1.25-26
32	29	Caesar	<i>Bellum Gallicum</i> 1.2
33	30	Livy	<i>Ab Urbe Condita</i> 1.31
34	30	Cicero	<i>Tusculanae Disputationes</i> 1.43
35	30	Ovid	<i>Metamorphoses</i> 1.361-366

36	31	Cicero	<i>De Finibus</i> 1.42.11-43.9
37	32	Cicero	<i>De Divinatione</i> 1.48.2-11
38	32	Sallust	<i>Bellum Catilinae</i> 9-10

## Narrative Readings

READING CHAPTER #	AUTHOR	SOURCE
2	Livy	<i>Ab Urbe Condita</i> 1.1
3	Livy	<i>Ab Urbe Condita</i> 1.21.5-6
4	Livy	<i>Ab Urbe Condita</i> 1.27-28
5	Sallust	<i>Bellum Catilinae</i> 44-46
6	Caesar	<i>Bellum Gallicum</i> 1.4-5

## Practice Sentences

CH.SENTENCE #	AUTHOR	SOURCE
4.1	Pliny	<i>Natural Histories</i> 11.145.7
4.2	Ennius	<i>Varia</i> 60
5.1	Publilius Syrus	<i>Sententiae</i> N 51
5.2	Publilius Syrus	<i>Sententiae</i> M 30
5.3	Publilius Syrus	<i>Sententiae</i> N 36
5.4	Cicero	<i>Laelius de Amicitia</i> 54.6
6.1	Publilius Syrus	<i>Sententiae</i> I 59
6.2	Vergil	<i>Aeneid</i> 1.378-79
6.3	Seneca	<i>Epistulae Morales ad Lucilium</i> 115, 16.1
6.4	Vergil	<i>Aeneid</i> 1.8
7.1	Juvenal	<i>Satire</i> 10.356
7.2	Publilius Syrus	<i>Sententiae</i> B 28
7.3	Seneca	<i>Varia</i> 51
7.4	Vergil	<i>Aeneid</i> 1.133-134
7.5	Varro	<i>Res Rustica</i> 3.1.4.1
7.6	Cicero	<i>De Re Publica</i> 2.67.13
8.1	St. Jerome	<i>Epistle</i> 57.12.3
8.2	Cicero	<i>De Legibus</i> 2.10.1
8.3	Vergil	<i>Aeneid</i> 1.507
8.4	Publilius Syrus	<i>Sententiae</i> L 13
8.5	Cicero	<i>De Finibus</i> 3.4.12
8.6	Cicero	<i>De Finibus</i> 5.84
8.7	Anonymous	
9.1	Song	
9.2	Cicero	<i>De Natura Deorum</i> 2.167.7
9.3	Cicero	<i>Tusculanae Disputationes</i> 5.25.9
9.4	Vergil	<i>Aeneid</i> 1.630
9.5	Cicero	<i>Pro Milone</i> 4.11

---

10.1	Publilius Syrus	<i>Sententiae</i> V 14
10.2	Cicero	<i>Pro Caelio</i> 6
10.3	Livy	<i>Ab Urbe Condita</i> 1.1.5
10.4	Cicero	<i>Pro Rege Deiotaro</i> 26.13
10.5	Cicero	<i>De Agricultura</i> 2.41.4-6
11.1	Caesar	<i>Bellum Gallicum</i> 7.77.14.4
11.2	Vergil	<i>Aeneid</i> 4.314
11.3	Vergil	<i>Aeneid</i> 1.203
11.4	Seneca	<i>Dilogi</i> 9.17.10
11.5	Cicero	<i>Philippicae</i> 14.32.1-2
11.6	Publilius Syrus	<i>Sententiae</i> A 6
12.1	Livy	<i>Ab Urbe Condita</i> 1.31.8
12.2		Virginia state motto
12.3	Seneca	<i>De Beneficiis</i> 7.7.3.4
12.4	Livy	<i>Ab Urbe Condita</i> 5.45.4
12.5	Livy	<i>Ab Urbe Condita</i> 2.31.3
12.6	Seneca	<i>Epistulae Morales ad Lucilium</i> 66.12.4
13.1	Caesar	<i>Bellum Gallicum</i> 2.15.2
13.2	Ovid	<i>Metamorphoses</i> 14.729
13.3	Vergil	<i>Aeneid</i> 1.47-48
13.4	Cicero	<i>In Verrem</i> 2.1.9.8
13.5	Cicero	<i>Philippicae</i> 13.1.4
13.6	Vergil	<i>Aeneid</i> 1.364
14.1	Cicero	<i>Pro Murena</i> 23.5
14.2	Cicero	<i>Epistulae</i> 14.1.4.3
14.3	Vergil	<i>Eclogues</i> 5.78 & <i>Aeneid</i> 1.609
14.4	Cicero	<i>Pro Caecina</i> 35.8
14.5	Vergil	<i>Eclogues</i> 2.6
14.6	Cicero	<i>In Verrem</i> 2.2.168
15.1	Vergil	<i>Aeneid</i> 1.100-101
15.2	Cicero	<i>Cato Maiore De Senectute</i> 26.13
15.3	Horace	<i>Saturae</i> 1.9.59-60
15.4	Cicero	<i>Post Reditum in Senatu</i> 12.5-6
15.5	Cicero	<i>In Verrem</i> 2.4.147.2-3
15.6	Livy	<i>Ab Urbe Condita</i> 34.4.6.1-3
16.1	Ovid	<i>Amores</i> 1.12.1
16.2	Vergil	<i>Aeneid</i> 1.86
16.3	Caesar	<i>Bellum Gallicum</i> 1.4
16.4	Vergil	<i>Aeneid</i> 12.831
16.5	Livy	<i>Ab Urbe Condita</i> 7.39.12
16.6	Martial	<i>Epigrammata</i> 4.80.6
17.1	Caesar	<i>Bellum Gallicum</i> 3.23.3
17.2	Caesar	<i>Bellum Civile</i> 3.19.5.1
17.3	Horace	<i>Sermones</i> 1.2.11
17.4	Cicero	<i>Cato Maiore De Senectute</i> 22.8

17.5	Cicero	<i>Pro Roscio</i> 30.4
17.6	Vergil	<i>Eclogues</i> 4. 35-36
18.1	Seneca	<i>Epistulae Morales ad Lucilium</i> 7, 8.6
18.2	Terence	<i>Heauton Timorumenos</i> 272
18.3	Catullus	<i>Carmina</i> 51.1
18.4	Cicero	<i>De Finibus</i> 2.86.9
18.5	Seneca	<i>Epistulae Morales ad Lucilium</i> 66.26.7
18.6	Cicero	<i>Pro Roscio</i> 7.1
18.7	Livy	<i>Ab Urbe Condita</i> 1.8.7.2
19.1	Caesar	<i>Bellum Gallicum</i> 3.17.1
19.2	Caesar	<i>Bellum Gallicum</i> 1.6.1
19.3	Cicero	<i>In Catilinam</i> 1.17.12
19.4	Eutropius	<i>Breviarium Ab Urbe Condita</i> 1.2
19.5	Varro	<i>Res Rusticae</i> 2.1.3.3-4
19.6	Plautus	<i>Mercator</i> 808
19.7	Ovid	<i>Metamorphoses</i> 1.6-8
19.8	Propertius	<i>Elegiae</i> 3.13.60
19.9	Seneca	<i>Epistulae Morales ad Lucilium</i> 57.8.1
20.1	Vergil	<i>Aeneid</i> 1.1-4
20.2	Livy	<i>Ab Urbe Condita</i> 6.26.5
20.3	Cicero	<i>Pro Sestio</i> 53.16-19
20.4	Cicero	<i>De Inventione</i> 2.14.7-8
21.1	Sallust	<i>Bellum Catilinae</i> 54.6.3
21.2	Cicero	<i>In Q. Caecilium</i> 39.2
21.3	Petronius	<i>Satyricon</i> 16.4.3
21.4	Caesar	<i>Bellum Gallicum</i> 3.18.7
21.5	Theodosian Law Code	C.Th. 2.8.18
21.6	Plautus	<i>Trinummus</i> 361
21.7	Cicero	<i>De Legibus</i> 1.13.9
22.1	Cicero	<i>In Verrem</i> 2.2.21.11
22.2	Seneca	<i>Epistulae Morales ad Lucilium</i> 59.12.7
22.3	Vergil	<i>Aeneid</i> 2.41-44
22.4	Ennius	<i>Annals</i> 6.167
22.5	Ennius	<i>Annals</i> 7.233
22.6	Livy	<i>Ab Urbe Condita</i> 10.11.10.1
22.7	Cicero	<i>Philippicae</i> 14.32
23.1	Cicero	<i>Epistulae ad Atticum</i> 7.15.2
23.2	Caesar	<i>Bellum Gallicum</i> 5.9.6
23.3	Ovid	<i>Amores</i> 1.11.15
23.4	Horace	<i>Epodi</i> 2.2.58
23.5	Ovid	<i>Metamorphoses</i> 7.155-56
24.1	Caesar	<i>Bellum Gallicum</i> 5.46
24.2	Caesar	<i>Bellum Gallicum</i> 1.6.4
24.3	Vergil	<i>Aeneid</i> 2.265-267
24.4	Cornelius Nepos	(Hannibal) 23.5

---

24.5	Cicero	<i>De Fato</i> 17-18
24.6	Ovid	<i>Metamorphoses</i> 8.208
25.1	Terence	<i>Phormio</i> 137-138
25.2	Horace	<i>Carmina</i> 1.14.1-2
25.3	Vergil	<i>Aeneid</i> 2.49
25.4	Ennius	<i>Annales</i> 1.54
25.5	Cicero	<i>In Verrem</i> 2.4.112
26.1	Cicero	<i>In Catilinam</i> 1.27
26.2	Seneca	<i>Controversiae</i> 6.7.1.16
26.3	Cicero	<i>Pro Roscio Comodeo</i> 17.10
26.4	Cicero	<i>Pro Caecina</i> 22.8
26.5	Vergil	<i>Aeneid</i> 1.544-545
26.6	Ovid	<i>Metamorphoses</i> 11.421-22
26.7	Cicero	<i>Pro Rabirio</i> 14.3-6
26.8	Tacitus	<i>Agricola</i> 6
27.1	Catullus	<i>Carmina</i> 5.1-3
27.2	Plautus	<i>Curculio</i> 589
27.3	Cicero	<i>Pro Milone</i> 93
27.4	Caesar	<i>Bellum Gallicum</i> 7.4.4
27.5	Traditional	epitaph
27.6	Vergil	<i>Aeneid</i> 1.565
27.7	Seneca	<i>De Beneficiis</i> 2.11.2
27.8	Vergil	<i>Aeneid</i> 2.101-102
27.9	<i>Justinian</i>	<i>Digest</i> 21.1.26.4
28.1	Cicero	<i>Pro Roscio Comodeo</i> 12
28.2	Suetonius	<i>Life of Caligula</i> 30.1.4
28.3	Quintilian	<i>Institutio Oratoria</i> 9.3.85
28.4	Caesar	<i>Bellum Gallicum</i> 1.12
28.5	Cicero	<i>In Verrem</i> 2.2.47
28.6	Suetonius	<i>Life of Caligula</i> 30.2.7
28.7	Martial	<i>Epigrammata</i> 9.70.1
28.8	Cicero	<i>Tusculanae Disputationes</i> 3.71
29.1	Caesar	<i>Bellum Gallicum</i> 4.29
29.2	Cicero	<i>Brutus</i> 84
29.3	Cicero	<i>In Verrem</i> 2.4.118
29.4	Caesar	<i>Bellum Gallicum</i> 1.7
29.5	Catullus	<i>Carmina</i> 7.1-2
29.6	Cicero	<i>In Catilinam</i> 1.8
29.7	Cicero	<i>Ad Familiares</i> 13.73
29.8	Cicero	<i>De Finibus</i> 2.5.15
29.9	Vulgate	<i>Genesis</i> 1.9-10
30.1	Cicero	<i>Pro Roscio Comodeo</i> 42
30.2	Cicero	<i>Laelius de Amicitia</i> 10-12
30.3	Plautus	<i>Truculentus</i> 774
30.4	Cicero	<i>Cato Maiore De Senectute</i> 11

30.5	Cicero	<i>Pro Cluentio</i> 147
30.6	Plautus	<i>Miles Gloriosus</i> 1348
31.1	Cicero	<i>In Q. Caecilius</i> 39.2-7
31.2	Seneca	<i>Quaestiones Naturales</i> 6.3.4
31.3	Ennius	<i>Annales</i> 12.363-365
31.4	Seneca	<i>De Beneficiis</i> 4.10.2
31.5	Vergil	<i>Aeneid</i> 2.7-9
31.6	Cato	<i>De Agri Cultura</i> fr. 7.2
31.7	Euclid	Medieval translation from the original Greek
31.8	Vergil	<i>Aeneid</i> 4.173, 175
31.9	Ovid	<i>Ars Amatoria</i> 1.1-4
31.10	Publilius Syrus	<i>Sententiae</i> s 24
31.11	Cicero	<i>De Officiis</i> 1.105
32.1	Vergil	<i>Aeneid</i> 3.26
32.2	Caesar	<i>Bellum Gallicum</i> 1.30
32.3	Livy	<i>Ab Urbe Condita</i> 31.38.4.1
32.4	Vergil	<i>Aeneid</i> 2.506
32.5	Caesar	<i>Bellum Civile</i> 3.94
32.6	Caesar	<i>Bellum Gallicum</i> 5.30.2
32.7	Cicero	<i>Cato Maiore De Senectute</i> 85
32.8	Vergil	<i>Aeneid</i> 6.179
32.9	Traditional	proverb
32.10	Cicero	<i>In Pisonem</i> 32.10
32.11	Cicero	<i>Epistulae ad Familiares</i> 14.4
32.12	Horace	<i>Carmina</i> 1.37.1-2

# MORPHOLOGY

## REFERENCE

### SECTION

#### Nouns

- first declension
- second declension
- third declension
- fourth declension
- fifth declension

#### Adjectives

- first & second declension
- third declension
  - three endings
  - two endings
  - one ending

#### Numerals

#### Pronouns

- personal
- demonstrative
- intensive
- reflexive
- relative
- interrogative

#### Verbs

- indicative active
  - present, imperfect, future
  - perfect, pluperfect, future perfect
- subjunctive active
- imperative active
- infinitive active
- participle active
- indicative passive
  - present, imperfect, future
  - perfect, pluperfect, future perfect
- subjunctive passive
- imperative passive
- infinitive passive
- participle passive

#### deponent verbs

- imperative
- infinitive
- participle

#### irregular verbs

- sum**
- possum**
- volō, nōlō, mālō**
- eō**
- ferō**

## Nouns

	First Declension		Second Declension	
SINGULAR	FEMININE	MASCULINE	MASCULINE	NEUTER
<i>Nominative</i>	fēmina	animus	puer	rēgnum
<i>Genitive</i>	fēminae	animī	puerī	rēgnī
<i>Dative</i>	fēminae	animō	puerō	rēgnō
<i>Accusative</i>	fēminam	animum	puerum	rēgnum
<i>Ablative</i>	fēminā	animō	puerō	rēgnō
<i>Vocative</i>	fēmina	anime	puer	rēgnum
PLURAL				
<i>Nominative</i>	fēminae	animī	puerī	rēgna
<i>Genitive</i>	fēminārum	animōrum	puerōrum	rēgnōrum
<i>Dative</i>	fēminīs	animīs	puerīs	rēgnīs
<i>Accusative</i>	fēminās	animōs	puerōs	rēgna
<i>Ablative</i>	fēminīs	animīs	puerīs	rēgnīs
<i>Vocative</i>	fēminae	animī	puerī	rēgna

### Third Declension: masculine and feminine

SINGULAR	[—]	[-s]	[I-STEM]
<i>Nominative</i>	cōnsul	rēx	ars
<i>Genitive</i>	cōnsulis	rēgis	artis
<i>Dative</i>	cōnsulī	rēgī	artī
<i>Accusative</i>	cōnsulem	rēgem	artem
<i>Ablative</i>	cōnsule	rēge	arte
<i>Vocative</i>	cōnsul	rēx	ars
PLURAL			
<i>Nominative</i>	cōnsulēs	rēgēs	artēs
<i>Genitive</i>	cōnsulum	rēgum	artium
<i>Dative</i>	cōnsulibus	rēgibus	artibus
<i>Accusative</i>	cōnsulēs	rēgēs	artēs
<i>Ablative</i>	cōnsulibus	rēgibus	artibus
<i>Vocative</i>	cōnsulēs	rēgēs	artēs

### Third Declension: neuter

SINGULAR	[CONSONANT STEM]	[I-STEM]
<i>Nominative</i>	caput	mare
<i>Genitive</i>	capitis	maris
<i>Dative</i>	capitī	marī
<i>Accusative</i>	caput	mare
<i>Ablative</i>	capite	marī
<i>Vocative</i>	caput	mare



PLURAL	[CONSONANT STEM]	[I-STEM]
<i>Nominative</i>	capita	maria
<i>Genitive</i>	capitum	marium
<i>Dative</i>	capitibus	maribus
<i>Accusative</i>	capita	maria
<i>Ablative</i>	capitibus	maribus
<i>Vocative</i>	capita	maria

#### Fourth Declension

SINGULAR	M (& F)	NEUTER
<i>Nominative</i>	vultus	genū
<i>Genitive</i>	vultūs	genūs
<i>Dative</i>	vultuī	genū
<i>Accusative</i>	vultum	genū
<i>Ablative</i>	vultū	genū
<i>Vocative</i>	vultus	genū

PLURAL		
<i>Nominative</i>	vultūs	genua
<i>Genitive</i>	vultuum	genuum
<i>Dative</i>	vultibus	genibus
<i>Accusative</i>	vultūs	genua
<i>Ablative</i>	vultibus	genibus
<i>Vocative</i>	vultūs	genua

#### Fifth Declension

SINGULAR	MASCULINE	FEMININE
<i>Nominative</i>	diēs	rēs
<i>Genitive</i>	diēī	reī
<i>Dative</i>	diēī	reī
<i>Accusative</i>	diem	rem
<i>Ablative</i>	diē	rē
<i>Vocative</i>	diēs	rēs

PLURAL		
<i>Nominative</i>	diēs	rēs
<i>Genitive</i>	diērum	rērum
<i>Dative</i>	diēbus	rēbus
<i>Accusative</i>	diēs	rēs
<i>Ablative</i>	diēbus	rēbus
<i>Vocative</i>	diēs	rēs

## Adjectives

### First and Second Declension

SINGULAR	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
<i>Nominative</i>	bonus	bona	bonum
<i>Genitive</i>	bonī	bonae	bonī
<i>Dative</i>	bonō	bonae	bonō
<i>Accusative</i>	bonum	bonam	bonum
<i>Ablative</i>	bonō	bonā	bonō
PLURAL			
<i>Nominative</i>	bonī	bonae	bona
<i>Genitive</i>	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
<i>Dative</i>	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
<i>Accusative</i>	bonōs	bonās	bona
<i>Ablative</i>	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs

### Third Declension

#### Three-Ending Adjectives

SINGULAR	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
<i>Nominative</i>	ācer	ācris	ācre
<i>Genitive</i>	ācris	ācris	ācris
<i>Dative</i>	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī
<i>Accusative</i>	ācrem	ācrem	ācre
<i>Ablative</i>	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī
PLURAL			
<i>Nominative</i>	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
<i>Genitive</i>	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
<i>Dative</i>	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
<i>Accusative</i>	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
<i>Ablative</i>	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

**Two-Ending Adjectives**

SINGULAR	M & F	NEUTER
<i>Nominative</i>	omnis	omne
<i>Genitive</i>	omnis	omnis
<i>Dative</i>	omnī	omnī
<i>Accusative</i>	omnem	omne
<i>Ablative</i>	omnī	omnī
PLURAL		
<i>Nominative</i>	omnēs	omnia
<i>Genitive</i>	omnium	omnium
<i>Dative</i>	omnibus	omnibus
<i>Accusative</i>	omnēs	omnia
<i>Ablative</i>	omnibus	omnibus

**One-Ending Adjectives**

SINGULAR	M & F	NEUTER
<i>Nominative</i>	ingēns	ingēns
<i>Genitive</i>	ingentis	ingentis
<i>Dative</i>	ingentī	ingentī
<i>Accusative</i>	ingentem	ingēns
<i>Ablative</i>	ingentī	ingentī
PLURAL		
<i>Nominative</i>	ingentēs	ingentia
<i>Genitive</i>	ingentium	ingentium
<i>Dative</i>	ingentibus	ingentibus
<i>Accusative</i>	ingentēs	ingentia
<i>Ablative</i>	ingentibus	ingentibus

**Numerals**

CARDINAL			ORDINAL	
I	ūnus, -a, -um	one	prīmus, -a, -um	first
II	duo, duae, duo	two	secundus, -a, -um	second
III	trēs, tria	three	tertius, -a, -um	third
IV	quattuor	four	quārtus, -a, -um	fourth
V	quīnque	five	quīntus, -a, -um	fifth
VI	sex	six	sextus, -a, -um	sixth
VII	septem	seven	septimus, -a, -um	seventh
VIII	octō	eight	octāvus, -a, -um	eighth
IX	novem	nine	nōnus, -a, -um	ninth
X	decem	ten	decimus, -a, -um	tenth
XI	ūndecim	eleven	ūndecimus, -a, -um	eleventh
XII	duodecim	twelve	duodecimus, -a, -um	twelfth
XX	vīgintī	twenty		
XXX	trīgintā	thirty		
XL	quadrāgintā	forty		
L	quīnquāgintā	fifty		
LX	sexāgintā	sixty		
LXX	septuāgintā	seventy		
LXXX	octōgintā	eighty		
XC	nōnāgintā	ninety		
D	quīngentī	five hundred		
C	centum	one hundred		
M	mille	one thousand		

**ūnus, -a, -um**

SINGULAR	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
<i>Nominative</i>	ūnus	ūna	ūnum
<i>Genitive</i>	ūnīus	ūnīus	ūnīus
<i>Dative</i>	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī
<i>Accusative</i>	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum
<i>Ablative</i>	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō

**duo, duae, duo**

PLURAL	MASCULINE	FEMININE
<i>Nominative</i>	duo	duae
<i>Genitive</i>	duōrum	duārum
<i>Dative</i>	duōbus	duābus
<i>Accusative</i>	duōs	duās
<i>Ablative</i>	duōbus	duābus

**trēs, tria**

NEUTER	M & F	NEUTER
duo	trēs	tria
duōrum	trium	trium
duōbus	tribus	tribus
duo	trēs	tria
duōbus	tribus	tribus

## Pronouns

### Personal Pronouns:

<b>ego, tū</b>	<b>I, you</b>	
SINGULAR	1ST PERSON	2ND PERSON
<i>Nominative</i>	ego	tū
<i>Genitive</i>	meī	tuī
<i>Dative</i>	mihi	tibi
<i>Accusative</i>	mē	tē
<i>Ablative</i>	mē	tē
PLURAL		
<i>Nominative</i>	nōs	vōs
<i>Genitive</i>	nostrum, nostrī	vestrum, vestrī
<i>Dative</i>	nōbīs	vōbīs
<i>Accusative</i>	nōs	vōs
<i>Ablative</i>	nōbīs	vōbīs

**Third Person Pronoun uses the Demonstrative is, ea, id** (see below)

### Demonstrative Pronouns:

<b>is, ea, id</b>	<b>he, she, it; this; that</b>		
SINGULAR	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
<i>Nominative</i>	is	ea	id
<i>Genitive</i>	eius	eius	eius
<i>Dative</i>	eī	eī	eī
<i>Accusative</i>	eum	eam	id
<i>Ablative</i>	eō	eā	eō
PLURAL			
<i>Nominative</i>	eī	cae	ea
<i>Genitive</i>	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
<i>Dative</i>	eīs	eīs	eīs
<i>Accusative</i>	eōs	eās	ea
<i>Ablative</i>	eīs	eīs	eīs

**hic, haec, hoc****this, these; the latter**

SINGULAR	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
<i>Nominative</i>	hic	haec	hoc
<i>Genitive</i>	hūius	hūius	hūius
<i>Dative</i>	huīc	huīc	huīc
<i>Accusative</i>	hunc	hanc	hoc
<i>Ablative</i>	hōc	hāc	hōc
PLURAL			
<i>Nominative</i>	hī	hae	haec
<i>Genitive</i>	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
<i>Dative</i>	hīs	hīs	hīs
<i>Accusative</i>	hōs	hās	haec
<i>Ablative</i>	hīs	hīs	hīs

**ille, illa, illud****that, those; the famous; the former**

SINGULAR	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
<i>Nominative</i>	ille	illa	illud
<i>Genitive</i>	illīus	illīus	illīus
<i>Dative</i>	illī	illī	illī
<i>Accusative</i>	illum	illam	illud
<i>Ablative</i>	illō	illā	illō
PLURAL			
<i>Nominative</i>	illī	illae	illa
<i>Genitive</i>	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
<i>Dative</i>	illīs	illīs	illīs
<i>Accusative</i>	illōs	illās	illa
<i>Ablative</i>	illīs	illīs	illīs

**Intensive Pronouns:****ipse, ipsa, ipsum**      **\_\_\_\_\_self, himself, herself, itself, themselves**

SINGULAR      MASCULINE      FEMININE      NEUTER

<i>Nominative</i>	ipse	ipsa	ipsum
<i>Genitive</i>	ipsius	ipsius	ipsius
<i>Dative</i>	ipsi	ipsi	ipsi
<i>Accusative</i>	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum
<i>Ablative</i>	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō

PLURAL

<i>Nominative</i>	ipsi	ipsae	ipsa
<i>Genitive</i>	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
<i>Dative</i>	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis
<i>Accusative</i>	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
<i>Ablative</i>	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis

**īdem, eadem, idem**      **the same**

SINGULAR      MASCULINE      FEMININE      NEUTER

<i>Nominative</i>	īdem	eadem	idem
<i>Genitive</i>	eiusdem	eiusdem	eiusdem
<i>Dative</i>	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem
<i>Accusative</i>	eundem	eandem	idem
<i>Ablative</i>	eōdem	eādem	eōdem

PLURAL

<i>Nominative</i>	eīdem	eaedem	eadem
<i>Genitive</i>	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
<i>Dative</i>	eīsdem	eīsdem	eīsdem
<i>Accusative</i>	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
<i>Ablative</i>	eīsdem	eīsdem	eīsdem

**Reflexive Pronoun:        myself, yourself, him/herself**

SINGULAR	1ST PERSON	2ND PERSON	3RD PERSON
<i>Genitive</i>	meī	tuī	suī
<i>Dative</i>	mihi	tibi	sibi
<i>Accusative</i>	mē	tē	sē, sēsē
<i>Ablative</i>	mē	tē	sē, sēsē

**PLURAL**

<i>Genitive</i>	nostrum, nostrī	vestrum, vestrī	suī
<i>Dative</i>	nōbīs	vōbīs	sibi
<i>Accusative</i>	nōs	vōs	sē, sēsē
<i>Ablative</i>	nōbīs	vōbīs	sē, sēsē

**Relative Pronoun:        who, which, that**

SINGULAR	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
<i>Nominative</i>	quī	quae	quod
<i>Genitive</i>	cūius	cūius	cūius
<i>Dative</i>	cui	cui	cui
<i>Accusative</i>	quem	quam	quod
<i>Ablative</i>	quō	quā	quō

**PLURAL**

<i>Nominative</i>	quī	quae	quae
<i>Genitive</i>	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dative</i>	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Accusative</i>	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Ablative</i>	quibus	quibus	quibus

**Interrogative Pronoun\*: who?, what?**

SINGULAR	MASCULINE & FEMININE	NEUTER
<i>Nominative</i>	quis	quid
<i>Genitive</i>	cūius	cūius
<i>Dative</i>	cui	cui
<i>Accusative</i>	quem	quid
<i>Ablative</i>	quō	quō

*\*plural forms look like Relative Pronoun above*



**Verbs****Indicative Active:****Present**

	1ST CONJ.	2ND CONJ.	3RD CONJ.	3RD CONJ. -IŌ	4TH CONJ.
<i>1st sg.</i>	amō	docēō	regō	capiō	audiō
<i>2nd sg.</i>	amās	docēs	regis	capis	audīs
<i>3rd sg.</i>	amat	docet	regit	capit	audit
<i>1st pl.</i>	amāmus	docēmus	regimus	capimus	audīmus
<i>2nd pl.</i>	amātis	docētis	regitis	capitis	audītis
<i>3rd pl.</i>	amant	docent	regunt	capiunt	audiunt

**Imperfect**

	1ST CONJ.	2ND CONJ.	3RD CONJ.	3RD CONJ. -IŌ	4TH CONJ.
<i>1st sg.</i>	amābam	docēbam	regēbam	capiēbam	audiēbam
<i>2nd sg.</i>	amābās	docēbās	regēbās	capiēbās	audiēbās
<i>3rd sg.</i>	amābat	docēbat	regēbat	capiēbat	audiēbat
<i>1st pl.</i>	amābāmus	docēbāmus	regēbāmus	capiēbāmus	audiēbāmus
<i>2nd pl.</i>	amābātis	docēbātis	regēbātis	capiēbātis	audiēbātis
<i>3rd pl.</i>	amābant	docēbant	regēbant	capiēbant	audiēbant

**Future**

	1ST CONJ.	2ND CONJ.	3RD CONJ.	3RD CONJ. -IŌ	4TH CONJ.
<i>1st sg.</i>	amābō	docēbō	regam	capiam	audiam
<i>2nd sg.</i>	amābis	docēbis	regēs	capiēs	audiēs
<i>3rd sg.</i>	amabit	docēbit	reget	capiet	audiet
<i>1st pl.</i>	amābimus	docēbimus	regēmus	capiēmus	audiēmus
<i>2nd pl.</i>	amābitis	docēbitis	regētis	capiētis	audiētis
<i>3rd pl.</i>	amābunt	docēbunt	regent	capient	audient

**Perfect**

	1ST CONJ.	2ND CONJ.	3RD CONJ.	4TH CONJ.
<i>1st sg.</i>	amāvī	docuī	rēxī	audīvī
<i>2nd sg.</i>	amāvistī	docuistī	rēxistī	audīvistī
<i>3rd sg.</i>	amāvit	docuit	rēxit	audīvit
<i>1st pl.</i>	amāvimus	docuimus	rēximus	audīvimus
<i>2nd pl.</i>	amāvistis	docuistis	rēxistis	audīvistis
<i>3rd pl.</i>	amāvērunt / amāvēre	docuērunt / docuēre	rēxērunt / rēxēre	audīvērunt / audīvēre

**Pluperfect**

	1ST CONJ.	2ND CONJ.	3RD CONJ.	4TH CONJ.
<i>1st sg.</i>	amāveram	docueram	rēxeram	audīveram
<i>2nd sg.</i>	amāverās	docuerās	rēxerās	audīverās
<i>3rd sg.</i>	amāverat	docuerat	rēxerat	audīverat
<i>1st pl.</i>	amāverāmus	docuerāmus	rēxerāmus	audīverāmus
<i>2nd pl.</i>	amāverātis	docuerātis	rēxerātis	audīverātis
<i>3rd pl.</i>	amāverant	docuerant	rēxerant	audīverant

**Future Perfect**

	1ST CONJ.	2ND CONJ.	3RD CONJ.	4TH CONJ.
<i>1st sg.</i>	amāverō	docuerō	rēxerō	audīverō
<i>2nd sg.</i>	amāveris	docueris	rēxeris	audīveris
<i>3rd sg.</i>	amāverit	docuerit	rēxerit	audīverit
<i>1st pl.</i>	amāverimus	docuerimus	rēxerimus	audīverimus
<i>2nd pl.</i>	amāveritis	docueritis	rēxeritis	audīveritis
<i>3rd pl.</i>	amāverint	docuerint	rēxerint	audīverint

**Subjunctive Active:****Present**

	1ST CONJ.	2ND CONJ.	3RD CONJ.	3RD CONJ. -IŌ	4TH CONJ.
<i>1st sg.</i>	amem	doceam	regam	capiam	audiam
<i>2nd sg.</i>	amēs	doceās	regās	capiās	audiās
<i>3rd sg.</i>	amet	doceat	regat	capiat	audiat
<i>1st pl.</i>	amēmus	doceāmus	regāmus	capiāmus	audiāmus
<i>2nd pl.</i>	amētis	doceātis	regātis	capiātis	audiātis
<i>3rd pl.</i>	ament	doceant	regant	capiant	audiant

**Imperfect**

	1ST CONJ.	2ND CONJ.	3RD CONJ.	3RD CONJ. -IŌ	4TH CONJ.
<i>1st sg.</i>	amārem	docērem	regerem	caperem	audīrem
<i>2nd sg.</i>	amārēs	docērēs	regerēs	caperēs	audirēs
<i>3rd sg.</i>	amāret	docēret	regeret	caperet	audiret
<i>1st pl.</i>	amārēmus	docērēmus	regerēmus	caperēmus	audirēmus
<i>2nd pl.</i>	amārētis	docērētis	regerētis	caperētis	audirētis
<i>3rd pl.</i>	amārent	docērent	regerent	caperent	audirent

**Perfect**

	1ST CONJ.	2ND CONJ.	3RD CONJ.	4TH CONJ.
<i>1st sg.</i>	amāverim	docuerim	rēxerim	audīverim
<i>2nd sg.</i>	amāverīs	docuerīs	rēxerīs	audīverīs
<i>3rd sg.</i>	amāverit	docuerit	rēxerit	audīverit
<i>1st pl.</i>	amāverīmus	docuerīmus	rēxerīmus	audīverīmus
<i>2nd pl.</i>	amāverītis	docuerītis	rēxerītis	audīverītis
<i>3rd pl.</i>	amāverint	docuerint	rēxerint	audīverint

**Pluperfect**

	1ST CONJ.	2ND CONJ.	3RD CONJ.	4TH CONJ.
<i>1st sg.</i>	amāvissem	docuissem	rēxissem	audīvissem
<i>2nd sg.</i>	amāvisse	docuissēs	rēxissēs	audīvisse
<i>3rd sg.</i>	amāvisset	docuisset	rēxisset	audīvisset
<i>1st pl.</i>	amāvissemus	docuissēmus	rēxissēmus	audīvissemus
<i>2nd pl.</i>	amāvissetis	docuissētis	rēxissetis	audīvissetis
<i>3rd pl.</i>	amāvissent	docuissent	rēxissent	audīvissent

**Imperative Active:****Present**

	1ST CONJ.	2ND CONJ.	3RD CONJ.	3RD CONJ. -iō	4TH CONJ.
<i>2nd sg.</i>	amā	docē	rege	cape	audī
<i>2nd pl.</i>	amāte	docēte	regite	capite	audīte

**Infinitive Active:**

	1ST CONJ.	2ND CONJ.	3RD CONJ.	4TH CONJ.
<i>Present</i>	amāre	docēre	regere	audīre
<i>Perfect</i>	amāvisse	docuisse	rēxisse	audīvisse
<i>Future</i>	amātūrus, -a, -um esse	doctūrus, -a, -um esse	rēctūrus, -a, -um esse	audītūrus, -a, -um esse

**Participle Active:**

	1ST CONJ.	2ND CONJ.	3RD CONJ.	4TH CONJ.
<i>Present</i>	amāns, -ntis	docēns, -ntis	regēns, -ntis	audīēns, -ntis
<i>Future</i>	amātūrus, -a, -um	doctūrus, -a, -um	rēctūrus, -a, -um	audītūrus, -a, -um

**Indicative Passive:****Present**

	1ST CONJ.	2ND CONJ.	3RD CONJ.	3RD CONJ. -IŌ	4TH CONJ.
<i>1st sg.</i>	amor	doceor	regor	capior	audiōr
<i>2nd sg.</i>	amāris	docēris	regeris	caperis	audīris
<i>3rd sg.</i>	amātur	docētur	regitur	capitur	auditur
<i>1st pl.</i>	amāmur	docēmur	regimur	capimur	audīmur
<i>2nd pl.</i>	amāminī	docēminī	regiminī	capiminī	audīminī
<i>3rd pl.</i>	amantur	docentur	reguntur	capiuntur	audiuntur

**Imperative Passive:****Present**

	1ST CONJ.	2ND CONJ.	3RD CONJ.	4TH CONJ.
<i>2nd sg.</i>	amāre	docēre	regere	audire
<i>2nd pl.</i>	amāminī	docēminī	regiminī	audīminī

**Imperfect**

	1ST CONJ.	2ND CONJ.	3RD CONJ.	3RD CONJ. -IŌ	4TH CONJ.
<i>1st sg.</i>	amābar	docēbar	regēbar	capiēbar	audiēbar
<i>2nd sg.</i>	amābāris	docēbāris	regēbāris	capiēbāris	audiēbāris
<i>3rd sg.</i>	amābātur	docēbātur	regēbātur	capiēbātur	audiēbātur
<i>1st pl.</i>	amābāmur	docēbāmur	regēbāmur	capiēbāmur	audiēbāmur
<i>2nd pl.</i>	amābāminī	docēbāminī	regēbāminī	capiēbāminī	audiēbāminī
<i>3rd pl.</i>	amābantur	docēbantur	regēbantur	capiēbantur	audiēbantur

**Future**

	1ST CONJ.	2ND CONJ.	3RD CONJ.	3RD CONJ. -IŌ	4TH CONJ.
<i>1st sg.</i>	amābor	docēbor	regar	capiar	audiār
<i>2nd sg.</i>	amāberis	docēberis	regēris	capiēris	audiēris
<i>3rd sg.</i>	amābitur	docēbitur	regētur	capiētur	audiētur
<i>1st pl.</i>	amābimur	docēbimur	regēmur	capiēmur	audiēmur
<i>2nd pl.</i>	amābiminī	docēbiminī	regēminī	capiēminī	audiēminī
<i>3rd pl.</i>	amābuntur	docēbuntur	regentur	capientur	audientur

**Perfect\***

	1ST CONJ.	2ND CONJ.	3RD CONJ.	4TH CONJ.
<i>1st sg.</i>	amātus sum	doctus sum	rēctus sum	audītus sum
<i>2nd sg.</i>	amātus es	doctus es	rēctus es	audītus es
<i>3rd sg.</i>	amātus est	doctus est	rēctus est	audītus est
<i>1st pl.</i>	amātī sumus	doctī sumus	rēctī sumus	audītī sumus
<i>2nd pl.</i>	amātī estis	doctī estis	rēctī estis	audītī estis
<i>3rd pl.</i>	amātī sunt	doctī sunt	rēctī sunt	audītī sunt

\*NOTE: Only the masculine form is listed here for the perfect system. See §80.

**Pluperfect**

	1ST CONJ.	2ND CONJ.	3RD CONJ.	4TH CONJ.
<i>1st sg.</i>	amātus eram	doctus eram	rēctus eram	audītus eram
<i>2nd sg.</i>	amātus erās	doctus erās	rēctus erās	audītus erās
<i>3rd sg.</i>	amātus erat	doctus erat	rēctus erat	audītus erat
<i>1st pl.</i>	amātī erāmus	doctī erāmus	rēctī erāmus	audītī erāmus
<i>2nd pl.</i>	amātī erātis	doctī erātis	rēctī erātis	audītī erātis
<i>3rd pl.</i>	amātī erant	doctī erant	rēctī erant	audītī erant

**Future Perfect**

	1ST CONJ.	2ND CONJ.	3RD CONJ.	4TH CONJ.
<i>1st sg.</i>	amātus erō	doctus erō	rēctus erō	audītus erō
<i>2nd sg.</i>	amātus eris	doctus eris	rēctus eris	audītus eris
<i>3rd sg.</i>	amātus erit	doctus erit	rēctus erit	audītus erit
<i>1st pl.</i>	amātī erimus	doctī erimus	rēctī erimus	audītī erimus
<i>2nd pl.</i>	amātī eritis	doctī eritis	rēctī eritis	audītī eritis
<i>3rd pl.</i>	amātī erunt	doctī erunt	rēctī erunt	audītī erunt

**Subjunctive Passive:****Present**

	1ST CONJ.	2ND CONJ.	3RD CONJ.	3RD CONJ. -iō	4TH CONJ.
<i>1st sg.</i>	amer	docear	regar	capiar	audiar
<i>2nd sg.</i>	amārēris	doceāris	regāris	capiāris	audiāris
<i>3rd sg.</i>	amētur	doceātur	regātur	capiātur	audiātur
<i>1st pl.</i>	amēmur	doceāmur	regāmur	capiāmur	audiāmur
<i>2nd pl.</i>	amēminī	doceāminī	regāminī	capiāminī	audiāminī
<i>3rd pl.</i>	amentur	doceantur	regantur	capiāntur	audiantur

**Imperfect**

	1ST CONJ.	2ND CONJ.	3RD CONJ.	3RD CONJ. -IŌ	4TH CONJ.
<i>1st sg.</i>	amārer	docērer	regerer	caperer	audīrer
<i>2nd sg.</i>	amārēris (-re)	docērēris (-re)	regerēris (-re)	caperēris (-re)	audīrēris (-re)
<i>3rd sg.</i>	amārētur	docērētur	regerētur	caperētur	audīrētur
<i>1st pl.</i>	amārēmur	docērēmur	regerēmur	caperēmur	audīrēmur
<i>2nd pl.</i>	amārēminī	docērēminī	regerēminī	caperēminī	audīrēminī
<i>3rd pl.</i>	amārentur	docērentur	regerentur	caperentur	audīrentur

**Perfect**

	1ST CONJ.	2ND CONJ.	3RD CONJ.	4TH CONJ.
<i>1st sg.</i>	amātus sim	doctus sim	rēctus sim	audītus sim
<i>2nd sg.</i>	amātus sīs	doctus sīs	rēctus sīs	audītus sīs
<i>3rd sg.</i>	amātus sit	doctus sit	rēctus sit	audītus sit
<i>1st pl.</i>	amātī sīmus	doctī sīmus	rēctī sīmus	audītī sīmus
<i>2nd pl.</i>	amātī sītis	doctī sītis	rēctī sītis	audītī sītis
<i>3rd pl.</i>	amātī sint	doctī sint	rēctī sint	audītī sint

**Pluperfect**

	1ST CONJ.	2ND CONJ.	3RD CONJ.	4TH CONJ.
<i>1st sg.</i>	amātus essem	doctus essem	rēctus essem	audītus essem
<i>2nd sg.</i>	amātus essēs	doctus essēs	rēctus essēs	audītus essēs
<i>3rd sg.</i>	amātus esset	doctus esset	rēctus esset	audītus esset
<i>1st pl.</i>	amātī essēmus	doctī essēmus	rēctī essēmus	audītī essēmus
<i>2nd pl.</i>	amātī essētis	doctī essētis	rēctī essētis	audītī essētis
<i>3rd pl.</i>	amātī essent	doctī essent	rēctī essent	audītī essent

**Imperative of Deponents****Imperative Passive**

	1ST CONJ.	2ND CONJ.	3RD CONJ.	4TH CONJ.
<i>2nd sg.</i>	amāre	docēre	regere	audire
<i>2nd pl.</i>	amāminī	docēminī	regiminī	audiminī

**Infinitive Passive**

	1ST CONJ.	2ND CONJ.	3RD CONJ.	4TH CONJ.
<i>Present</i>	amārī	docērī	regī	audīrī
<i>Perfect</i>	amātus esse	doctus esse	rēctus esse	audītus esse
<i>Future</i>	amātum īrī	doctum īrī	rēctum īrī	audītum īrī

**Participle Passive**

	1ST CONJ.	2ND CONJ.	3RD CONJ.	4TH CONJ.
<i>Perfect</i>	amātus, -a, -um	doctus, -a, -um	rēctus, -a, -um	audītus, -a, -um
<i>Future</i> =	amandus,	docendus,	regendus,	audiendus,
<i>Gerundive</i>	-a, -um	-a, -um	-a, -um	-a, -um

**Deponent Verbs****Imperative (Present)**

	1ST CONJ.	2ND CONJ.	3RD CONJ.	4TH CONJ.
<i>2nd sg.</i>	morāre	verēre	loquere	potīre
<i>2nd pl.</i>	morāminī	verēminī	loquiminī	potīminī

**Infinitive**

	1ST CONJ.	2ND CONJ.	3RD CONJ.	4TH CONJ.
<i>Present</i>	morārī	verērī	loquī	potīrī
<i>Perfect</i>	morātus esse	veritus esse	locūtus esse	potītus esse
<i>Future</i>	morātūrus esse	veritūrus esse	locūtūrus esse	potītūrus esse

**Participles**

	1ST CONJ.	2ND CONJ.	3RD CONJ.	4TH CONJ.
<i>Present</i>	morāns	verēns	loquēns	potiēns
<i>Future</i>	morātūrus	veritūrus	locūtūrus	potītūrus
<i>Perfect</i>	morātus	veritus	locūtus	potītus
<i>Gerundive</i>	morandus	verendus	loquendus	potiendus

**Irregular Verbs**

sum, esse, fuī	to be
possum, posse, potuī	to be able
volō, velle, voluī	to want
nōlō, nōlle, nōluī	not to want
mālō, mälle, mālui	to prefer

**Indicative****Present**

	<b>to be</b>	<b>to be able</b>	<b>to want</b>	<b>not to want</b>	<b>to prefer</b>
<i>1st sg.</i>	sum	possum	volō	nōlō	mālō
<i>2nd sg.</i>	es	potes	vīs	nōn vīs	māvīs
<i>3rd sg.</i>	est	potest	vult	nōn vult	māvult
<i>1st pl.</i>	sumus	possumus	volumus	nolumus	mālumus
<i>2nd pl.</i>	estis	potestis	vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis
<i>3rd pl.</i>	sunt	possunt	volunt	nōlunt	mālunt

**Imperfect** [only **sum** and **possum** have regular forms here]

	<b>to be</b>	<b>to be able</b>	<b>to want</b>	<b>not to want</b>	<b>to prefer</b>
<i>1st sg.</i>	eram	poteram	volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam
<i>2nd sg.</i>	erās	poterās	volēbās	nōlēbās	mālēbās
<i>3rd sg.</i>	erat	poterat	volēbat	nōlēbat	mālēbat
<i>1st pl.</i>	erāmus	poterāmus	volēbāmus	nōlēbāmus	mālēbāmus
<i>2nd pl.</i>	erātis	poterātis	volēbātis	nōlēbātis	mālēbātis
<i>3rd pl.</i>	erant	poterant	volēbant	nōlēbant	mālēbant

**Future** [only **sum** and **possum** have regular forms here]

	<b>to be</b>	<b>to be able</b>	<b>to want</b>	<b>not to want</b>	<b>to prefer</b>
<i>1st sg.</i>	erō	poterō	volam	nōlam	mālam
<i>2nd sg.</i>	eris	poteris	volēs	nōlēs	mālēs
<i>3rd sg.</i>	erit	poterit	volet	nōlet	mālet
<i>1st pl.</i>	erimus	poterimus	volēmus	nōlēmus	mālēmus
<i>2nd pl.</i>	eritis	poteritis	volētis	nōlētis	mālētis
<i>3rd pl.</i>	erunt	poterunt	volent	nōlent	mālent

**Perfect** [these are all regular forms]

	<b>to be</b>	<b>to be able</b>	<b>to want</b>	<b>not to want</b>	<b>to prefer</b>
<i>1st sg.</i>	fuī	potuī	voluī	nōluī	māluī
<i>2nd sg.</i>	fuistī	potuistī	voluistī	nōluistī	māluistī
<i>3rd sg.</i>	fuit	potuit	voluit	nōluit	māluit
<i>1st pl.</i>	fuimus	potuimus	voluimus	nōluimus	māluimus
<i>2nd pl.</i>	fuistis	potuistis	voluistis	nōluistis	māluistis
<i>3rd pl.</i>	fuērunt	potuērunt	voluērunt	nōluērunt	māluērunt



**Pluperfect** [these are all regular forms]

	<b>to be</b>	<b>to be able</b>	<b>to want</b>	<b>not to want</b>	<b>to prefer</b>
<i>1st sg.</i>	fueram	potueram	volueram	nōlueram	mālueram
<i>2nd sg.</i>	fuerās	potuerās	voluerās	nōluerās	māluerās
<i>3rd sg.</i>	fuerat	potuerat	voluerat	nōluerat	māluerat
<i>1st pl.</i>	fuerāmus	potuerāmus	voluerāmus	nōluerāmus	māluerāmus
<i>2nd pl.</i>	fuerātis	potuerātis	voluerātis	nōluerātis	māluerātis
<i>3rd pl.</i>	fuerant	potuerant	voluerant	nōluerant	māluerant

**Future Perfect** [these are all regular forms]

	<b>to be</b>	<b>to be able</b>	<b>to want</b>	<b>not to want</b>	<b>to prefer</b>
<i>1st sg.</i>	fuerō	potuerō	voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō
<i>2nd sg.</i>	fueris	potueris	volueris	nōlueris	mālueris
<i>3rd sg.</i>	fuerit	potuerit	voluerit	nōluerit	māluerit
<i>1st pl.</i>	fuerimus	potuerimus	voluerimus	nōluerimus	māluerimus
<i>2nd pl.</i>	fueritis	potueritis	volueritis	nōlueritis	mālueritis
<i>3rd pl.</i>	fuerint	potuerint	voluerint	nōluerint	māluerint

**Subjunctive****Present**

	<b>to be</b>	<b>to be able</b>	<b>to want</b>	<b>not to want</b>	<b>to prefer</b>
<i>1st sg.</i>	sim	possim	velim	nōlim	mālim
<i>2nd sg.</i>	sīs	possīs	velīs	nōlīs	mālīs
<i>3rd sg.</i>	sit	possit	velit	nōlit	mālit
<i>1st pl.</i>	sīmus	possīmus	velīmus	nōlīmus	mālīmus
<i>2nd pl.</i>	sītis	possītis	velītis	nōlītis	mālītis
<i>3rd pl.</i>	sint	possint	velint	nōlint	mālint

**Imperfect** [these are all regular forms]

	<b>to be</b>	<b>to be able</b>	<b>to want</b>	<b>not to want</b>	<b>to prefer</b>
<i>1st sg.</i>	essem	possem	vellem	nōllem	māllem
<i>2nd sg.</i>	essēs	possēs	vellēs	nōllēs	māllēs
<i>3rd sg.</i>	esset	posset	vellet	nōllet	māllet
<i>1st pl.</i>	essēmus	possēmus	vellēmus	nōllēmus	māllēmus
<i>2nd pl.</i>	essētis	possētis	vellētis	nōllētis	māllētis
<i>3rd pl.</i>	essent	possent	vellent	nōllent	māllent

**Perfect** [these are all regular forms]

	<b>to be</b>	<b>to be able</b>	<b>to want</b>	<b>not to want</b>	<b>to prefer</b>
<i>1st sg.</i>	fuerim	potuerim	voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim
<i>2nd sg.</i>	fueris	potueris	voluerīs	nōluerīs	māluerīs
<i>3rd sg.</i>	fuerit	potuerit	voluerit	nōluerit	māluerit
<i>1st pl.</i>	fuerimus	potuerimus	voluerīmus	nōluerīmus	māluerīmus
<i>2nd pl.</i>	fueritis	potueritis	voluerītis	nōluerītis	māluerītis
<i>3rd pl.</i>	fuerint	potuerint	voluerint	nōluerint	māluerint

**Pluperfect** [these are all regular forms]

	<b>to be</b>	<b>to be able</b>	<b>to want</b>	<b>not to want</b>	<b>to prefer</b>
<i>1st sg.</i>	fuissem	potuissem	voluissem	nōluissem	māluissem
<i>2nd sg.</i>	fuiſsēs	potuiſsēs	voluissēs	nōluiſsēs	māluiſsēs
<i>3rd sg.</i>	fuiſſet	potuiſſet	voluiſſet	nōluiſſet	māluiſſet
<i>1st pl.</i>	fuiſſēmus	potuiſſēmus	voluissēmus	nōluiſſēmus	māluiſſēmus
<i>2nd pl.</i>	fuiſſētis	potuiſſētis	voluissētis	nōluiſſētis	māluiſſētis
<i>3rd pl.</i>	fuiſſent	potuiſſent	voluiſſent	nōluiſſent	māluiſſent

**Imperative****Present**

	<b>to be</b>	<b>to be able</b>	<b>to want</b>	<b>not to want</b>	<b>to prefer</b>
<i>2nd sg.</i>	es			nōlī	
<i>2nd pl.</i>	este			nōlīte	

**Infinitive**

	<b>to be</b>	<b>to be able</b>	<b>to want</b>	<b>not to want</b>	<b>to prefer</b>
<i>Present</i>	esse	posse	velle	nōlle	mälle
<i>Perfect</i>	fuisse	potuisse	voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse
<i>Future</i>	futūrus esse or fore				

**Participle**

	<b>to be</b>	<b>to be able</b>	<b>to want</b>	<b>not to want</b>	<b>to prefer</b>
<i>Present</i>		potēns, -ntis	volēns, -ntis	nōlēns, -ntis	
<i>Perfect</i>					
<i>Future</i>	futūrus, -a, -um				

**eō, ire, iī, itūrus to go****Indicative**

	PRESENT	IMPERFECT	FUTURE	PERFECT	PLUPERFECT	FUTURE PERFECT
<i>1st sg.</i>	eō	ībam	ībō	iī, (ivī)	ieram	ierō
<i>2nd sg.</i>	īs	ībās	ībis	iistī	ierās	ieris
<i>3rd sg.</i>	it	ībat	ībit	iit	ierat	ierit
<i>1st pl.</i>	īmus	ībāmus	ībimus	iimus	ierāmus	ierimus
<i>2nd pl.</i>	ītis	ībātis	ībitis	iistis	ierātis	ieritis
<i>3rd pl.</i>	eunt	ībant	ībunt	iērunt	ierant	ierint

**Subjunctive**

	PRESENT	IMPERFECT	PERFECT	PLUPERFECT
<i>1st sg.</i>	eam	īrem	ierim	īssem
<i>2nd sg.</i>	eās	īrēs	īerīs	īssēs
<i>3rd sg.</i>	eat	īret	ierit	īssēt
<i>1st pl.</i>	eāmus	īrēmus	īerīmus	īssēmus
<i>2nd pl.</i>	eātis	īrētis	īerītis	īssētis
<i>3rd pl.</i>	eant	īrent	ierint	īssent

**INFINITIVES**

<i>Present</i>	īre
<i>Perfect</i>	īsse
<i>Future</i>	itūrus esse

**IMPERATIVES**

<i>2nd sg.</i>	ī
<i>2nd pl.</i>	īte

**PARTICIPLES**

<i>Present</i>	iēns, euntis
<i>Future</i>	itūrus, -a, -um

**ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus to bear****Indicative**

	<b>Active</b>			<b>Passive</b>		
	PRESENT	IMPERFECT	FUTURE	PRESENT	IMPERFECT	FUTURE
<i>1st sg.</i>	ferō	ferēbam	feram	feror	ferēbar	ferar
<i>2nd sg.</i>	fers	ferēbās	ferēs	ferris	ferēbāris	ferēris
<i>3rd sg.</i>	fert	ferēbat	feret	fertur	ferēbātur	ferētur
<i>1st pl.</i>	ferimus	ferēbāmus	ferēmus	ferimur	ferēbāmur	ferēmur
<i>2nd pl.</i>	fertis	ferēbātis	ferētis	feriminī	ferēbāminī	ferēminī
<i>3rd pl.</i>	ferunt	ferēbant	ferent	feruntur	ferēbantur	ferentur

**Subjunctive**

	<b>Active</b>		<b>Passive</b>	
	PRESENT	IMPERFECT	PRESENT	IMPERFECT
<i>1st sg.</i>	feram	ferrem	ferar	ferrer
<i>2nd sg.</i>	ferās	ferrēs	ferāris	ferrēris
<i>3rd sg.</i>	ferat	ferret	ferātur	ferretur
<i>1st pl.</i>	ferāmus	ferrēmus	ferāmur	ferrēmur
<i>2nd pl.</i>	ferātis	ferrētis	ferāminī	ferrēminī
<i>3rd pl.</i>	ferant	ferrent	ferantur	ferrentur
<i>1st sg.</i>	tulerim	tulissem	lātus sim	lātus essem
<i>2nd sg.</i>	tulerīs	tulissēs	lātus sīs	lātus essēs
<i>3rd sg.</i>	tulerit	tulisset	lātus sit	lātus esset
<i>1st pl.</i>	tulerīmus	tulissēmus	lātī sīmus	lātī essēmus
<i>2nd pl.</i>	tulerītis	tulissētis	lātī sītis	lātī essētis
<i>3rd pl.</i>	tulerint	tulissent	lātī sint	lātī essent

INFINITIVES	<b>Active</b>	<b>Passive</b>	<b>Active</b>
			IMPERATIVES
<i>Present</i>	ferre	ferri	<i>2nd sg.</i> fer
<i>Perfect</i>	tulisse	lātus esse	<i>2nd pl.</i> ferte
<i>Future</i>	lātūrus esse		
PARTICIPLES			
<i>Present</i>	ferēns, ferentis		
<i>Perfect</i>		lātus, -a, -um	
<i>Future</i>	lātūrus, -a, -um	ferendus, -a, -um	

# VOCABULARY

## BY CHAPTER

### Chapter 1

#### Nouns

agricola, agricolae *m.*  
aqua, aquae *f.*  
fāma, fāmae *f.*  
fēmina, fēminae *f.*  
fortūna, fortūnae *f.*  
nauta, nautae *m.*  
rosa, rosae *f.*

farmer  
water  
fame, report, reputation; rumor  
woman  
chance, luck, fortune  
sailor  
rose

#### Verbs

amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus  
dēbeō, dēbere, dēbuī, dēbitus  
doceō, docēre, docuī, doctus  
habeō, habere, habuī, habitus  
iaceō, iacere, iacuī  
iuvō, iuvare, iuvī, iūtus  
labōrō, labōrare, labōravī, labōrātus  
laudō, laudare, laudāvī, laudātus  
optō, optare, optāvī, optātus  
superō, superare, superāvī, superātus  
taceō, tacere, tacuī  
timeō, timere, timuī  
videō, videre, vidī, vīsus  
vocō, vocare, vocāvī, vocātus

to love  
to owe; to be obligated to ("I ought" to)  
to teach  
to have, hold; consider  
to lie (e.g. on the ground), lie dead  
to help; please  
to work, strive  
to praise  
to choose, desire, wish for  
to overcome, conquer, surpass  
to be silent ("I am silent")  
to fear, be afraid  
to see  
to call; name

#### Other

-ne (*attached to the end of the first word in the sentence, usually the most important word in the question*)

signals a simple question  
(*no English translation*)

## Chapter 2

### Nouns

ager, agrī <i>m.</i>	(cultivated) field; countryside
amīcus, amīcī <i>m.</i>	friend
animus, animī <i>m.</i>	mind, spirit, courage
bellum, bellī <i>n.</i>	war
cōnsilium, cōnsiliī <i>n.</i>	plan, advice
dominus, dominī <i>m.</i>	master, lord
dōnum, dōnī <i>n.</i>	gift, present
littera, litterae <i>f.</i>	letter (of the alphabet); (pl.) letter, literature
locus, locī <i>m.</i>	place, position
<i>(in pl. sometimes also neuter)</i>	
nātūra, nātūrae <i>f.</i>	nature
puer, puerī <i>m.</i>	boy
puella, puellae <i>f.</i>	girl
rēgnum, rēgnī <i>n.</i>	kingdom, royal power
vir, virī <i>m.</i>	man; hero; husband

### Verbs

audeō, audēre, ausus sum	to dare
clāmō, clāmāre, clāmāvī, clāmātus	to shout
dubitō, dubitāre, dubitāvī, dubitātus	to hesitate, doubt
ōrō, ōrāre, ōrāvī, ōrātus	to pray, beg, beg for
terreō, terrēre, terruī, territus	to terrify, scare

### Conjunctions

et	and
et ... et	both ... and
-que	and
sed	but

## Chapter 3

### Nouns

arma, armōrum <i>n.</i> (pl.)	arms, weapons
caelum, caelī <i>n.</i>	sky, heavens
deus, deī <i>m.</i>	god
nom. pl. = dī; dat. pl. and abl. pl. = dīs	
fābula, fābulae <i>f.</i>	story
imperium, imperiī <i>n.</i>	command, (military) power
liber, librī <i>m.</i>	book
nēmō <i>m.</i> acc. sg. = nēminem	no one
nihil <i>n.</i> ( <i>indeclinable</i> ) nīl (contracted form)	nothing
templum, templī <i>n.</i>	temple, shrine
turba, turbae <i>f.</i>	crowd
ventus, ventī <i>m.</i>	wind, breeze

### Verbs

aedificō, aedificāre, aedificāvī, aedificātus	to build
dō, dare, dedī, datus	to give
mōnstrō, mōnstrāre, mōnstrāvī, mōnstrātus	to show, demonstrate

nārrō, nārrāre, nārrāvī, nārrātus  
 nocteō, nocēre, nocuī (+ dat.)  
 pāreō, pāreere, pāruī (+ dat.)  
 placeō, placēre, placuī (+ dat.)  
 portō, portāre, portāvī, portātus  
 pugnō, pugnāre, pugnāvī, pugnātus  
 soleō, solēre, solitus sum

to tell (a story)  
 to harm, be harmful to  
 to obey, be obedient to  
 to please, be pleasing to  
 to carry, bring  
 to fight  
 to be accustomed

## Chapter 4

### Nouns

casa, casae *f.*  
 oculus, oculī *m.*  
 pontus, pontī *m.*  
 via, viae *f.*

cottage, house  
 eye  
 sea, ocean  
 way, road

### Verbs

ambulō, ambulāre, ambulāvī  
 errō, errāre, errāvī, errātus  
 festīnō, festīnāre, festīnāvī, festīnātus  
 moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtus  
 nāvigō, nāvigāre, nāvigāvī, nāvigātus

to walk  
 to wander; err  
 to hurry, hasten  
 to move  
 to sail

### Adverbs

facile  
 nōn  
 nunc  
 saepe  
 tandem  
 tum

easily  
 not  
 now  
 often  
 finally  
 then, at that time, next

### Prepositions

ā, ab (+ abl.)  
 ad (+ acc.)  
 ē, ex (+ abl.)  
 in (+ abl.)  
 in (+ acc.)  
 prō (+ abl.)  
 trāns (+ acc.)

away from  
 to, toward  
 out of, from  
 in, on  
 into, onto, against  
 in front of; on behalf of; instead of  
 across, beyond

## Chapter 5

### Nouns

cūra, cūrae *f.*  
 sapientia, sapientiae *f.*  
 saxum, saxī *n.*  
 silva, silvae *f.*  
 terra, terrae *f.*

care, anxiety  
 wisdom  
 rock; cliff  
 forest, wood  
 land, earth, soil; country

### Verbs

iactō, iactāre, iactāvī, iactātus  
 sum, esse, fuī, futūrus

to throw  
 to be, exist

**Adjectives**

aeger, aegra, aegrum	sick, weak
altus, alta, altum	high, deep
bonus, bona, bonum	good
divīnus, divīna, divīnum	divine, of the gods; prophetic
liber, libera, liberum	free
magnus, magna, magnum	large, great; important
malus, mala, malum	bad
meus, mea, meum	my
multus, multa, multum	much; many (pl.)
noster, nostra, nostrum	our
parvus, parva, parvum	small
pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum	beautiful, handsome; fine
tuus, tua, tuum	your, your own (sg.)
vester, vestra, vestrum	your (pl.)

**Prepositions**

cum (+ abl.)	with
sub (+ abl.)	under, beneath
sub (+ acc.)	to the foot/base of, along under ( <i>implying motion</i> )

**Chapter 6****Nouns**

cēna, cēnae <i>f.</i>	dinner
exemplum, exemplī <i>n.</i>	example
filia, filiae <i>f.</i>	daughter
filius, filii <i>m.</i> ( <i>voc. = fili</i> )	son
Ītalia, Ītaliae <i>f.</i>	Italy
pecūnia, pecūniae <i>f.</i>	money, property
populus, populī <i>m.</i>	the people; nation
rēgīna, rēgīnae <i>f.</i>	queen
vīta, vītae <i>f.</i>	life

**Verbs**

intrō, intrāre, intrāvī, intrātus	to enter
maneō, manēre, mānsī	to remain, stay
nūntiō, nūntiāre, nūntiāvī, nūntiātus	to announce, report
parō, parāre, parāvī, parātus	to prepare

**Adjectives**

laetus, laeta, laetum	happy; fertile
novus, nova, novum	new; strange
Rōmānus, Rōmāna, Rōmānum; Rōmānī, Rōmānōrum <i>m.</i> (pl.) ( <i>as a noun</i> )	Roman the Romans

**Adverbs**

diū	for a long time
semper	always



**Prepositions**

dē (+ abl.)

propter (+ acc.)

sine (+ abl.)

down from; about, concerning

because of, on account of

without

**Conjunction**enim (*never appears as the first word  
in a sentence - "postpositive"*)

for; in fact; yes, truly

**Chapter 7****Nouns**ars, artis *f.*caput, capitis *n.*cīvitās, cīvitātis *f.*cōsul, cōsulis *m.*

skill, art

head; summit

state

consul (one of two supreme magistrates

elected annually in the Roman Republic)

corpus, corporis *n.*dux, ducis *m.*frāter, frātris *m.*homō, hominis *m.*īra, īrae *f.*māter, mātis *f.*mēns, mentis *f.*mors, mortis *f.*nūmen, nūminis *n.*pater, patris *m.*rēx, rēgis *m.*urbs, urbis *f.*uxor, uxōris *f.*vēritās, vēritātis *f.*virtūs, virtūtis *f.*vōx, vōcis *f.*

body, corpse

(military) leader, commander

brother

man, human being

anger

mother

mind, judgment, reason

death

divine will, divine power

father

king

city

wife

truth

courage, excellence, virtue

voice

**Verb**

teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentus

to hold, have; restrain

**Adjective**

miser, misera, miserum

miserable, unhappy

**Chapter 8****Nouns**lex, lēgis *f.*lībertās, lībertātis *f.*lūna, lūnae *f.*lūx, lūcis *f.*mōns, montis *m.*nōmen, nōminis *n.*opus, operis *n.*pars, partis *f.*

law

freedom, liberty

moon

light

mountain

name

work, task

part, share, direction

patria, patriae <i>f.</i>	country, fatherland
pāx, pācis <i>f.</i>	peace
perīculum, perīculī <i>n.</i>	danger
ratio, ratiōnis <i>f.</i>	reason, judgment; method
verbum, verbī <i>n.</i>	word
<b>Verbs</b>	
doleō, dolēre, doluī	to grieve, mourn, suffer pain
possum, posse, potuī	to be able, "I can"
studeō, studēre, studuī (+ dat.)	to be eager, to give attention
<b>Adjectives</b>	
clārus, clāra, clārum	clear, bright; famous; loud
irātus, irāta, irātum	angry
plēnus, plēna, plēnum (+ gen. or abl.)	full (of), filled (with)
sacer, sacra, sacrum	sacred
<b>Adverb</b>	
subitō	suddenly
<b>Preposition</b>	
post (+ acc.)	after, behind

## Chapter 9

### Nouns

carmen, carminis <i>n.</i>	song, poem
poēta, poētae <i>m.</i>	poet

### Verbs

agō, agere, ēgī, āctus	to do, perform; drive
quid agis?	how are you (doing)?
capīō, capere, cēpī, captus	to take, seize, capture
dīcō, dicere, dīxī, dictus	to say, speak, tell
dīscō, discere, didicī	to learn
dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus	to lead
faciō, facere, fēcī, factus	to do, make
mittō, mittere, mīsī, missus	to send
regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus	to rule
scribō, scribere, scrīpsī, scrīptus	to write
sedeō, sedēre, sēdī	to sit
valeō, valēre, valuī	to be well, healthy; to be strong
valē, valēte ( <i>imperative</i> )	goodbye, farewell
vincō, vincere, vīcī, victus	to conquer, win

### Pronouns

ego, nōs	I, we
tū, vōs	you, you (pl.)

### Adverbs

et	even, also
ōlim	once (upon a time), one day (in the future)

### Preposition

inter (+ acc.)	between, among
----------------	----------------

### Conjunction

aut ; aut ... aut	or; either ... or
-------------------	-------------------

## Chapter 10

### Nouns

factum, factī *n.*

iūs, iūris *n.*

### Verbs

cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī, cognitus

creō, creāre, creāvī, creātus

fugiō, fugere, fugī

incipiō, incipere, incēpī, inceptus

iūdicō, iūdicāre, iūdicāvī, iūdicātus

legō, legere, lēgī, lēctus

persuādeō, persuādere, persuāsī (+ dat.)

### Adjectives

alius, alia, aliud

aliī ... aliī

nūllus, nūlla, nūllum

sōlus, sōla, sōlum

nōn solum ... sed etiam

tōtus, tōta, tōtum

ūllus, ūlla, ūllum

ūnus, ūna, ūnum

### Pronouns

hic, haec, hoc

ille, illa, illud

is, ea, id

### Adverbs

etiam

ita

tamen

deed, act, exploit

right, law; justice

to learn, get to know, recognize

to create; elect, choose

to flee (from), escape, avoid

to begin

to judge; to decide

to read; choose, select

to persuade

other, another

some ... others

not any, no

alone, only

not only ... but also

whole, entire

any

one

this

that

he, she, it, they; this, that

even, also

so, thus, in this way

however, nevertheless, yet

## Chapter 11

### Nouns

causa, causae *f.*

causā (+ gen.)

coniunx, coniugis *m.* or *f.*

flūmen, flūminis *n.*

grātia, grātia *f.*

grātiās agere

lacrima, lacrimae *f.*

laus, laudis *f.*

mīlēs, mīlitis *m.*

timor, timōris *m.*

### Verbs

cadō, cadere, cecidī

crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditus (+ dat.)

petō, petere, petīvī or petiī, petitus

relinquō, relinquere, reliquī, relictus

cause, reason

for the sake of, because of

wife; husband; spouse

river

grace; favor, kindness; gratitude

to thank

tear

praise

soldier

fear, terror

to fall

to believe, trust

to seek, go after; ask; attack

to leave, abandon

**Adjectives**

dexter, dextra, dextrum	right; right hand
<i>numerals in §49 as assigned by your instructor</i>	
secundus, secunda, secundum	second; favorable

**Prepositions**

ante (+ acc.)	before, in front of
per (+ acc.)	through, along; because of; by (in oaths)

**Conjunctions**

nam ( <i>sometimes used as adverb</i> )	for (= because); indeed, truly
nec or neque	and not
nec ... nec; neque ... neque	neither ... nor

**Chapter 12****Nouns**

aetās, aetātis <i>f.</i>	age, life
annus, annī <i>m.</i>	year
dolor, doloris <i>m.</i>	pain, sorrow
Gallia, Galliae <i>f.</i>	Gaul
gēns, gentis <i>f.</i>	clan, tribe, family; nation; people
hōra, hōrae <i>f.</i>	hour, season
pēs, pedis <i>m.</i>	foot
tempus, temporis <i>n.</i>	time, opportunity

**Verbs**

discēdō, discēdere, discessī	to depart, go away; separate
gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus	to bear, carry on, wear
bellum gerō	to wage war

**Adjectives**

ācer, ācris, ācre	sharp, fierce; eager
brevis, breve	brief, short
celer, celeris, celere	swift, quick, rapid
difficilis, difficile	difficult
dulcis, dulce	sweet; pleasant
facilis, facile	easy
fēlix, fēlicis	fortunate, lucky
fortis, forte	brave; strong
ingēns, ingentis	huge; mighty
omnis, omne	all, every
potēns, potentis	powerful; able

**Adverbs**

sīc	thus, so
ter	three times, thrice

## Chapter 13

### Nouns

cōpia, cōpiae *f.*  
 finis, finis *m.*  
 iter, itineris *n.*  
 mora, morae *f.*  
 senex, senis *m.*

abundance, plenty, resources, wealth; (pl.) troops  
 end; border; (pl.) boundary, territory  
 journey, path, route; a day's march  
 delay  
 old man

### Verbs

audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus  
 dormiō, dormīre, dormīvī  
 finiō, finīre, finīvī, finītus  
 impediō, impedīre, impedīvī, impedītus  
 intellegō, intellegere, intellēxī, intellēctus  
 prohibeō, prohibēre, prohibuī, prohibītus  
 sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītus  
 sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsus  
 serviō, servīre, servīvī *or* servīī (+ dat.)  
 veniō, venīre, vēnī

to hear, listen  
 to sleep  
 to end, finish; die; limit  
 to hinder, prevent  
 to understand  
 to prohibit, keep from  
 to know; to know how to (+ inf.)  
 to feel, perceive  
 to serve  
 to come

### Adjectives

dīgnus, dīgna, dīgnum  
 indīgnus, indīgna, indīgnum  
 mortālis, mortāle  
 paucī, paucae, pauca (pl.)  
 reliquus, reliqua, reliquum  
 sapiēns, sapientis  
 superus, supera, superum  
 superī, superōrum *m.* (pl.)  
 suus, sua, suum

worthy; worth, fitting  
 unworthy; undeserved; shameful  
 mortal, transient; human  
 few  
 remaining, rest, rest of  
 wise  
 upper, higher, above  
 gods  
 his, her, its, their own

### Pronoun

quis, quid  
 suī

who?, what?  
 of himself, herself, itself, themselves

## Chapter 14

### Nouns

arbor, arboris *f.*  
 genus, generis *n.*  
 honor, honoris *m.*  
 hostis, hostis *m.* (*usually in pl.*)  
 lēgātus, lēgātī *m.*  
 mare, maris *n.*  
 nox, noctis *f.*  
 scelus, sceleris *n.*

tree  
 birth, origin; kind; race  
 honor; public office  
 enemy  
 delegate, envoy, ambassador; legion commander  
 sea  
 night  
 crime, wicked deed, wickedness

### Verbs

absum, abesse, āfuī  
 adveniō, advenīre, advēnī  
 cūrō, cūrāre, cūrāvī, cūrātus  
 dīmīttō, dīmīttēre, dīmīsī, dīmīssus

to be absent, away, distant  
 to arrive, come to; happen  
 to care for/about, pay attention to; cure  
 to send away, send forth; dismiss; abandon

inveniō, invenīre, invēnī, inventus  
moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus  
rapiō, rapere, rapuī, raptus  
stō, stāre, steti

**Adjectives**

longus, longa, longum  
medius, media, medium  
tantus, tanta, tantum

**Adverb**

iam

**Preposition**

circum / circā (+ acc.)

to find; discover, invent  
to warn, advise  
to seize, snatch, carry off  
to stand

long  
middle (of)  
so much, so great

now, already

around

## Chapter 15

**Nouns**

aurum, aurī *n.*  
cīvis, cīvis *m.* or *f.*  
humus, humī *f.*  
ignis, ignis *m.*  
labor, labōris *m.*  
lītus, lītōris *n.*  
lūmen, lūminis *n.*  
pectus, pectoris *n.*  
prōvincia, prōvinciae *f.*  
unda, undae *f.*

gold  
citizen  
ground, earth  
fire  
work, labor, effort; hardship  
shore, beach, coast  
light, lamp, torch; eye  
breast, chest; heart  
province  
wave, waters; sea

**Verbs**

cēdō, cēdere, cessī  
pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus  
surgō, surgere, surrēxī, surrēctus  
temptō, temptāre, temptāvī, temptātus  
volvō, volvere, volvī, volūtus

to go, withdraw; yield  
to put, place  
to get up, (a)rise  
to try, attempt; test, prove  
to roll, turn/twist around

**Adjectives**

aureus, aurea, aureum  
dūrus, dūra, dūrum  
fessus, fessa, fessum  
tristis, triste

golden  
hard, harsh, rough  
tired  
sad; gloomy

**Adverb**

forte

by chance

**Preposition**

super (+ acc.)

over, above, on (top of)

**Conjunctions**

atque, ac

and

## Chapter 16

### Nouns

cāsus, cāsūs *m.*  
 cornū, cornūs *n.*  
 diēs, diēi *m.* or *f.*  
 domus, domūs *f.*  
 faciēs, faciēi *f.*  
 fidēs, fidei *f.*  
 flūctus, flūctūs *m.*  
 genū, genūs *n.*  
 impetus, impetūs *m.*  
 manus, manūs *f.*  
 metus, metūs *m.*  
 passus, passūs *m.*  
     mille passūs; mīlia passuum (pl.)  
 rēs, rei *f.*  
     rēs pūblica, rei pūblīcae *f.*  
 rūs, rūris *n.*  
 senātus, senātūs *m.*  
 spēs, spei *f.*  
 vultus, vultūs *m.*

### Verb

ārdeō, ārdere, ārsi

### Adverbs

igitur  
 inde  
 tam

fall; misfortune, destruction; chance, accident  
 horn; wing (of an army)  
 day; *fem. used when it is an appointed, or set day*  
 house(hold), home  
 face; appearance  
 faith, trust  
 wave; commotion  
 knee  
 attack; charge; impulse  
 hand; band (of men)  
 fear, dread; anxiety  
 pace, footstep  
     mile (lit. "1000 paces"); miles  
 thing, matter, business; court case  
     state, republic  
 the country(side)  
 senate  
 hope  
 expression; face

to burn, be on fire

therefore  
 from there; then, from that time forth  
 so, to such a degree

## Chapter 17

### Nouns

aciēs, aciēi *f.*  
 castra, castrōrum *n.* (pl.)  
     castra pōnere  
 epistula, epistulae *f.*  
 exercitus, exercitūs *m.*  
 ferrum, ferri *n.*  
 iūdicium, iūdicii *n.*  
 multitūdō, multitūdinis *f.*  
 proelium, proeliū *n.*

### Verbs

āmittō, āmittere, āmissi, amissus  
 cernō, cernere, crēvi, crētus  
 cōstituō, cōstituere, cōstituī, cōstitutus  
 currō, currere, cucurri  
     concurrō, concurrere  
 incendō, incendere, incendi, incēnsus  
 instituō, instituere, instituī, institutus

battle line  
 camp  
     to pitch camp  
 letter  
 army  
 iron; sword  
 court; trial; judgment  
 multitude, great number, crowd  
 battle

to lose  
 to see, perceive, decide  
 to decide, appoint, establish  
 to run  
     to charge, rush together  
 to set fire to, burn; inflame  
 to establish, institute, build; educate

spectō, spectāre, spectāvī, spectātus  
trahō, trahere, trāxī, tractus  
videor, vidērī, vīsus  
(often with dative of the person)

to watch, look at  
to draw, drag  
to seem; be seen  
“it seems best to \_\_\_\_\_”

**Adjectives**

alter, altera, alterum (gen. -ius)  
ferus, fera, ferum  
ferī, -ōrum *m.* (pl.)

the one, the other (of two); next, second  
wild, fierce; cruel; uncivilized  
wild animals

**Prepositions**

ā/ab (+ animate noun, in a passive sentence)  
contrā (+ acc.)

by  
opposite; against; (adv.) in reply; face to face

**Chapter 18****Nouns**

adventus, adventūs *m.*  
clāmor, clāmōris *m.*  
fās *n.* (indeclinable)  
gaudium, gaudī or gaudiū *n.*  
vulnus, vulneris *n.*

arrival  
shout; cheer  
right; divine law  
joy, delight  
wound

**Verbs**

accipiō, accipere, accēpī, acceptus  
cōnficiō, cōnficere, cōnfēcī, cōnfectus

receive  
to finish, accomplish; kill

**Adjectives**

amīcus, amīca, amīcum  
aptus, apta, aptum  
cārus, cāra, cārum  
fidēlis, fidēle  
inimīcus, inimīca, inimīcum  
pār, paris  
similis, simile

friendly (to)  
fit, suitable (for)  
dear (to)  
faithful, loyal (to)  
unfriendly, hostile (to)  
equal (to)  
similar (to), like

**Conjunctions**

antequam  
cum  
dum  
postquam  
quia  
quod  
sī  
ubi

before  
when  
while, as long as  
after; when  
because  
because; since  
if  
when; where



## Chapter 19

### Nouns

aestus, aestūs *m.*

auris, auris *f.*

auxilium, auxiliū *n.*

Caesar, Caesaris *m.*

equus, equū *m.*

Graecia, Graeciae *f.*

memoria, memoriae *f.*

nāvis, nāvis *f.*

nūbēs, nūbis *f.*

Rōma, Rōmae *f.*

soror, sorōris *f.*

Trōia, Trōiae *f.*

heat; tide

ear

aid, help; *in pl. often* auxiliary troops

Caesar

horse

Greece

memory, recollection

ship

cloud

Rome

sister

Troy

### Verbs

careō, carēre, caruī (+ abl.)

efficiō, efficere, effēcī, effectus

frangō, frangere, frēgī, fractus

vertō, vertere, vertī, versus

to be without, free from; need, miss

to bring about, produce

to break, wreck

to turn; turn around, destroy

### Adjectives

Graecus, Graeca, Graecum

levis, leve

propinquus, propinqua, propinquum

Trōiānus, Trōiāna, Trōiānum

Greek

light, easy

near (to), neighboring, related (to)

Trojan

### Conjunction / Pronoun

quī, quae, quod

who, which, what

## Chapter 20

### Nouns

arx, arcis *f.*

auctōritās, auctōritātis *f.*

caedēs, caedis *f.*

fātum, fātī *n.*

ōra, ōrae *f.*

signum, signī *n.*

somnus, somnī *m.*

vīs, vīs *f.*

vīrēs, vīrium *f.* (pl.)

citadel; fortress (on a hill)

authority

slaughter, murder

fate, destiny

coast; border

sign, token, signal; standard

sleep

power, force, violence;

strength (pl.)

### Verbs

aperiō, aperīre, aperuī, apertus

caedō, caedere, cecīdī, caesus

canō, canere, cecinī, cantus

condō, condere, condidī, conditus

cōservō, cōservāre, cōservāvī, cōservātus

cupiō, cupere, cupīvī *or* cupiī, cupītus

vītō, vītāre, vītāvī, vītātus

to open, uncover

to kill, cut; sacrifice (of animals)

to sing

to found, build, establish

to save, preserve, keep

to want, desire

to avoid

**Adjectives**

apertus, aperta, apertum  
saevus, saeva, saevum

open, uncovered, exposed  
cruel, savage

**Adverbs**

autem  
intereā  
procul

however; moreover  
meanwhile  
at a distance, from a distance

**Preposition**

ob (+ acc.)

because of

**Chapter 21****Nouns**

dolus, dolī *m.*  
moenia, moenium *n.* (pl.)  
mōs, mōris *m.*  
nūntius, nūntiī *m.*  
prīnceps, prīncipis *m.*  
servus, servī *m.*

trick, deceit  
walls, defenses  
custom, tradition  
messenger; message  
leader, chief, first citizen, emperor  
slave; servant

**Verbs**

cōgō, cōgere, cōēgī, cōāctus  
iubeō, iubēre, iūssī, iūssus  
mālō, mālle, mālūī  
necesse est  
nōlō, nōlle, nōluī  
postulō, postulāre, postulāvī, postulātus  
sinō, sinere, sīvī, sītus  
vetō, vetāre, vetuī, vetitus  
vīvō, vīvere, vīxī, victus  
volō, velle, voluī

to force, compel; collect  
to order, command  
to prefer, want (something) more  
it is necessary  
to be unwilling, not want  
to demand, claim; prosecute  
to allow, permit  
to forbid; order ... not  
to live  
to wish, want, be willing

**Adjective**

cēterī, cēterae, cētera

the rest; the others

**Adverbs**

celeriter  
fortiter  
quam

quickly  
bravely, forcefully  
(rather) than, as (*in comparisons*)

**Chapter 22****Nouns**

artus, artūs *m.*  
liberī, liberōrum *m.* (pl.)  
modus, modī *m.*  
orbis, orbis *m.*  
orbis terrārum

limb, joint  
children  
manner, way, method  
circle, orb  
world

**Verbs**

ait, aiunt; aiō  
 cōgitō, cōgitāre, cōgitāvī, cōgitātus  
 gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum  
 inquit  
 negō, negāre, negāvī, negātus  
 nesciō, nescīre, nescīvī, nescītus  
 ostendō, ostendere, ostendī,  
 ostentus/ostēnsus  
 putō, putāre, putāvī, putātus  
 respondeō, respondēre, respondī, respōnsus  
 spērō, spērāre, spērāvī, spērātus  
 trādō, trādere, trādidī, trāditus

**Adjectives**

imprūdēns, imprūdētis  
 prūdēns, prūdētis

**Adverbs**

bene  
 hodiē  
 ibi

he says, they say; I say  
 to think, consider  
 to rejoice, be glad; delight in (+ abl.)  
 he said (*introduces a direct quotation*)  
 to deny, say that ... not  
 not to know  
 to show, reveal  
 to think, consider; suppose  
 to answer, reply; correspond to  
 to hope, hope for (*often + future inf.*)  
 to hand over, surrender; hand down, report

unwise; unaware, ignorant (of)  
 wise, prudent, knowing; skilled

well  
 today  
 there

**Chapter 23****Nouns**

cibus, cibī *m.*  
 crīmen, crīminis *n.*  
 pōtus, pōtūs *m.*

food  
 crime, accusation, charge  
 drink

**Verbs**

arbitror, arbitrārī, arbitrātus sum  
 cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum  
 fidō, fidere, fīsus sum (+ dat.)  
 fruor, fruī, frūctus sum (+ abl.)  
 fungor, fungī, fūctus sum (+ abl.)  
 ingredior, ingredi, ingressus sum  
 loquor, loquī, locūtus sum  
 moror, morārī, morātus sum  
 patior, patī, passus sum  
 potior, potīri, potītus sum (+ abl.)  
 proficiscor, proficīscī, profectus sum  
 sequor, sequī, secūtus sum  
 ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum (+ abl.)  
 vescor, vescī (+ abl.)

to think, judge  
 to try  
 to trust, confide in  
 to enjoy  
 to perform, do  
 to enter; march, walk  
 to speak  
 to delay  
 to suffer, allow  
 to get hold of, acquire  
 to set out, depart  
 to follow, accompany; pursue  
 to use  
 to eat, feed on

**Adjective**

cūctus, cūcta, cūctum

the whole, all (collectively)

**Pronouns**

īdem, eadem, idem  
 ipse, ipsa, ipsum  
 quīdam, quaedam, quoddam

the same  
 \_\_\_self; himself, herself, itself, themselves  
 a certain \_\_\_\_, a sort of \_\_\_\_

## Chapter 24

### Nouns

exitium, exitiī *n.*

ingenium, ingeniū *n.*

ōs, ōris *n.*

socius, sociī *m.*

destruction, ruin

talent; character, nature

mouth, face

companion, comrade, ally

### Verbs

imperō, imperāre, imperāvī, imperātus

(usually with *dat. of the person*)

incolō, incolere, incolui

interficiō, interficere, interfēcī, interfectus

moriōr, morī, mortuus sum

occīdō, occīdere, occīdī, occīsus

pateō, patēre, patuī

rogō, rogāre, rogāvī, rogātus

vulnerō, vulnerāre, vulnerāvī, vulnerātus

to command

live (in), inhabit

to kill, destroy

to die

to kill

to be open, stand open

to ask, ask for

to wound

### Adjectives

maximus, maxima, maximum

proximus, proxima, proximum

greatest, very great, very important

nearest, very near

## Chapter 25

### Verbs

eō, īre, īī *or* ivī, itūrus

abeō, abīre, abīī, abitūrus

adeō, adīre, adīī, aditūrus

exeō, exīre, exīī, exitūrus

ineō, inīre, iniī, initūrus

pereō, perīre, perīī, peritūrus

redeō, redīre, redīī *or* -ivī, reditūrus

subeō, subīre, subīī *or* -ivī, subitūrus

montem subīre

trānseō, trānsīre, trānsīī, trānsitūrus

ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus

adferō, adferre, attulī, adlātus

auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātus

cōnferō, cōnferre, contulī, collātus

sē cōnferre

īnferō, īnferre, intulī, illātus

offerō, offerre, obtulī, oblātus

referō, referre, rettulī, relātus

tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātus

to go

to go away, depart

to go towards, approach

to go out, exit

to enter; begin

to perish, die

to go back, return

to go up; to undergo; to approach

to climb a mountain

to go across, cross

to carry, bear, endure; report, say

to bring to; cause

to carry away, take away

to bring together, collect; compare;

to proceed, go

to bring in, introduce; inflict

to offer, bring forward

to carry back, bring back, report

to lift up, raise; remove, carry off, steal

### Adjectives

aequus, aequa, aequum

commūnis, commūne

īnfēlix, īnfēlicis

even, calm, equal

common, shared; public

unhappy, unlucky

## Chapter 26

### Nouns

amor, amōris *m.*

canis, canis *m.* or *f.*

culpa, culpa *f.*

love

dog

fault, blame

### Verbs

dēleō, dēlēre, dēlēvī, dēlētus

resistō, resistere, restitī (*often + dat.*)

to destroy; blot out

to resist, oppose, make a stand

### Adjectives

gravis, grave

iūstus, iūsta, iūstum

sanctus, sancta, sanctum

turpis, turpe

uterque, utraque, utrumque

ūtilis, ūtile

heavy; serious, important; difficult

just, fair

sacred; virtuous, blameless

shameful, base; ugly, foul

both; each (*of two*)

useful, profitable

### Adverbs

longē

modo

numquam

prīmō

primum

far, by far

only; at all

never

at first

first, for the first time

### Conjunction

quam

than (\*\*cf. Ch. 21)

## Chapter 27

### Nouns

aura, aurae *f.*

fructus, fructūs *m.*

glōria, glōriae *f.*

mōtus, mōtūs *m.*

tellūs, tellūris *f.*

breeze; air

fruit, enjoyment; profit

glory, fame; ambition, boasting

emotion, impulse; movement

the earth; land

### Verbs

accidō, accidere, accidī

adsum, adesse, adfui

dēspērō, dēspērāre, dēspērāvī, dēspērātus

flōreō, flōrēre, flōruī

hortor, hortārī, hortātus sum

neglegō, neglegere, neglēxī, neglēctus

temperō, temperāre, temperāvī, temperātus

to fall at *or* near; happen

to be present, be near

to despair

to bloom; prosper, flourish

to urge, encourage

to ignore, neglect

to blend; govern; refrain, be moderate

### Adjectives

beātus, beāta, beātum

rēctus, rēcta, rēctum

happy, blessed; prosperous

straight, upright; right; virtuous, honest

### Conjunctions

an

at

or

but; at least; then

**Adverbs**

dēnique  
nē

quidem  
nē ... quidem  
utinam  
vērō

finally, at last; in short; in fact  
not (*used with subjunctive and sometimes with imperative*)  
indeed, certainly, in fact  
not ... even  
(*signals a wish*) if only, would that  
in fact, indeed

**Chapter 28****Nouns**

gladius, -iī *m.*  
iūdex, iūdicis *m.*  
nefās *n. (indeclinable)*  
oppidum, oppidī *n.*  
poena, poenae *f.*  
    poenam dare  
sōl, sōlis *m.*  
tēlum, tēlī *n.*  
vīnum, vīnī *n.*

sword  
judge  
sin, crime (against divine law), wrong  
town  
penalty  
    to pay the penalty  
sun  
weapon; spear, sword  
wine

**Verbs**

appropīnquō, appropīnquāre, appropīnquāvī  
bibō, bibere, bibī, bibitus  
tremō, tremere, tremuī

to approach, draw near  
to drink  
to tremble

**Adjectives**

cīvilis, cīvīle  
dīrus, dīra, dīrum  
tālis, tāle

civil, public, political  
awful, horrible  
such, of such a kind

**Conjunction**

ut

in order that; so that

**Adverbs**

deinde  
liberē  
tot  
totiēns

then, next  
freely  
so many  
so often

**Chapter 29****Verbs**

appellō, appellāre, appellāvī, appellātus  
colō, colere, coluī, cultus  
ēripiō, ēripere, ēripuī, ēreptus  
fiō, fierī, factus sum  
habītō, habītāre, habītāvī, habitātus  
iungō, iungere, iūnxī, iūctus  
liberō, liberāre, liberāvī, liberātus  
mīror, mīrārī, mīrātus sum

to name, call, upon, address  
to cultivate, tend; inhabit; worship  
to snatch away; rescue, free  
to happen, occur; be done, be made  
to inhabit; live, dwell  
to join (together), unite; yoke  
to free, release; acquit  
to wonder, be surprised at; admire, wonder at

precor, precārī, precātus sum  
 quaerō, quaerere, quaesivī (-īī), quaesītus  
 requirō, requirere, requisivī (-īī), requisītus

**Adjective**

lātus, lāta, lātum

**Adverbs**

cūr  
 num  
 quōmodō  
 quot  
 quotiēns  
 statim  
 undique

**Preposition**

apud (+ acc.)

to pray, intreat, beg; curse  
 to look for, seek; ask  
 to search for; ask, inquire after; demand

wide, broad

why?  
*(signals a question)* whether *(in ind. question)*  
 how  
 how many?  
 how often?  
 immediately, at once  
 on all sides

among, with, near, at (the house of)

**Chapter 30****Nouns**

amīcitia, amīcitiae *f.*  
 imperātor, imperātōris *m.*  
 ops, opis *f.*  
 philosophia, philosophiae *f.*  
 victōria, victōriae *f.*

friendship  
 general; emperor  
 power, might; (pl.) wealth, resources  
 philosophy  
 victory

**Verbs**

cōspiciō, cōspicere, cōspexī, cōspectus  
 metuō, metuere, metuī, metūtus  
 suscipio, suscipere, suscepī, susceptus  
 vereor, verērī, veritus sum

to observe, catch sight of, look at  
 to fear  
 to take up, accept; begin  
 to fear, be afraid; respect

**Pronoun**

aliquis, aliquid

someone, something, anyone, anything

**Adverbs**

certē  
 mox  
 quoque  
 simul

surely, of course; at least  
 soon; next  
 too *(placed after the word it emphasizes)*  
 at the same time, together

**Conjunctions**

nisi  
 sīn

unless, if not  
 but if, if however

## Chapter 31

### Nouns

pons, pontis *m.*

studium, -iī *n.*

voluptās, voluptātis *f.*

bridge

eagerness, zeal; study

pleasure, delight

### Verbs

committō, committere, commīsī, commissus

conveniō, convenīre, convēnī

probō, probāre, probāvī, probātus

to join, unite, engage in

to assemble, gather; meet; agree

to approve (of); prove, show

### Adverbs

male

tamquam

badly

as, just as, just like

## Chapter 32

### Nouns

fās *n. (indeclinable)*

divine law, right

### Verbs

licet, licēre, licuit (*impersonal, + dat.*)

oportet, oportēre, oportuit

(*impersonal, + acc.*)

it is allowed, it is lawful

it is right, one should; it is necessary

### Adjective

mīrābilis, mīrābile

wonderful, extraordinary

### Adverbs

ante

forsitan

before (*time*); in front (*place*)

perhaps



# ENGLISH TO LATIN

## VOCABULARY

### A

abandon	dīmīttō, dīmīttēre, dīmīsī, dīmīssus
able, to be	possum, posse, potuī
about	dē (+ abl.)
abundance	cōpia, cōpiaē <i>f.</i>
accomplish	cōnficiō, cōnficere, cōnfēcī, cōnfectus
accustomed, to be	soleō, solēre, solitus sum
accept	accipiō, accipere, accēpī, acceptus
across	trāns (+ acc.)
acquire	potior, potīrī, potītus sum (+ abl.)
act	agō, agere, ēgī, āctus
adopt	capiō, capere, cēpī, captus
afraid, to be	timeō, timēre, timuī; vereor, verērī, veritus sum
after	postquam
against	in (+ acc.); contrā (+ acc.)
aid (n.)	auxilium, auxiliū <i>n.</i>
all	omnis, omne
allow	sinō, sinere, sīvī, situs
ally	socius, sociī <i>m.</i>
always	semper
among	in (+ abl. pl.)
and	et; -que; ac; atque
anger	īra, īraē <i>f.</i>
angry	īrātus, īrāta, īrātum
announce	nūntiō, nūntiāre, nūntiāvī, nūntiātus
another	alius, alia, aliud
answer	respondeō, respondēre, respondī, respōnsus
any	aliquis, aliquid; ūllus, ūlla, ūllum

appearance	faciēs, faciēī <i>f.</i>
appoint	cōnstituō, cōnstituere, cōnstituī, constitūtus
approach	adeō, adīre, adiī, aditūrus; appropinquō, appropinquāre, appropinquāvī
army	exercitus, exercitūs <i>m.</i>
arrival	adventus, adventūs <i>m.</i>
arrive	adveniō, advenīre, advēnī dum
as long as	
ask	petō, petere, petīvī <i>or</i> petiī, petītus
ask for	ōrō, ōrāre, ōrāvī, ōrātus
attack (n.)	impetus, impetūs <i>m.</i>
attack (v.)	petō, petere, petīvī <i>or</i> petiī, petītus
authority	auctōritās, auctōritātis <i>f.</i>
avoid	fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitūrus; vītō, vītāre, vītāvī, vītātus

### B

bad	malus, mala, malum
band (of men)	manus, manūs <i>f.</i>
battle	proelium, proeliū <i>n.</i>
be	sum, esse, fuī, futūrus
be strong	valeō, valēre, valuī
beautiful	pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum
because	quīa; quod; abl. absolute
because of	ob (+ acc.); propter (+ acc.); causā (+ gen.)
before (adv.)	ante
before (conj.)	antequam
beg	ōrō, ōrāre, ōrāvī, ōrātus
begin	incipiō, incipere, incēpī, inceptus; ineō, inīre, iniī, initūrus

believe	crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditus (+ dat.)	collect	cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctus; cōnferō, cōnferre, contulī, collātus
belong to	<i>use a form of sum + the dative (§ 34)</i>		
better	<i>comparative of bonus or bene</i>	come	veniō, venīre, vēnī
between	inter (+ acc.)	come to	adveniō, advenīre, advēnī
big	magnus, magna, magnum	command	iubeō, iubēre, iūssī, iūssus; imperō, imperāre, imperāvī, imperātus
book	liber, librī <i>m.</i>		
boy	puer, puerī <i>m.</i>	compel	cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctus
brave	fortis, forte		
bring	portō, portāre, portāvī, portātus	conquer	superō, superāre, superāvī, superātus; vincō, vincere, vīcī, victus
brother	frāter, frātris <i>m.</i>		
build	aedificō, aedificāre, aedificāvī, aedificātus	consul	cōnsul, cōnsulis <i>m.</i>
burn	ārdeō, ārdēre, ārsī (intrans.); incendō, incendere, incendi, incēnsus (trans.)	cottage	casa, casae <i>f.</i>
		country	patria, patriae <i>f.</i>
		country(side)	ager, agrī <i>m.</i> ; rūs, rūris <i>n.</i>
		courage	virtūs, virtūtis <i>f.</i>
but	sed	court	iūdicium, iūdicīi <i>n.</i>
		crime	scelus, sceleris <i>n.</i>
<b>C</b>		cross	trānseō, trānsīre, trānsīi, trānsitūrus
Caesar	Caesar, Caesaris <i>m.</i>		
call	vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus	crowd	turba, turbae <i>f.</i>
		cruel	ferus, fera, ferum; saevus, saeva, saevum
camp	castra, castrōrum <i>n.</i> (pl.)	cultivate	colō, colere, coluī, cultus
can	possum, posse, potuī	custom	mōs, mōris <i>m.</i>
capture	capiō, capere, cēpī, captus		
care	cūra, cūrae <i>f.</i>	<b>D</b>	
carry	portō, portāre, portāvī, portātus; ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus	danger	perīculum, perīculi <i>n.</i>
		dare	audeō, audēre, ausus sum
carry away	auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātus	daughter	filia, filiae <i>f.</i>
		day	diēs, diēi <i>m.</i>
carry off	rapiō, rapere, rapuī, raptus	dear	cārus, cāra, cārum
		death	mors, mortis <i>f.</i>
certain	quīdam, quaedam, quoddam	deceit	dolus, doli <i>m.</i>
children	liberī, liberōrum <i>m.</i> (pl.)	declare	ostendō, ostendere, ostendī, ostentus/ ostēnsus
citadel	arx, arcis <i>f.</i>		
citizen	cīvis, cīvis <i>m.</i> or <i>f.</i>	deed	factum, facti <i>n.</i>
city	urbs, urbis <i>f.</i>	deep	altus, alta, altum
civil	cīvilis, cīvile	defeat	vincō, vincere, vīcī, victus; superō, superāre, superāvī, superātus
cloud	nūbēs, nūbis <i>f.</i>		
coast	lītus, lītoris <i>n.</i> ; ōra, orae <i>f.</i>	delay	mora, morae <i>f.</i>

depart	abeō, abīre, abiī, abitūrus; proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus sum	enter	intrō, intrāre, intrāvī, intrātus; ingredior, ingredī, ingressus sum; ineō, inīre, iniī, initūrus
desert	relinquō, relinquere, reliquī, relictus	envoy	lēgātus, lēgātī <i>m.</i>
desire	optō, optāre, optāvī, optātus	equal	pār, paris
destroy	dēleō, dēlēre, dēlēvī, dēlētus	everyone	omnēs, omnium
destruction	cāsus, cāsūs <i>m.</i>	expression	vultus, vultūs <i>m.</i>
die	moriōr, morī, mortuus sum; pereō, perīre, periī, peritūrus	eye	lūmen, lūminis <i>n.</i>
difficult	difficilis, difficile	<b>F</b>	
dinner	cēna, cēnae <i>f.</i>	face	vultus, vultūs <i>m.</i> ; faciēs, faciēī <i>f.</i> ; ōs, ōris <i>n.</i>
discover	inveniō, invenīre, invēnī, inventus	faith	fidēs, fideī <i>f.</i>
distinguished	clārus, clāra, clārum	faithful	fidēlis, fidēle
distance, from a (adv.)	procul	fall	cadō, cadere, cecidī
divine	dīvīnus, dīvīna, dīvīnum	fame	fāma, fāmae <i>f.</i>
do	agō, agere, ēgī, āctus; faciō, facere, fēcī, factus; efficiō, efficere, effēcī, effectus	famous	clārus, clāra, clārum
dog	canis, canis <i>m.</i> or <i>f.</i>	farmer	agricola, agricolae <i>m.</i>
doubt	dubitō, dubitāre, dubitāvī, dubitātus	father	pater, patris <i>m.</i>
down from	dē (+ abl.)	fatherland	patria, patriae <i>f.</i>
drag	trahō, trahere, trāxī, tractus	fault	culpa, culpaē <i>f.</i>
drink	bibō, bibere, bibī, bibitus	fear (n)	timor, timōris <i>m.</i> ; metus, metūs <i>m.</i>
during	use <i>ablative of time</i> <i>within which</i>	fear (v)	timeō, timēre, timuī; metuō, metuere, metuī; vereor, verērī, veritus sum
<b>E</b>		fertile	laetus, laeta, laetum
eager, to be	studeō, studēre, studuī (+ dat.)	few	paucī, paucae, pauca
ear	auris, auris <i>f.</i>	field	ager, agrī <i>m.</i>
easily	facile	fierce	ācer, ācris, ācre
easy	facilis, facile; levis, leve	fight	pugnō, pugnāre, pugnāvī, pugnātus
eat	vescor, vescī (+ abl.)	find	inveniō, invenīre, invēnī, inventus
elect	creō, creāre, creāvī, creātus	fine	pulcher, pulcra, pulchrum
enemy	hostis, hostis <i>m.</i>	finish	finiō, finīre, finīvī, finītus; cōnficiō, cōnficere, cōnfēcī, cōnfectus
enjoy	fruor, fruī, frūctus sum (+ abl.)	fire	ignis, ignis <i>m.</i>
		fit	aptus, apta, aptum
		five	quīnque
		flee	fugiō, fugere, fūgī
		follow	sequor, sequī, secūtus sum

food	cibus, cibī <i>m.</i>		
for	enim; nam	<b>H</b>	
for a long time	diū	hand	manus, manūs <i>f.</i>
for the first time	prīmum	happen	fiō, fierī, factus sum;
for the sake of	causā (+ gen.)		accidō, accidere, accidī
forbid	vetō, vetāre, vetuī, vetitus	happy	laetus, laeta, laetum
force (sg. n.)	vīs, vīs <i>f.</i>	hardship	labor, labōris <i>m.</i>
force (v.)	cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctus	harm	noceō, nocēre, nocuī (+ dat.)
forest	silva, silvae <i>f.</i>	have	habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus <i>or</i> sum (+ dative of possession)
fortune	fortūna, fortūnae <i>f.</i>		caput, capitis <i>n.</i>
found	condō, condere, condidī, conditus	head	audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus
free (adj.)	liber, libera, liberum	hear	pectus, pectoris <i>n.</i>
free (v.)	ēripīō, ēripere, ēripuī, ēreptus; liberō, liberāre, liberāvī, liberātus	heart	aestus, aestūs <i>m.</i>
freedom	libertās, libertātis <i>f.</i>	heat	auxilium, auxiliī <i>n.</i>
freely	liberē	help (sg. n.)	iuvō, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtus
friend	amīcus, amīcī <i>m.</i>	help (v.)	is, ea, id (gen.)
friendly	amīcus, amīca, amīcum	her	vir, virī <i>m.</i>
from	ab (+ abl.); ex (+ abl.); de (+ abl.)	hero	dubitō, dubitāre, dubitāvī, dubitātus
		hesitate	altus, alta, altum
<b>G</b>		high	is, ea, id
Gaul	Gallia, Galliae <i>f.</i>	him	sē
general	imperātor, imperātōris <i>m.</i>	himself	impediō, impedire, impedīvī, impedītus
gift	dōnum, dōnī <i>n.</i>	hinder	is, ea, id (gen.); suī
girl	puella, puellae <i>f.</i>	his	domus, domūs <i>f.</i>
give	dō, dare, dedī, datus	home	honor, honōris <i>m.</i>
glad, be	gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum	honor	spēs, speī <i>f.</i>
go	ambulō, ambulāre, ambulāvī; eō, ire, iī <i>or</i> ivī, itūrus	hope (n.)	spērō, spērāre, spērāvī, spērātus
go away	abeō, abīre, abiī, abitūrus	hope (v.)	equus, equi <i>m.</i>
go out	exeō, exīre, exiī, exitūrus	horse	inimīcus, inimīca, inimīcum
god	deus, deī <i>m.</i>	hostile	hōra, hōrae <i>f.</i>
goddess	dea, deae <i>f.</i>	hour	casa, casae <i>f.</i>
gold	aurum, aurī <i>n.</i> (noun); aureus, aurea, aureum (adj.)	house	quōmodo
		how	quot
		how many	quotiēns
good	bonus, bona, bonum	how often	ingēns, ingentis
great	magnus, magna, magnum	huge	festīnō, festīnāre, festīnāvī, festīnātus
Greece	Graecia, Graeciae <i>f.</i>	hurry	vir, virī <i>m.</i>
Greek	Graecus, Graeca, Graecum	husband	
		<b>I</b>	
grieve	doleō, dolēre, doluī	if	sī
ground	humus, humī <i>f.</i>	immediately	statim

in	in (+ abl.)	listen (to)	audiō, audīre, audīvī,
in front of	prō (+ abl.)		audītus
into	in (+ acc.)	live	vīvō, vīvere, vīxī, victus;
iron	ferrum, ferrī <i>n.</i>		habītō, habītāre,
			habītāvī, habitātus
<b>J</b>		long	longus, longa, longum
journey	iter, itineris <i>n.</i>	look for	petō, petere, petīvī <i>or</i>
joy	gaudium, gaudī <i>or</i> gaudiī <i>n.</i>		petīī, petītus
		lord	dominus, dominī <i>m.</i>
judge	iūdicō, iūdicāre, iūdicāvī,	lose	āmittō, āmittere, āmisī,
	iūdicātus; arbitror,		āmissus
	arbitrārī, arbitrātus sum	a lot of	= “ <i>much</i> ”
judgment	mēns, mentis <i>f.</i>	love (sg. <i>n.</i> )	amor, amōris <i>m.</i>
justice	iūs, iūris <i>n.</i>	love (v.)	amō, amāre, amāvī,
			amātus
<b>K</b>		luck	fortūna, fortūnae <i>f.</i>
kill	interficiō, interficere,	lucky	fēlix, fēlicis
	interfēcī, interfectus;		
	cōnficiō, cōnficere,	<b>M</b>	
	cōnfēcī, cōnfectus;	man	vir, virī <i>m.</i> ; homō,
	caedō, caedere, cecidī,		hominis <i>m.</i>
	caesus	make	faciō, facere, fēcī, factus;
king	rēx, rēgis <i>m.</i>		efficiō, efficere, effēcī,
kingdom	rēgnum, rēgnī <i>n.</i>		effectus
knee	genū, genūs <i>n.</i>	many	multus, multa, multum
know	sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītus	march	ingredior, ingredī,
not know	nesciō, nescīre, nescīvī,		ingressus sum
	nesciī, nescītus	master	dominus, dominī <i>m.</i>
		me	mē
<b>L</b>		memory	memoria, memoriae <i>f.</i>
lack (v.)	careō, carēre, caruī	message	nūntius, nūntiī <i>m.</i>
	(+ abl.)	middle (of)	medius, media, medium
lamp	lūmen, lūminis <i>n.</i>	mile	mille passūs
land	terra, terrae <i>f.</i>	miles	mīlia passuum (pl.)
large	magnus, magna,	mind	animus, animī <i>m.</i> ; mēns,
	magnum		mentis <i>f.</i>
law	lex, lēgis <i>f.</i> ;	money	pecūnia, pecūniae <i>f.</i>
divine law	fās <i>n.</i>	more	( <i>see</i> Ch. 26)
leader	dux, ducis <i>m.</i>	mortal	mortālis, mortāle
learn	dīscō, dīscere, didicī	mother	māter, mātis <i>f.</i>
leave	relinquō, relinquere,	mountain	mōns, montis <i>m.</i>
	reliquī, relictus	much	multus, multa, multum
letter	epistula, epistulae <i>f.</i> ;	murder	caedēs, caedis <i>f.</i>
	littera, litterae <i>f.</i>	my	meus, mea, meum
lie; lie dead	iaceō, iacēre, iacuī		
life	vīta, vītae <i>f.</i>	<b>N</b>	
light (n.)	lūx, lūcis <i>f.</i> ; lūmen,	name (n.)	nōmen, nōminis <i>n.</i>
	lūminis <i>n.</i>	name (v.)	vocō, vocāre, vocāvī,
light (adj.)	levis, leve		vocātus
like	similis, simile	nation	gēns, gentis <i>f.</i>

near	propinquus, propinqua, propinquum
necessary, to be need (v.)	necesse est / fuit/ <i>etc.</i> careō, carēre, caruī (+ abl.)
neighbor(ing)	propinquus, propinqua, propinquum
nevertheless	tamen
new	novus, nova, novum
night	nox, noctis <i>f.</i>
no one	nēmō <i>m.</i> or <i>f.</i>
not	nōn; nē
nothing	nihil <i>n. (indeclinable)</i>
now	nunc

**O**

obey	pāreō, pārēre, pārui (+ dat.)
ocean	pontus, ponti <i>m.</i>
often	saepe
old man	senex, senis <i>m.</i>
on all sides	undique
on behalf of	prō (+ abl.)
one	ūnus, ūna, ūnum
only	sōlus, sōla, solum
oppose	resistō, resistere, restitī
or	aut
order	iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iūssus
other	alius, alia, aliud
ought to	debeō, debēre, debuī, debitus
our	noster, nostra, nostrum (adj.) or <i>gen. of</i> <i>pronoun</i> nōs
out of	ē, ex (+ abl.)
overcome	superō, superāre, superāvī, superātus
owe	debeō, debēre, debuī, debitus

**P**

peace	pāx, pācis <i>f.</i>
people	populus, populī <i>m.</i>
persuade	persuādeō, persuādēre, persuāsī (+ dat.)
pitch (camp)	castra pōnere - <i>see</i> place (v.)
place (n.)	locus, locī <i>m.</i> ; <i>in pl. also</i> <i>neuter</i>

place (v.)	pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus
plan	cōnsilium, cōnsiliī <i>n.</i>
pleasant	dulcis, dulce
please	placeō, placēre, placuī (+ dat.)
poem	carmen, carminis <i>n.</i>
poet	poēta, poētae <i>m.</i>
possess	possideo, possidēre
possible (as ____ as)	quam + <i>superlative</i>
power	vīs, vīs <i>f.</i>
powerful	potēns, potentis
praise (n.)	laus, laudis <i>f.</i>
praise (v.)	laudō, laudāre, laudāvī, laudātus
pray	ōrō, ōrāre, ōrāvī, ōrātus; precor, precārī, precātus sum
prefer	mālō, mālle, mālui
prepare	parō, parāre, parāvī, parātus
produce	efficiō, efficere, effēcī, effectus
profitable	ūtilis, ūtile
prohibit	prohibeō, prohibēre, prohibuī, prohibītus; vetō, vetāre, vetuī, vetitus
prophetic	divīnus, divīna, divīnum
province	prōvincia, prōvinciae <i>f.</i>
pull	trahō, trahere, trāxī, tractus
put	pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus

**Q**

queen	rēgīna, rēgīnae <i>f.</i>
quickly	celeriter
quiet, to be	taceō, tacēre, tacuī

**R**

read	legō, legere, lēgī, lēctus
receive	accipiō, accipere, accēpī, acceptus
rejoice	gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum
report (v.)	nūntiō, nūntiāre, nūntiāvī, nūntiātus
reputation	fāma, fāmae <i>f.</i>

rescue	ēripīō, ēripere, ēripuī, ēreptus	serious	gravis, grave
rest (of)	reliquus, reliqua, reliquum	serve	serviō, servīre, servīvī <i>or</i> servīi (+ dat.)
return	redeō, redīre, rediī, reditūrus	seven	septem
right (adj.)	dexter, dextra, dextrum	shameful	turpis, turpe
right (sg. n.)	fās <i>n.</i>	sharp	ācer, ācris, ācre
river	flūmen, flūminis <i>n.</i>	ship	nāvis, nāvis <i>f.</i>
road	via, viae <i>f.</i>	shore	lītus, litoris <i>n.</i>
rock	saxum, saxī <i>n.</i>	short	brevis, breve
roll	volvō, volvere, volvī, volūtus	should	dēbeō, dēbere, dēbuī, dēbitus; <i>or use</i> <i>subjunctive mood</i>
Roman	Rōmānus, -a, -um	shout (n.)	clāmōr, clāmōris <i>m.</i>
Rome	Rōma, Rōmae <i>f.</i>	shout (v.)	vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus; clāmō, clāmāre, clāmāvī, clāmātus
rose	rosa, rosae <i>f.</i>		
route	iter, itineris <i>n.</i>		
rule	regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus	show	mōnstrō, mōnstrāre, mōnstrāvī, mōnstrātus;
rumor	fāma, fāmae <i>f.</i>		ostendō, ostendere, ostendī, ostentus/ ostēnsus
run	currō, currere, cucurrī		
<b>S</b>			
sacred	sacer, sacra, sacrum	sick	aeger, aegra, aegrum
sad	tristis, triste	silent, to be	taceō, tacēre, tacuī
sail	nāvigō, nāvigāre, nāvigāvī, nāvigātus	sing	canō, canere, cecinī, cantus
sailor	nauta, nautae <i>m.</i>	sister	soror, sorōris <i>f.</i>
same	īdem, eadem, idem	sit	sedeō, sedēre, sēdī, sessūrus
savage	ferus, fera, ferum; saevus, saeva, saevum	six	sex
save	cōnservō, cōnservāre, cōnservāvī, cōnservātus	skill	ars, artis <i>f.</i>
say	dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictus; ait, aiunt	sky	caelum, caelī <i>n.</i>
scare	terreō, terrēre, terruī, territus	slave	servus, servī <i>m.</i>
sea	pontus, pontī <i>m.</i> ; mare, maris <i>n.</i>	sleep	dormiō, dormīre, dormīvī
see	videō, vidēre, vidī, vīsus	small	parvus, parva, parvum
seek	petō, petere, petīvī <i>or</i> petiī, petītus	so great	tantus, tanta, tantum
seem	videor, vidērī, vīsus sum	soldier	mīlēs, militis <i>m.</i>
seize	capiō, capere, cēpī, captus	some	alius, alia, aliud
senate	senātus, senātūs <i>m.</i>	son	filius, filiī <i>m.</i>
send	mittō, mittere, mīsī, missus	song	carmen, carminis <i>n.</i>
send forth	dīmittō, dīmittere, dīmīsī, dīmissus	speak	dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictus; loquor, loquī, locūtus sum
		spear	tēlum, tēlī <i>n.</i>
		stand	stō, stāre, stetī
		state	cīvitās, cīvitātis <i>f.</i> ; rēs pūblica, rēi pūblīcae <i>f.</i>
		stay	maneō, manēre, mānsī

step	passus, passūs <i>m.</i>	tree	arbor, arboris <i>f.</i>
story	fābula, fābulae <i>f.</i>	trial	iūdicium, iūdicii <i>n.</i>
strange	novus, nova, novum	Trojan	Trōiānus, Trōiāna, Trōiānum
strength	vīrēs, vīrium <i>f.</i> (pl.)	troops	cōpia, cōpiarum <i>f.</i> (pl.)
strong	fortis, forte; potēns, potentis	Troy	Trōia, Trōiae <i>f.</i>
suffer pain	doleō, dolēre, doluī	truth	vērītās, vērītātis <i>f.</i>
summit	caput, capitis <i>n.</i>	try	temptō, temptāre, temptāvī, temptātus
surprised, be	mīror, mīrārī, mīrātus sum	two	duo, duae, duo
surrender	trādō, trādere, trādidi, trāditus	<b>U</b>	
sweet	dulcis, dulce	ugly	turpis, turpe
sword	gladius, gladii <i>m.</i>	under	sub (+ abl. <i>or</i> acc.)
<b>T</b>		undergo	subeō, subīre, subii <i>or</i> -īvī, subitūrus
take	capiō, capere, cēpī, captus	unlucky	īnfēlix, īnfēlicis
teach	doceō, docēre, docuī, doctus	unwilling, be	nōlō, nōlle, nōluī
tear	lacrima, lacrimae <i>f.</i>	unwise	imprūdēns, imprudentis
tell	nārrō, nārrāre, nārrāvī, nārrātus; nūntiō, nūntiāre, nūntiāvī, nūntiātus	urge	hortor, hortārī, hortātus sum
temple	templum, templi <i>n.</i>	us	nōs
thank	grātiās agere	use	ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum (+ abl.)
that	ille, illa, illud	useful	ūtilis, ūtile
then	inde; tum	<b>V</b>	
these	hic, haec, hoc (pl.)	very	<i>use superlative</i>
think	putō, putāre, putāvī, putātus; cōgitō, cōgitāre, cōgitāvī, cōgitātus; arbitror, arbitrārī, arbitrātus sum	victory	victōria, victōriae <i>f.</i>
this	hic, haec, hoc	violence	vīs, vīs <i>f.</i>
those	ille, illa, illud (pl.)	virtue	virtūs, virtūtis <i>f.</i>
three	trēs, tria	voice	vōx, vōcis <i>f.</i>
through	per (+ acc.)	<b>W</b>	
throw	iactō, iactāre, iactāvī, iactātus	wage	gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus
tide	aestus, aestūs <i>m.</i>	walk	ambulō, ambulāre, ambulāvī, ambulātus
time	tempus, temporis <i>n.</i> ; aetās, aetātis <i>f.</i> ; diēs, diēi <i>f.</i> ; hōrae <i>f.</i>	wander	errō, errāre, errāvī, errātus
tired	fessus, fessa, fessum	want	volō, velle, voluī
today	hodiē; hōc diē	war	bellum, bellī <i>n.</i>
towards	ad (+ acc.)	warn	moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus
town	oppidum, oppidi <i>n.</i>	watch	spectō, spectāre, spectāvī, spectātus
tradition	mōs, mōris <i>m.</i>	water	aqua, aquae <i>f.</i>
		wave	flūctus, flūctūs <i>m.</i>
		weapon	arma, armōrum <i>n.</i> (pl.); tēlum, tēlī <i>n.</i>
		well	bene



when	cum, ubi; quō tempore	word	verbum, verbī <i>n.</i>
where	ubi	work (sg. <i>n.</i> )	labor, labōris <i>m.</i> ; opus, operis <i>n.</i>
while	dum	work (v.)	labōrō, labōrāre, labōrāvī, labōrātus
who, which	quis, quid?; qui, quae, quod	world	orbis, orbis <i>m.</i> <i>with</i> terrārum
whole	tōtus, tōta, tōtum	worthy	dīgnus, dīgna, dīgnum
why	cūr	wound	vulnus, vulneris <i>n.</i>
wife	uxor, uxōris <i>f.</i>	wreck	frangō, frangere, frēgī, fractus
wild	ferus, fera, ferum	write	scribō, scribere, scripsī, scrīptus
willing, be	volō, velle, voluī		
wind	ventus, ventī <i>m.</i>		
wine	vīnum, vīnī <i>n.</i>		
wing (of an army)	cornū, cornūs <i>n.</i>		
wisdom	sapientia, sapientiae <i>f.</i>		
wise	sapiēns, sapientis; prūdēns, prūdentis	<b>Y</b>	
with	cum (+ abl.); ** <i>but</i> <i>sometimes ablative</i> <i>without preposition</i>	year	annus, annī <i>m.</i>
		you	tū; vōs
		your	tuus, tua, tuum (sg.)
		your	vester, vesta, vestum (pl.); <i>gen. of pronoun</i> vōs (pl.)
without	sine (+ abl.)		
woman	fēmina, fēminae <i>f.</i>		



# LATIN TO ENGLISH

## VOCABULARY

(Numbers refer to the chapter in which the word first appears in the chapter vocabulary.  
This list does not include vocabulary from Readings and Practice Sentences.)

ā, ab (+ abl.)	away from, by	4
abēō, abīre, abīi	to go away, depart	25
absum, abesse, āfuī	to be absent, away, distant	14
ac, atque	and	15
accidō, accidere, accidī	to fall at <i>or</i> near; happen	27
accipiō, accipere, accēpī, acceptus	receive, accept; treat	18
ācer, ācris, ācre	sharp, fierce; eager	12
aciēs, aciēī <i>f.</i>	battle line	17
ad (+ acc.)	to, toward(s)	4
adeō, adīre, adīi	to go towards, approach	25
adferō, adferre, attulī, adlātus	to bring to; cause	25
adsum, adesse, adfuī	to be present, be near	27
adveniō, advenīre, advēnī	to arrive, come to; happen	14
adventus, adventūs <i>m.</i>	arrival	18
aedificō, aedificāre, aedificāvī, aedificātus	to build	3
aeger, aegra, aegrum	sick, weak	5
aequus, aequa, aequum	even, calm, equal	25
aestus, aestūs <i>m.</i>	heat; tide	19
aetās, aetātis <i>f.</i>	age, life	12
ager, agrī <i>m.</i>	(cultivated) field; countryside	2
agō, agere, ēgī, āctus	to do, perform; drive	9
quid agis?	how are you (doing)?	
gratiās agere	to thank	11
vītam agere	to lead (one's) life	
agricola, agricolae <i>m.</i>	farmer	1
ait, aiunt	he says, they say	22
aliquis, aliquid	someone, something, anyone, anything	30
alius, alia, aliud	other, another	10
aliī ... aliī	some ... others	
alter, altera, alterum ( <i>gen. -ius</i> )	the one, the other (of two); next, second	17
altus, alta, altum	high, deep	5
ambulō, ambulāre, ambulāvī	to walk	4
amīcitia, amīcitiae <i>f.</i>	friendship	30
amīcus, amīca, amīcum	friendly	18
amīcus, amīcī <i>m.</i>	friend	2
āmittō, āmittere, āmīsī, āmissus	to lose	17
amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus	to love	1
amor, amōris <i>m.</i>	love	26

an	or	27
animus, animī <i>m.</i>	mind, spirit, courage	2
annus, annī <i>m.</i>	year	12
ante (prep.) (+ acc.)	before, in front of	11
ante (adv.)	before ( <i>time</i> ); in front of ( <i>place</i> )	32
appellō, appellāre, appellāvī, appellātus	to name, call upon, address	29
aperiō, aperīre, aperuī, apertus	to open, uncover	20
apertus, aperta, apertum	open, uncovered, exposed	20
appropinquō, appropinquāre, appropinquāvī	to approach, draw near	28
aptus, apta, aptum	fit, suitable	18
apud (+ acc.)	among, with, near, at (the house of)	29
aqua, aquae <i>f.</i>	water	1
arbitror, arbitrārī, arbitrātus sum	to think, judge	23
arbor, arboris <i>f.</i>	tree	14
ardeō, ardēre, ārsī	to burn, be on fire; glow	16
arma, armōrum <i>n.</i> (pl.)	arms, weapons	3
ars, artis <i>f.</i>	skill, art	7
artus, artūs <i>m.</i>	limb, joint	22
arx, arcis <i>f.</i>	citadel; fortress (on a hill)	20
at	but; at least; then	27
atque, ac	and	15
auctōritās, auctōritātis <i>f.</i>	authority	20
audeō, audēre, ausus sum	to dare	2
audiō, audīre, audīvī or audiī, audītus	to hear, listen	13
auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātus	to carry away, take away	25
aura, aurae <i>f.</i>	breeze; air	27
aureus, aurea, aureum	golden	15
auris, auris <i>f.</i>	ear	19
aurum, aurī <i>n.</i>	gold	15
aut	or	9
aut ... aut	either ... or	
autem	however; moreover	20
auxilium, auxiliī <i>n.</i>	aid, help; <i>in pl. often</i> auxiliary troops	19
beātus, beāta, beātum	happy, blessed; prosperous	27
bellum, bellī <i>n.</i>	war	2
bene	well	22
bibō, bibere, bibī, bibitus	to drink	28
bonus, bona, bonum	good	5
brevis, breve	brief, short	12
cadō, cadere, cecidī	to fall	11
caedēs, caedis <i>f.</i>	slaughter, murder	20
caedō, caedere, cecidī, caesus	to kill, cut; sacrifice (of animals)	20
caelum, caelī <i>n.</i>	sky, heavens	3
Caesar, Caesaris <i>m.</i>	Julius Caesar (a Roman general)	19
canis, canis <i>m.</i> or <i>f.</i>	dog	26
canō, canere, cecinī, cantus	to sing	20
capīō, capere, cēpī, captus	to take, seize, capture	9
caput, capitis <i>n.</i>	head; summit	7
careō, carēre, caruī (+ abl.)	to be without, free from; need, miss	19
carmen, carminis <i>n.</i>	song, poem	9

cārus, cāra, cārum	dear	18
casa, casae <i>f.</i>	cottage, house	4
castra, castrōrum <i>n.</i> (pl.)	camp	17
castra pōnere	to pitch camp	
cāsus, cāsūs <i>m.</i>	fall; misfortune, destruction; chance, accident	16
causa, causae <i>f.</i>	cause, reason	11
causā (+ gen.)	for the sake of, because of	
cēdō, cēdere, cessī	to go, withdraw; yield	15
celer, celeris, celere	swift	12
celeriter	quickly	21
cēna, cēnae <i>f.</i>	dinner	6
centum (C)	one hundred	11
cernō, cernere, crēvī, crētus	to see, perceive, decide	17
certē	surely, of course; at least	30
cēterī, cēterae, cētera	the rest; the others	21
cibus, cibī <i>m.</i>	food	23
circā / circum (+ acc.)	around	14
cīvilis, cīvile	civil, public, political	28
cīvis, cīvis <i>m.</i> or <i>f.</i>	citizen	15
cīvitās, cīvitātis <i>f.</i>	state, citizenship	7
clāmō, clāmāre, clāmāvī, clāmātus	to shout	2
clāmor, clāmōris <i>m.</i>	shout; cheer	18
clārus, clāra, clārum	clear, bright; famous; loud	8
cōgitō, cōgitāre, cōgitāvī, cōgitātus	to think, consider	22
cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī, cognitus	to learn, get to know, recognize	10
cōgō, cōgere, cōēgī, cōāctus	to force, compel; collect	21
colō, colere, coluī, cultus	to cultivate, tend; inhabit; worship	29
committō, committere, commīsī, commissus	to join, unite, engage in	31
commūnis, commūne	common, shared; public	25
concurrō, concurrere, concucurrī	to charge, rush together	17
condō, condere, condidī, conditus	to found, build, establish	20
cōnferō, cōnferre, contulī, collātus	to bring together, collect, compare;	25
sē cōnferre	to proceed, go	
cōnficiō, cōnficere, cōnfēcī, cōnfectus	to finish, accomplish; kill	18
coniunx, coniugis <i>m.</i> or <i>f.</i>	wife; husband; spouse	11
cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum	to try	23
cōnservō, cōnservāre, cōnservāvī, cōnservātus	to save, preserve, keep	20
cōnsilium, cōnsiliū <i>n.</i>	plan, advice	2
cōnspiciō, cōnspicere, cōnspexī, cōnspectus	to observe, catch sight of, look at	30
cōstituō, cōstituere, cōstituī, cōstitutus	to decide, appoint, establish	17
cōsul, cōsulis <i>m.</i>	consul (a Roman magistrate)	7
contrā (prep.) (+ acc.)	opposite; against;	17
contrā (adv.)	in reply; face to face	
conveniō, convenīre, convēnī	to assemble, gather; meet; agree	31
cōpia, cōpiae <i>f.</i>	abundance, plenty, resources, wealth; (pl.) troops	13
cornū, cornūs <i>n.</i>	horn; wing (of an army)	16
corpus, corporis <i>n.</i>	body, corpse	7
crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditus (+ dat.)	to believe, trust	11
creō, creāre, creāvī, creātus	to create; elect, choose	10
crīmen, crīminis <i>n.</i>	crime, accusation, charge	23

culpa, culpaef	fault, blame	26
cum (+ abl.)	with	5
cum	when	18
cunctus, cuncta, cunctum	the whole, all ( <i>collectively</i> )	23
cupiō, cupere, cupivī or cupiī, cupītus	to desire, want	20
cūr	why?	29
cūra, cūraef	care, anxiety	5
cūrō, cūrāre, cūrāvī, cūrātus	to care for/about, pay attention to; cure	14
currō, currere, cucurī	to run	17
dē (+ abl.)	down from; about, concerning	6
dēbeō, dēbere, dēbuī, dēbitus	to owe; to be obligated to ("I ought" to)	1
decem (X)	ten	11
deinde	then, next	28
dēleō, dēlere, dēlēvī, dēlētus	to destroy; blot out	26
dēnique	finally, at last; in short; in fact	27
dēspērō, dēspērāre, dēspērāvī, dēspērātus	to despair	27
deus, deī m.	god	3
dī = nom. pl.		
dīs = dat. pl. and abl. pl.		
dexter, dextra, dextrum	right; right hand	11
dicō, dicere, dixī, dictus	to say, speak, tell	9
diēs, diēī m. or f.	day; fem. used when it is an appointed, or <i>set day</i>	16
difficilis, difficile	difficult	12
dīgnus, dīgna, dīgnum	worthy; worth, fitting	13
dīmittō, dīmittere, dīmīsī, dīmissus	to send away, send forth; dismiss; abandon	14
dīrus, dīra, dīrum	awful, horrible	28
discēdō, discēdere, discessī, discessus	to depart, go away; separate	12
discō, discere, didicī	to learn	9
diū	for a long time	6
dīvīnus, dīvīna, dīvīnum	divine, of the gods; prophetic	5
dō, dare, dedī, datus	to give	3
doceō, docēre, docuī, doctus	to teach	1
doleō, dolēre, doluī	to grieve, mourn, suffer pain	8
dolor, dolōris m.	pain, sorrow	12
dolus, dolī m.	trick, deceit	21
dominus, dominī m.	master, lord	2
domus, domūs f.	house(hold), home	16
dōnum, dōnī n.	gift, present	2
dormiō, dormīre, dormīvī	to sleep	13
dubitō, dubitāre, dubitāvī, dubitātus	to hesitate, doubt	2
dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus	to lead	9
dulcis, dulce	sweet; pleasant	12
dum	while, as long as; until (+ <i>subjunctive</i> )	18
duo, duae, duo (II)	two	11
dūrus, dūra, dūrum	hard, harsh, rough	15
dux, ducis m.	(military) leader, commander	7
ē, ex (+ abl.)	out of, from	4
efficiō, efficere, effēcī, effectus	to bring about, produce	19

ego	I	9
enim ( <i>postpositive</i> )	for; in fact; yes, truly	6
eō, ire, ī or ivi	to go	25
epistula, epistulae <i>f.</i>	letter	17
equus, equi <i>m.</i>	horse	19
ēripio, ēripere, ēripui, ēreptus	to snatch away; rescue, free	29
errō, errāre, errāvī, errātus	to wander; err	4
et	and; even, also	2, 9
et ... et	both ... and	
etiam	also; even	10
exemplum, exempli <i>n.</i>	example	6
exeō, exire, exiī	to go out, exit	25
exercitus, exercitūs <i>m.</i>	army	17
exitium, exitiū <i>n.</i>	destruction, ruin	24
fābula, fābulae <i>f.</i>	story	3
faciēs, faciēi <i>f.</i>	face; appearance	16
facile	easily	4
facilis, facile	easy	12
faciō, facere, feci, factus	to do, make	9
factum, facti <i>n.</i>	deed, act, exploit	10
fāma, fāmae <i>f.</i>	fame, report, reputation; rumor	1
fās <i>n. (indeclinable)</i>	divine law, right	32
fātum, fāti <i>n.</i>	fate, destiny	20
fēlix, fēlicis	fortunate, lucky	12
fēmina, fēminae <i>f.</i>	woman	1
ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus	to carry, bear, endure; report, say	25
ferrum, ferri <i>n.</i>	iron; sword	17
ferus, fera, ferum	wild, fierce; cruel; uncivilized	17
feri, -ōrum <i>m. (pl.)</i>	wild animals	
fessus, fessa, fessum	tired	15
festinō, festināre, festināvī, festinātus	to hurry	4
fidēlis, fidēle	faithful, loyal	18
fidēs, fidei <i>f.</i>	faith, trust	16
fidō, fidere, fīsus sum (+ dat.)	to trust, confide in	23
filia, filiae <i>f.</i>	daughter	6
filius, filii <i>m.</i>	son	6
finiō, finire, finivī, finītus	to end, finish; die; limit	13
finis, finis <i>m.</i>	end; border; (pl.) boundary, territory	13
fīō, fieri, factus sum	to happen, occur; be done, be made	29
flōreō, flōrere, flōruī	to bloom; prosper, flourish	27
flūctus, flūctūs <i>m.</i>	wave; commotion	16
flūmen, flūminis <i>n.</i>	river	11
forsitan	perhaps	32
forte (adv.)	by chance	15
fortis, forte	brave; strong	12
fortiter	bravely, forcefully	21
fortūna, fortūnae <i>f.</i>	chance, luck, fortune	1
frangō, frangere, frēgī, fractus	to break, wreck	19
frāter, frātris <i>m.</i>	brother	7
frūctus, frūctūs <i>m.</i>	fruit, enjoyment; profit	27
fruor, fruī, frūctus (+ abl.)	to enjoy	23

fugiō, fugere, fūgī	to flee (from), escape, avoid	10
fungor, fungī, fūnctus (+ abl.)	to perform, do	23
Gallia, Galliae <i>f.</i>	Gaul	12
gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum	to rejoice, be glad; delight in (+ abl.)	22
gaudium, gaudī or gaudiī <i>n.</i>	joy, delight	18
gēns, gentis <i>f.</i>	clan, tribe, family; nation; people	12
genū, genūs <i>n.</i>	knee	16
genus, generis <i>n.</i>	birth, origin; kind; race	14
gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus	to bear, carry on, wear	12
bellum gerō	to wage war	
gladius, -iī <i>m.</i>	sword	28
glōria, glōriae <i>f.</i>	glory, fame; boasting	27
Graecia, Graeciae <i>f.</i>	Greece	19
Graecus, Graeca, Graecum	Greek	
grātia, grātia <i>f.</i>	grace; favor, kindness; gratitude	11
grātiā (+ gen.)	for the sake of, because of	
grātiās agere	to thank	
gravis, grave	heavy; serious, important	26
habeo, habēre, habuī, habitus	to have, hold; consider	1
habitō, habitāre, habitāvī, habitātus	to inhabit; live, dwell	29
hic, haec, hoc	this	10
hodiē	today	22
homō, hominis <i>m.</i>	man, human being	7
honor, honōris <i>m.</i>	honor; public office	14
hōra, hōrae <i>f.</i>	hour, season	12
hortor, hortārī, hortātus sum	to urge, encourage	27
hostis, hostis <i>m.</i> ( <i>usually in pl.</i> )	enemy	14
humus, humī <i>f.</i>	ground, earth	15
iaceō, iacēre, iacuī	to lie (e.g., on the ground), lie dead	1
iactō, iactāre, iactāvī, iactātus	to throw	5
iam	now, already	14
ibi	there	22
idem, eadem, idem	the same	23
igitur ( <i>postpositive</i> )	therefore	16
ignis, ignis <i>m.</i>	fire	15
ille, illa, illud	that	10
impediō, impedīre, impedīvī, impedītus	to hinder, prevent	13
imperātor, imperātōris <i>m.</i>	general; emperor	30
imperium, imperiī <i>n.</i>	command, (military) power; empire	3
imperō, imperāre, imperāvī, imperātus ( <i>usually with dat. of the person</i> )	to command	24
impetus, impetūs <i>m.</i>	attack; charge; impulse	16
imprūdēns, imprūdentis	unwise; unaware, ignorant (of)	22
in (+ abl.)	in, on	4
in (+ acc.)	into, onto, against	4
incendō, incendere, incendiī, incēnsus	to set fire to, burn; inflame	17
incipiō, incipere, incēpī, inceptus	to begin	10
incolō, incolere, incoluī	live (in), inhabit	24
inde	from there; then, from that time forth	16



indīgnus, indīgna, indīgnum	unworthy; undeserved; shameful	13
ineō, inīre, iniī	to enter; begin	25
infēlix, infēlicis	unhappy, unlucky	23
inferō, inferre, intulī, illātus	to bring in, introduce; inflict	25
ingenium, ingenīi <i>n.</i>	talent; character, nature	24
ingēns, ingentis	huge; mighty	12
ingredior, ingredi, ingressus sum	to enter; march, walk	23
inimīcus, inimīca, inimīcum	unfriendly, hostile	18
inquit	he said ( <i>introduces a direct quotation</i> )	22
īstituō, īstituere, īstituī, īstitutus	to establish, institute, build; educate	17
intelligō, intelligere, intellēxī, intellēctus	to understand	13
inter (+ acc.)	between, among	9
intereā	meanwhile	20
interficiō, interficere, interfēcī, interfectus	to kill, destroy	24
intrō, intrāre, intrāvī, intrātus	to enter	6
inveniō, invenīre, invēnī, inventus	to find; discover, invent	14
ipse, ipsa, ipsum	—self; himself, herself, itself, themselves	23
īra, īrae <i>f.</i>	anger	7
īrātus, īrāta, īrātum	angry	8
is, ea, id	he, she, it	10
ita	so, thus, in this way	10
Ītalia, Ītaliae <i>f.</i>	Italy	6
iter, itineris <i>n.</i>	journey, path, route; a day's march	13
iubeō, iubēre, iūssī, iūssus	to order, command	21
iūdex, iūdicis <i>m.</i>	judge	28
iūdicium, iūdicīi <i>n.</i>	court; trial; judgment	17
iūdicō, iūdicāre, iūdicāvī, iūdicātus	to judge, decide	10
iungō, iungere, iūnxī, iūctus	to join (together), unite; yoke	29
iūs, iūris <i>n.</i>	right, law; justice	10
iūstus, iūsta, iūstum	just, fair	26
iuvō, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtus	to help, please	1
labor, labōris <i>m.</i>	work, labor, effort; hardship	15
labōrō, labōrāre, labōrāvī, labōrātus	to work, strive	1
lacrima, lacrimae <i>f.</i>	tear	11
laetus, laeta, laetum	happy, fertile	6
lātus, lāta, lātum	wide, broad	29
laudō, laudāre, laudāvī, laudātus	to praise	1
laus, laudis <i>f.</i>	praise	11
lēgātus, lēgātī <i>m.</i>	delegate, envoy, ambassador; legion commander	14
legō, legere, lēgī, lēctus	to read; choose, select	10
levis, leve	light, easy	19
lex, lēgis <i>f.</i>	law	8
liber, libera, liberum	free	5
liber, librī <i>m.</i>	book	3
liberē	freely	28
liberī, liberōrum <i>m. (pl.)</i>	children	22
liberō, liberāre, liberāvī, liberātus	to free, release; acquit	29
libertās, libertātis <i>f.</i>	freedom, liberty	8
licet, licēre, licuit ( <i>impersonal + dat.</i> )	it is allowed, it is lawful	32

littera, litterae <i>f.</i>	letter (of the alphabet); (pl.) letter, literature	2
lītus, lītoris <i>n.</i>	shore, beach, coast	15
locus, locī <i>m.</i> ( <i>in pl. also neuter when it means “places”</i> )	place, position	2
longē	far, by far	26
longus, longa, longum	long	14
loquor, loquī, locūtus sum	to speak	23
lūna, lūnae <i>f.</i>	moon	8
lūmen, lūminis <i>n.</i>	light, lamp, torch; eye	15
lūx, lūcis <i>f.</i>	light	8
magnus, magna, magnum	large, great; important	5
male	badly	31
mālō, mālle, mālūi	to prefer, want (something) more	21
malus, mala, malum	bad	5
maneō, manēre, mānsi	to remain, stay	6
manus, manūs <i>f.</i>	hand; band (of men)	16
mare, maris <i>n.</i>	sea	14
māter, mātris <i>f.</i>	mother	7
maximus, maxima, maximum māximē ( <i>adv.</i> )	greatest, very great, very important most, especially	24
medius, media, medium	middle (of)	14
memoria, memoriae <i>f.</i>	memory, recollection	19
mēns, mentis <i>f.</i>	mind, judgment, reason	7
metuō, metuere, metuī, metūtus	to fear	30
metus, metūs <i>m.</i>	fear, dread; anxiety	16
meus, mea, meum	my	5
mīlēs, mīlitis <i>m.</i>	soldier	11
mille (M)	one thousand	11
mīrābilis, mīrābile	wonderful, extraordinary	32
mīror, mīrārī, mīrātus sum	to wonder, be surprised at; admire, wonder at	29
miser, misera, miserum	miserable, unhappy	7
mittō, mittere, mīsī, missus	to send	9
modo	only; at all	26
modus, modī <i>m.</i>	manner, way, method	22
moenia, moenium <i>n.</i> (pl.)	walls, defenses	21
moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus	to warn, advise	14
mōns, montis <i>m.</i>	mountain	8
mōnstrō, mōnstrāre, mōnstrāvī, mōnstrātus	to show, demonstrate	3
mora, morae <i>f.</i>	delay	13
mорий, morī, mortuus sum	to die	24
moror, morārī, morātus sum	to delay	23
mors, mortis <i>f.</i>	death	7
mortālis, mortāle	mortal, transient; human	13
mōs, mōris <i>m.</i>	custom, tradition	21
mōtus, mōtūs <i>m.</i>	emotion, impulse; movement	27
moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtus	to move	4
mox	soon; next	30
multitūdō, multitūdinis <i>f.</i>	multitude, great number, crowd	17
multus, multa, multum	much; many (pl.)	5

nam	for (= because); indeed, truly	11
nārrō, nārrāre, nārrāvī, nārrātus	to tell (a story)	3
nātūra, nātūrae <i>f.</i>	nature	2
nauta, nautae <i>m.</i>	sailor	1
nāvigō, nāvigāre, nāvigāvī, nāvigātus	to sail	4
nāvis, nāvis <i>f.</i>	ship	19
nē	not ( <i>used with subjunctive and sometimes with imperative</i> )	27
nec	and not	11
nec ... nec; neque ... neque	neither ... nor	
necesse est	it is necessary	21
nefās <i>n. (indeclinable)</i>	sin, crime (against divine law), wrong	28
neglegō, neglegere, neglēxī, neglēctus	to ignore, neglect	27
negō, negāre, negāvī, negātus	to deny, say that ... not	22
nēmō <i>m.lf.</i> ; acc. nēminem ( <i>no gen. or dat.</i> )	no one	3
nesciō, nescīre, nescīvī, nescītus	not to know	22
nihil <i>n. (indeclinable)</i>	nothing	3
nīl ( <i>contracted form</i> )		
nisi	unless, if not	30
noceō, nocēre, nocuī (+ dat.)	to harm, be harmful to	3
nōlō, nōlle, nōluī	to be unwilling, not want	21
nōmen, nōminis <i>n.</i>	name	8
nōn	not	4
nōs	we	9
noster, nostra, nostrum	our	5
novem (IX)	nine	11
novus, nova, novum	new; strange	6
nox, noctis <i>f.</i>	night	14
nūbēs, nūbis <i>f.</i>	cloud	19
nūllus, nūlla, nūllum	not any, no	10
num	<i>signals a question; whether (in ind. question)</i>	29
nūmen, nūminis <i>n.</i>	divine will, divine power	7
numquam	never	26
nunc	now	4
nūntiō, nūntiāre, nūntiāvī, nūntiātus	to announce, report	6
nūntius, nūntiī <i>m.</i>	messenger; message	21
ob (+ acc.)	because of	20
occīdō, occīdere, occīdī, occīsus	to kill	24
octō (VIII)	eight	11
oculus, oculī <i>m.</i>	eye	4
offerō, offerre, obtulī, oblātus	to offer, bring forward	25
ōlim	once (upon a time), one day (in the future)	9
omnis, omne	all, every	12
oportet, oportēre, oportuit ( <i>impersonal + acc.</i> )	it is right, one should; it is necessary	32
oppidum, oppidī <i>n.</i>	town	28
ops, opis <i>f.</i>	power, might; (pl.) wealth, resources	30
optō, optāre, optāvī, optātus	to choose, desire, wish for	1
opus, operis <i>n.</i>	work, task	8

orbis, orbis <i>m.</i>	circle, orb	22
orbis terrarum	world	
ōra, orae <i>f.</i>	coast; border	20
ōrō, ōrāre, ōrāvī, ōrātus	to pray, beg, beg for	2
ōs, ōris <i>n.</i>	mouth, face	24
ostendō, ostendere, ostendī, ostentus/ostēsus	to show, reveal	22
pār, paris	equal (to)	18
pāreō, pārēre, pārui (+ dat.)	to obey, be obedient to	3
parō, parāre, parāvī, parātus	to prepare	6
pars, partis <i>f.</i>	part, share, direction	8
passus, passūs <i>m.</i>	pace, footstep	16
mille passūs; milia passuum <i>n.</i> (pl.)	mile ( <i>lit.</i> "1000 paces"); miles	
pateō, patēre, patui	to be open, stand open	24
pater, patris <i>m.</i>	father	7
patior, pati, passus sum	to suffer, allow	23
patria, patriae <i>f.</i>	country, fatherland	8
paucī, paucae, pauca ( <i>usually plural</i> )	few	13
pāx, pācis <i>f.</i>	peace	8
pectus, pectoris <i>n.</i>	breast, chest; heart	15
pecūnia, pecūniae <i>f.</i>	money, property	6
per (+ acc.)	through, along; because of; by (in oaths, prayers)	11
pereō, perīre, perii	to perish, die	25
perīculum, perīculi <i>n.</i>	danger	8
persuadeō, persuādēre, persuāsī (+ dat.)	to persuade	10
pēs, pedis <i>m.</i>	foot	12
petō, petere, petīvī or petiī, petitus	to seek, go after; ask; attack	11
philosophia, philosophiae <i>f.</i>	philosophy	30
placeō, placēre, placui (+ dat.)	to please, be pleasing to	3
plēnus, plēna, plēnum (+ gen. or abl.)	full (of), filled (with)	8
plūs, plūris <i>n.</i> (sg.)	more	26
poena, poenae <i>f.</i>	penalty	28
poenam dare	to pay the penalty	
poēta, poētae <i>m.</i>	poet	9
pōnō, pōnere, posui, positus	to put, place	15
pontus, ponti <i>m.</i>	sea, ocean	4
populus, populi <i>m.</i>	the people, nation	6
portō, portāre, portāvī, portātus	to carry, bring	3
possideo, possidēre	to possess	10
possum, posse, potui	to be able, "I can"	8
post (+ acc.)	after, behind	8
postquam	after	18
postulō, postulāre, postulāvī, postulātus	to demand, claim; prosecute	21
potēns, potentis	powerful; able	12
potior, potiri, potitus sum (+ abl.)	to get hold of, acquire	23
pōtus, pōtūs <i>m.</i>	drink	23
precor, precāri, precātus sum	to pray, intreat, beg; curse	29
prīmō	at first	26
primum	first, for the first time	26
prīmus, prīma, primum	first	11
prīnceps, prīncipis <i>m.</i>	leader, chief, first citizen, emperor	21
prō (+ abl.)	in front of; on behalf of; instead of	4

probō, probāre, probāvī, probātus	to approve (of); prove, show	31
procul	at a distance, from a distance	20
proelium, proeliī <i>n.</i>	battle	17
proficiscor, proficīscī, profectus sum	to set out, depart	23
prohibeō, prohibēre, prohibuī, prohibītus	to prohibit, keep from	13
propinquus, propinqua, propinquum	near (to), neighboring, related (to)	19
propter (+ acc.)	because of, on account of	6
prōvincia, prōvinciae <i>f.</i>	province	15
proximus, proxima, proximum	nearest, very near; next	24
prūdēns, prūdētis	wise, prudent, knowing; skilled	22
pūblicus, pūblica, pūblicum	public, common	16
puella, puellae <i>f.</i>	girl	2
puer, puerī <i>m.</i>	boy	2
pugnō, pugnāre, pugnāvī, pugnātus	to fight	3
pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum	beautiful, handsome; fine	5
putō, putāre, putāvī, putātus	to think, consider; suppose	22
quaerō, quaerere, quaesīvī (-iī), quaesītus	to look for, seek; ask	29
quam	(rather) than, as — <i>in comparisons</i>	21
quattuor (IV)	four	11
-que	and	2
quī, quae, quod	who, which, what	19
quia	because	18
quīdam, quaedam, quoddam	a certain _____, a sort of _____	23
quidem	indeed, certainly, in fact	27
nē ... quidem	not ... even	
quīnque (V)	five	11
quīs, quid	who?, what?	13
quod	because	18
quōmodo	how	29
quoque	also, too ( <i>placed after the word it emphasizes</i> )	30
quot	how many?	29
quotiēns	how often?	29
rapiō, rapere, rapuī, raptus	to seize, snatch, carry off	14
ratio, ratiōnis	reason, judgment; method	8
rēctus, rēcta, rēctum	straight, upright; right; virtuous, honest	27
redeō, redire, rediī	to go back, return	25
referō, referre, rettulī, relātus	to carry back, bring back, report	25
rēgīna, rēgīnae <i>f.</i>	queen	6
rēgnum, rēgnī <i>n.</i>	kingdom, royal power	2
regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus	to rule	9
relinquō, relinquere, reliquī, relictus	to leave, abandon	11
reliquus, reliqua, reliquum	remaining, rest	13
requirō, requirere, requisīvī (-iī), requisītus	to search for; ask, inquire after; demand	29
rēs, rei <i>f.</i>	thing, matter, business; court case	16
rēs pūblica, rei pūblīcae <i>f.</i>	state, republic	
resistō, resistere, restitī ( <i>often</i> + dat.)	to resist, oppose, make a stand	26
respondeō, respondēre, respondi, respōnsus	to answer, reply; correspond to	22
rēx, rēgis <i>m.</i>	king	7
rogō, rogāre, rogāvī, rogātus	to ask, ask for	24

Rōma, Rōmae <i>f.</i>	Rome	19
Rōmānus, Rōmāna, Rōmānum;	Roman	6
Rōmānī, Rōmānōrum <i>m.</i> ( <i>as a noun</i> ) (pl.)	the Romans	
rosa, rosae <i>f.</i>	rose	1
rūs, rūris <i>n.</i>	the country(side)	16
sacer, sacra, sacrum	sacred	8
saepe	often	4
saevus, saeva, saevum	cruel, savage	20
sanctus, sancta, sanctum	sacred; virtuous, blameless	26
sapiēns, sapientis	wise	13
sapientia, sapientiae <i>f.</i>	wisdom	5
saxum, saxī <i>n.</i>	rock; cliff	5
scelus, sceleris <i>n.</i>	crime, wicked deed, wickedness	14
sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītus	to know; to know how to (+ inf.)	13
scribō, scribere, scrīpsī, scrīptus	to write	9
secundus, secunda, secundum	second; favorable	11
sed	but	2
sedeō, sedēre, sēdī	to sit	9
semper	always	6
senātus, senātūs <i>m.</i>	senate	16
senex, senis <i>m.</i>	old man	13
sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsus	to feel, perceive	13
septem (VII)	seven	11
sequor, sequī, secūtus sum	to follow, accompany; pursue	23
serviō, servīre, servīvī or servīī (+ dat.)	to serve	13
servus, servī <i>m.</i>	slave; servant	21
sex (VI)	six	11
sī	if	18
sīc	thus, so	12
signum, signī <i>n.</i>	sign, token, signal; standard	20
silva, silvae <i>f.</i>	forest, woods	5
similis, simile	similar (to)	18
simul	at the same time, together	30
sīn	but if, if however	30
sine (+ abl.)	without	6
sinō, sinere, sīvī, sītus	to allow, permit	21
socius, sociī <i>m.</i>	companion, comrade, ally	24
sōl, sōlis <i>m.</i>	sun	28
soleō, solēre, solitus sum	to be accustomed	3
sōlus, sōla, sōlum	alone, only	10
nōn sōlum ... sed etiam	not only ... but also	
somnus, somnī <i>m.</i>	sleep	20
soror, sorōris <i>f.</i>	sister	19
spectō, spectāre, spectāvī, spectātus	to watch, look at	17
spērō, spērāre, spērāvī, spērātus	to hope, hope for ( <i>often + future inf.</i> )	22
spēs, speī <i>f.</i>	hope	16
statim	immediately, at once	29
stō, stāre, steti	to stand	14
studeō, studēre, studuī (+ dat.)	to be eager, to give attention	8
sub (+ abl.)	under, beneath	5
sub (+ acc.)	to the foot/base of, along under ( <i>implying motion</i> )	5

subeō, subīre, subīi <i>or</i> -īvi	to go up, to undergo; to approach	25
subitō	suddenly	8
suī ( <i>relexive pronoun</i> )	himself, herself, itself, themselves	13
sum, esse, fuī, futūrus	to be, exist	5
super (+ acc.)	over, above, on (top of)	15
superō, superāre, superāvī, superātus	to overcome, conquer, surpass	1
superus, supera, superum	upper, higher, above	13
superī, superōrum <i>m.</i> (pl.)	gods	
surgō, surgere, surrexī, surrectus	to get up, (a)rise	15
suscipiō, suscipere, suscepī, susceptus	to take up, accept; begin	30
suus, sua, suum	his, her, its, their own	13
taceō, tacēre, tacuī	to be silent	1
tālis, tāle	such	28
tam	so, to such a degree	16
tamen	however, nevertheless, yet	10
tamquam	as, just as, just like	31
tandem	finally	4
tantus, tanta, tantum	so much, so great	14
tellūs, tellūris <i>f.</i>	the earth; land	27
tēlum, tēlī <i>n.</i>	weapon; spear, sword	28
temperō, temperāre, temperāvī, temperātus	to blend; govern; refrain, be moderate	27
templum, templī <i>n.</i>	temple, shrine	3
temptō, temptāre, temptāvī, temptātus	to try; test, prove	15
tempus, temporis <i>n.</i>	time, opportunity	12
teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentus	to hold, have; restrain	7
ter	three times, thrice	12
terra, terrae <i>f.</i>	land, earth, soil; country	5
terreō, terrēre, terruī, territus	to terrify, scare	2
timeō, timēre, timuī	to fear, be afraid	1
timor, timōris <i>m.</i>	fear, terror	11
tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātus	to lift up, raise; remove, carry off, steal	25
tot	so many	28
totiēns	so often	28
tōtus, tōta, tōtum	whole, entire	10
trādō, trādere, trādidī, trāditus	to hand over, surrender; hand down, report	22
trahō, trahere, trāxī, tractus	to draw, drag; derive	17
trāns (+ acc.)	across, beyond	4
trānseō, trānsīre, trānsiī	to go across, cross	25
tremō, tremere, tremuī	to tremble	28
trēs, tria (III)	three	11
trīgintā (XXX)	thirty	11
tristis, triste	sad; gloomy	15
Trōiānus, Trōiāna, Trōiānum	Trojan	19
Trōia, Trōiae <i>f.</i>	Troy (a city)	
tū	you (sg.)	9
tum	then, at that time, next	4
turba, turbae <i>f.</i>	crowd	3
turpis, turpe	shameful, base; ugly, foul	26
tuus, tua, tuum	your, your own (sg.)	5
ubi	where; when	18

ūllus, ūlla, ūllum	any	10
unda, undae <i>f.</i>	wave, waters; sea	15
undique (adv.)	on all sides	29
ūnus, ūna, ūnum	one	10
urbs, urbis <i>f.</i>	city	7
ut (+ <i>subjunctive</i> )	in order that; so that	28
ut (+ <i>indicative</i> )	as, when	32
uterque, utraque, utrumque	both; each (of two)	26
ūtilis, ūtile	useful, profitable	26
utinam	( <i>signals a wish</i> ) if only, would that	27
ūtor, ūtī, ūsus (+ abl.)	to use	23
uxor, uxoris <i>f.</i>	wife	7
valeō, valēre, valuī	to be well, healthy; to be strong	9
valē, valēte	goodbye, farewell	
veniō, venīre, vēnī	to come	13
ventus, ventī <i>m.</i>	wind, breeze	3
verbum, verbī <i>n.</i>	word	8
vēritās, vēritātis <i>f.</i>	truth	7
vērō	in fact, indeed; moreover	27
vereor, verērī, veritus sum	to fear, be afraid; respect	30
vertō, vertere, vertī, versus	to turn; turn around, destroy	19
vescor, vescī (+ abl.)	to eat, feed	23
vester, vestra, vestrum	your (pl.)	5
vetō, vetāre, vetuī, vetitus	to forbid; order ... not	21
via, viae <i>f.</i>	way, road	4
victōria, victōriae <i>f.</i>	victory	30
videō, vidēre, vidī, vīsus sum	to see	1
videor, vidērī, vīsus ( <i>passive of videō</i> )	to seem; be seen	17
<i>often with dative of the person</i>	“it seems best to _____”	
vīgintī (XX)	twenty	11
vīncō, vincere, vīcī, victus	to conquer, win	9
vīnum, vīnī <i>n.</i>	wine	28
vir, virī <i>m.</i>	man; hero; husband	2
virtūs, virtūtis <i>f.</i>	courage, excellence, virtue	7
vīs, vīs <i>f.</i>	power, force, violence;	20
vīrēs, vīrium	strength (pl.)	
vīta, vītae <i>f.</i>	life	6
vītō, vītāre, vītāvī, vītātus	to avoid	20
vīvō, vīvere, vixī, victus	to live	21
vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus	to call; name	1
volō, velle, voluī	to wish, want, be willing	21
voluptās, voluptātis <i>f.</i>	pleasure, delight	31
volvō,olvere, volvī, volūtus	to roll, turn/twist around	15
vōs	you (pl.)	9
vōx, vōcis <i>f.</i>	voice	7
vulnerō, vulnerāre, vulnerāvī, vulnerātus	to wound	24
vulnus, vulneris <i>n.</i>	wound	18
vultus, vultūs <i>m.</i>	expression; face	16



## Intransitive Verbs with the Future Active Participle in the fourth principal part slot

absum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus	to be absent, away, distant	14
adsum, adesse, adfuī, adfutūrus	to be present, be near	27
adveniō, advenīre, advēnī, adventūrus	to arrive, come to; happen	14
ambulō, ambulāre, ambulāvī, ambulātūrus	to walk	4
ārdeō, ārdēre, ārsī, ārsūrus	to burn, be on fire	16
cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsūrus	to fall	11
careō, carēre, caruī, caritūrus (+ abl.)	to be without, free from; need, miss	19
cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessūrus	to go, withdraw; yield	15
conveniō, convenīre, convēnī, conventūrus	to assemble, gather; meet; agree	31
crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditus (+ dat.)	to believe, trust	11
currō, currere, cucurrī, cursūrus	to run	17
discēdō, discēdere, discessī, discessūrus	to depart, go away; separate	12
doleō, dolēre, doluī, dolitūrus	to grieve, mourn, suffer pain	8
dormiō, dormīre, dormīvī, dormitūrus	to sleep	13
eō, īre, īī <i>or</i> ivī, itūrus	to go	25
abeō, abīre, abiī, abitūrus	to go away, depart	
adeō, adīre, adiī, aditūrus	to go towards, approach	
exeō, exīre, exiī, exitūrus	to go out, exit	
ineō, inīre, iniī, initūrus	to enter; begin	
pereō, perīre, periī, peritūrus	to perish, die	
redeō, redīre, rediī <i>or</i> -ivī, reditūrus	to go back, return	
subeō, subīre, subiī <i>or</i> -ivī, subitūrus	to go up; to undergo; to approach	
trānseō, trānsīre, trānsiī, trānsitūrus	to go across, cross	
iaceō, iacēre, iacuī, iacitūrus	to lie (e.g. on the ground), lie dead	1
maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsūrus	to remain, stay	6
noceō, nocēre, nocuī, nocitūrus (+ dat.)	to harm, be harmful to	3
pāreō, pārēre, pārui, paritūrus (+ dat.)	to obey, be obedient to	3
persuādeō, persuādēre, persuāsī, persuāsūrus (+ dat.)	to persuade	10
placeō, placēre, placuī, placitūrus (+ dat.)	to please, be pleasing to	3
sedeō, sedēre, sēdī, sessūrus	to sit	9
serviō, servīre, sērvīvī <i>or</i> servii, servitūrus (+ dat.)	to serve	13
stō, stāre, stetī, statūrus	to stand	14
sum, esse, fuī, futūrus	to be, exist	5
taceō, tacēre, tacuī, tacitūrus	to be silent ("I am silent")	1
valeō, valēre, valuī, valitūrus	to be well, healthy; to be strong	9
veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventūrus	to come	13

**Verbs which lack the participial stem**

accidō, accidere, accidī	to fall at <i>or</i> near; happen	27
dīscō, dīscere, didicī	to learn	9
flōreō, flōrēre, flōruī	to bloom; prosper, flourish	27
pateō, patēre, patuī	to be open, stand open	24
possum, posse, potuī	to be able, "I can"	8
resistō, resistere, restitī ( <i>often + dat.</i> )	to resist, oppose, make a stand	26
studeō, studēre, studuī (+ dat.)	to be eager, to give attention	8
timeō, timēre, timuī	to fear, be afraid	1
tremō, tremere, tremuī	to tremble	28

# INDEX

References are to page numbers

Ablative case	
forms of	15, 16-17, 27, 51-53, 115, 116
uses of	
absolute	187
accompaniment	37
agent	132
cause	85
comparison	207-208
manner	37-38
means (instrument)	28, 132, 255
object of verb	178
place from which (motion away)	28
place where	28
specification (respect)	98, 262
time when	91
time within which	92
Accent	3
Accusative case	
forms of	15, 16-17, 51-53, 115, 116
uses of:	
degree	104
direct object	13-14
extent	104
object complement	74
place to which (motion towards)	28
purpose (ad + gerund)	254
subject of infinitive	162, 169
time - duration, length	92
two accusatives	14, 74
Adjective	
agreement of	34-35
comparison of	205-207
declension of	
first and second	33-34
third	89-91
genitive in -ius	73
comparative	205-207
superlative	205-207
definition of	5, 33
possessive	97
relative clause, adjectival use	144
verbal – <i>see</i> gerundive; participle	

Adverb	
comparative	208
definition of	6, 27
superlative	208
Agreement	
noun & adjective	34-35
subject & verb	18
Alphabet	1
Case	
definition of	13
common uses	13-14
<i>see</i> specific uses under case names – ablative, accusative, dative, genitive, locative, nominative, vocative	
Cause, expressions of	85
Chunks	30
Clause marker (subordinating conjunction)	137-138, 143, 169, 235, 242, 262
Clauses, dependent (subordinate)	
adjectival	144
adverbial	137-139, 225-227
causal	137-139, 226-227
characteristic	263
circumstantial	226-227
comparison	262
concessive	226-227
conditions	137-139, 242-243
definition of	137
fearing	242
indirect command	236
indirect question	235
indirect statement	169-170
noun	146, 162, 169, 235-237, 242
place	137-139
purpose (final)	225, 263
relative	144, 146, 263
result (consecutive)	225-226, 237
temporal	137-139, 262
Commands	
direct – with imperative	47
direct – with subjunctive	216
indirect	236
negative	161
prohibitions	216, 223
Comparative	
of adjectives	205-207
of adverbs	208
Comparison	
ablative of	207-208
definition of	205
of adjectives	205-207
of adverbs	208
with quam	207
Conditions	
with indicative	137-139, 242-243
with subjunctive	243

Conjugation	
definition of	7
first	7-8
second	7-9
third and third -iō	65-66
fourth	95
Conjunctions	
coordinating	18
definition of	6
subordinating (clause marker)	137-138, 143, 169, 235, 242, 262
Consonants	2, 124
Dative case	
forms of	15, 16-17, 22, 51-52, 115, 116-117
uses of	
agent	257
indirect object	22
object of verb	23-24
possession	55
reference (interest)	22
with adjectives	140, 254
Declension	
definition of	14
first	15
second	16-17
third and third -i stems	51-53
fourth	115-116
fifth	116-117
Deponent verbs	177
Dictionary entry	15
Dictionary Practice / Form Identification	43, 81, 124-125, 160, 203, 251
Diphthongs	1
Eius to show possession	98
Eō, ire and compounds	193-194
Expectations	18-19, 22
Ferō, ferre and compounds	194-195
Fiō, fieri	237
Gap	35-36
Gender	14-15, 53
Genitive case	
forms of	15, 16-17, 21, 51-53, 115, 116-117
uses of	
objective	254
part of a whole / partitive	21
possession	21
purpose	254
with adjectives	254
Gerund	253-255
Gerundive	255-256, 257
i-Stems, note on	53, 58
Īdem, eadem, idem	175-176
Imperative	
forms of	
deponent verbs	177
first and second conjugation	47

third conjugation	66
fourth conjugation	96
irregular	66
uses of	47
Impersonal constructions	264
Indicative	
forms of	
first and second conjugation	8, 45-46, 59-60, 128-129, 151-153
third conjugation	65, 83, 109-112, 128-130, 151-153
fourth conjugation	95, 103, 109-112, 128-129, 151-153
uses of	9
Indirect command	236
Indirect question	235
Indirect statement	169, 170
Infinitive	
definition of	8
forms of	
first and second conjugation	8, 61, 130, 153
third conjugation	66, 112, 131, 153
fourth conjugation	95, 112, 130, 153
review of forms	167-168
uses of	
complementary	9
indirect statement	169, 170
noun, as a (subjective)	61-62
objective	162
Ipse, ipsa, ipsum	175
Linking (sentence pattern)	36-37
Locative case	117
Mālō, mälle	161
Mood, definition of	7
<i>see</i> specific uses under mood names – imperative, indicative, subjunctive	
Nōlō, nōlle	161
Nominative case	
forms of	15, 16-17, 51-53, 115, 116
uses of	
subject	13
subject complement	36-37
Noun	
definition of	5, 14
declension of	
first	15
second	16-17
third	51-53
fourth	115
fifth	116
infinitive as	61-62
Number, definition of	7, 14
Numerals	84-85
Object	
ablative	178
complement	74
dative	23-24

direct (accusative)	6, 13-14
indirect	22
Parts of speech, overview	5-6
Part of a whole / partitive genitive	21
Participles	
definition of	183
forms of	183-185
uses of	
adjectival	186
ablative absolute	187
tenses of	185
Passive Periphrastic	257
Person, definition of	7
Place, expressions of	28
Possession	
adjective, possessive	97
dative of	55
eius	98
genitive of	21
Possum, posse	
indicative and infinitive	61
subjunctive	241
Post-positive	50
Preposition, definition of	6, 28
Principal parts, definition of	8
Pronouns	
definition of	6, 67
demonstrative	71-73
indefinite	176
intensive	175-176
interrogative	96
personal	67
reflexive	97
relative	143-144, 146, 262-263
Pronunciation	1
Purpose, expressions of	
gerund	254
gerundive	256
relative clauses	263
supine	261
ut clauses	225
Questions	
direct	9
indirect	235
Quīdam, quaedam, quodam	176
Roots	80-81
Sentence, definition of	5
Sentence patterns	
definition of	6-7
factive	73-74
intransitive	7
linking	36-37
passive	131-132

special intransitive	23-24, 178
transitive	7
Sequence of Tenses	224
Statements	9
Syllables	2-3
Subject, definition of	6
Subject complement (predicate nominative)	37
Subjunctive	
definition of	213
forms of	
imperfect active, passive	221, 234
present active, passive	213-214, 233
perfect active, passive	214, 234
pluperfect active, passive	222, 234
uses of	
characteristic	263
circumstance, cause, concession (cum clauses)	226-227
conditions	243
deliberative	216, 223
fearing clauses	242
hortatory (exhortation)	216, 223
indirect command	236
indirect questions	235
jussive (command)	216, 223
optative (wish)	216, 223
potential	263
prohibitions (negative command)	216, 223
purpose clauses	225, 263
result clauses	
adverbial	225
noun	237
subordinate clauses in indirect statement	264
uses of tenses	223, 224
Sum	
future and imperfect indicative	54
infinitives	36, 168
participle	184
present indicative	36
perfect indicative	reference morphology
pluperfect indicative	111
future perfect indicative	112
subjunctive	215, 222
Superlative	
of adjectives	205-207
of adverbs	208
Supine	261-262
Syllables	2-3
Tenses (indicative of regular conjugations)	
definition of	7
future	46, 83, 103, 129
future perfect	111-112, 153
imperfect	45-46, 83, 103, 129
perfect	59-60, 109-110, 151
pluperfect	110-111, 152



present	7-8, 65, 95, 128
present, historical	60
primary, secondary (definition of)	224
Time, expressions of	91-92
Ut	
with indicative	262
with subjunctive	225-226, 237, 242
Verbs	
defective	9
definition of	5, 6, 7
deponent	177
finite	7
infinitive	
definition of	8
<i>see</i> specific forms and uses under infinitive	
intransitive	7
mood	
definition of	7
<i>see</i> specific uses under mood names – imperative, indicative, subjunctive	
non-finite	8, 183
participle	
definition of	183
<i>see</i> specific forms and uses under participles	
principal parts	8
special intransitive	23-24, 178
stem	7
tense	
definition of	7
primary	224
secondary	224
<i>see</i> specific tenses under tenses	
transitive	7
voice, definition of	7, 127
Vīs, vīs, f.	154
Vocative case, direct address	47
Voice	
active	7
passive	127
Vōlō, velle	161
Vowels	1, 80-81
Word building	44, 80, 124, 159, 204
Word derivations	44, 80
Word order	5, 9, 13, 22, 29, 139



Shelmerdine's text is complete and streamlined for introductory courses in Latin, covering all aspects of Latin grammar in a familiar pedagogical flow, with brief explanations of English grammar as needed within the text itself, providing an in-text reference for new Latin material. "Real Latin" readings occur throughout the text, early and often, in the form of sentences and short passages.

---

"This is just the book I've been hoping for: it is intelligently planned and organized, and maintains a good pace without being overwhelming. The exercises are very good and make reasonable sense. Presentation of grammar and syntax is very sound from a linguistic point of view, as well as being very comprehensible to the non-specialist. The exercises are ample, well-designed, and sensible, providing some opportunity for discussion of cultural context. Of particular note are the reading chapters located after every five regular chapters, which are very useful for review and provide valuable supplementary material (but can also be omitted if time limitations so demand.)"

Barbara Weiden Boyd  
*Bowdoin College*

**Dr. Susan Shelmerdine** is professor and head of the department of Classical Studies at the University of North Carolina, Greensboro. She earned her PhD at the University of Michigan. Her research interests include Archaic Greek literature, Homer, Mythology, Ancient Religion, and Greek and Latin pedagogy.

For the complete list of titles available from Focus Publishing, additional student materials, and online ordering, visit [www.pullins.com](http://www.pullins.com).

ēnae apertē descīrunt,  
lettium exercitumque eius  
accīvit et eōs contrā hostēs  
ullus adversus Vēientem  
dērigit suōs, Albānōs contrā  
Fīdēnātium conlocat.  
neque animus erat nec fidēs.

*focus* Publishing  
R. Pullins Company  
[www.pullins.com](http://www.pullins.com)

FOREIGN LANGUAGE STUDY / Latin